

**CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENT SPECIFICATION  
for the  
WASHINGTON COUNTY  
PUBLIC SAFETY TRAINING CENTER**

**PUR-1401**

**Washington County Project No.: 28-276**

**Washington County Contract No.: MS-TC-276-28**

**Crabtree, Rohrbaugh & Associates Project No. 3089**

**Volume 2 – Technical Specifications**

**for the**

**BOARD OF COUNTY COMMISSIONERS  
OF WASHINGTON COUNTY, MARYLAND**

**Jeffrey A. Cline, President**

**Terry L. Baker, Vice President**

**Wayne K. Keefer**

**Cort F. Meinelschmidt**

**Randall E. Wagner**



**August 3, 2020**

**Prepared by:**

**CRABTREE, ROHRBAUGH & ASSOCIATES - ARCHITECTS**

**401 East Winding Hill Road**

**Mechanicsburg, Pennsylvania 17055**

**717-458-0272**

**[www.cra-architects.com](http://www.cra-architects.com)**

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 021000 – FIELD ENGINEERING

### PART 1 – GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Requirements of the General Provisions apply to all work under this section.
- B. Throughout the specifications, types of materials may be specified by manufacturer's name and catalogue number in order to establish standards of quality and performance and not for the purpose of limiting competition. Alternate methods and/or materials may be submitted to the Architect for consideration. Those judged to be equal to that specified will receive written approval.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

Work included: Provided at the Contractor's expense, such field engineering services as are required for proper completion of the Work including, but not necessarily limited to:

- A. The Contractor shall have property lines located and marked and corners set by a certified land surveyor. Permanent corner markers shall be installed where they do not already exist.
- B. The Contractor shall be responsible for all stakeouts and elevation checks required for construction. All such Work shall be performed by a professional land surveyor. The surveyor shall verify adequacy of benchmarks before starting construction.
- C. Before the start of any building construction, the Contractor shall have a professional land surveyor locate and stake building corners, driveway entrances, driveways, parking areas and playfields. If there are any discrepancies between the actual layout and the project site plan, they shall be brought to the attention of the Architect and resolved before Work proceeds. A building and site stake out drawing stamped and signed by a professional land surveyor may be submitted in lieu of this preliminary stake out.
- D. After the corners of the exterior walls have been started, the Contractor shall obtain a wall check survey certificate made by a professional land surveyor. This survey shall show the accurate location of the building with reference to property lines.
- E. After the first sections of slab-on-grade have been placed in the school building, the Contractor shall have a professional land surveyor verify and record the finish floor elevation on the wall check survey.
- F. At the end of the project, the Contractor shall have a professional land surveyor prepare an as-built survey showing the accurate horizontal and vertical locations of all building

corners, paved areas, sidewalks, utilities, fencing, site walls stormwater management facilities in accordance with the requirements of Washington County, etc. located within the project area.

### 1.3 RELATED WORK:

- A. Documents affecting work of this Section include, but are not necessarily limited to, General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, and Sections in Division 1 of these Specifications.
- B. Additional requirements for field engineering also may be described in other Sections of these Specifications.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Use adequate numbers of skilled workmen who are thoroughly trained and experienced in the necessary crafts and who are completely familiar with the specified requirements and the methods needed for proper performance of the work of this Section.

### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Division 01 specifications for Submittal procedures.
- B. Upon request of the Architect, submit;
  - 1. Data demonstrating qualifications of persons proposed to be engaged for field Engineering services.
  - 2. Documentation verifying accuracy of field engineering work.
  - 3. Certifications, signed by the Contractor's retained field engineer, certifying that elevations and locations of improvements are in conformance with requirements of the Contract Documents.

### 1.6 PROCEDURES

- A. In addition to procedures directed by the Contractor for the proper performance of the Contractor's responsibilities:
  - 1. Locate and protect control points before starting Work on the site.
  - 2. Preserve permanent reference points during process of the Work.

3. Do not change or relocate reference points or items of the Work without specific approval from the Architect.
4. Promptly advise the Architect when a reference point is lost or destroyed, or requires relations because of other changes in the Work.
  - a) Upon direction of the Architect, require the field engineer to replace reference stakes or markers.
  - b) Locate such replacements according to the original survey control.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

Not Applicable

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

Not Applicable

END SECTION - 021000

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 024119 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Demolition and removal of selected portions of a building or structure.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 1 Section "Summary of Work" for use of premises, and phasing, and Owner-occupancy requirements.
  - 2. Division 1 Section "Temporary Facilities & Controls" for temporary utilities, temporary construction and support facilities, temporary security and protection facilities and environmental-protection measures for selective demolition operations.
  - 3. Division 1 Section "Cutting and Patching" for cutting and patching procedures for selective demolition operations.
  - 4. Divisions 15 and 16 for demolishing, cutting, patching, or relocating mechanical and electrical items.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and legally dispose of them off-site, unless indicated to be removed and salvaged or removed and reinstalled.
- B. Remove and Salvage: Detach items from existing construction and deliver them to the Owner ready for reuse.
- C. Remove and Reinstall: Detach items from existing construction, prepare them for reuse, and reinstall them where indicated.
- D. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

#### 1.4 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Historic items, relics, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, antiques, and other items of interest or value

to the Owner that may be encountered during selective demolition remain the Owner's property. Carefully remove and salvage each item or object in a manner to prevent damage and deliver promptly to the Owner.

1. Before demolition and throughout construction, all Prime Contractors shall be responsible to review with the Owner's, all items being removed by their trades. All items designated during this review to remain the Owner's property, shall be maintained in good condition and turned over to the Owner.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Contractor.
- B. Schedule of Selective Demolition Activities: Indicate the following:
  1. Detailed sequence of selective demolition and removal work, with starting and ending dates for each activity. Ensure Owner's on-site operations are uninterrupted.
  2. Interruption of utility services. Indicate how long utility services will be interrupted.
  3. Coordination for shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.
  4. Locations of proposed dust and noise-control temporary partitions and means of egress.
  5. Coordination of Owner's continuing occupancy of portions of existing building and of Owner's partial occupancy of completed Work.
  6. Means of protection for items to remain and items in path of waste removal from the building.
  7. Use of elevators and stairs.
- C. Inventory: After selective demolition is complete, submit a list of items that have been removed and salvaged.
- D. Pre-demolition Photographs or Recordings: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces that might be misconstrued as damage caused by selective demolition operations. Submit before Work begins.
- E. Landfill Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of hazardous wastes by a landfill facility licensed to accept hazardous wastes.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Demolition Firm Qualifications: An experienced firm that specializes in demolition work similar in material and extent to that indicated for this Project.
- B. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by an EPA-approved certification program.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.



- D. Standards: Comply with ANSI A10.6 and NFPA 241.
- E. Pre-demolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Meetings." Review methods and procedures related to selective demolition including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be selectively demolished.
  - 2. Review structural load limitations of existing structure.
  - 3. Review and finalize selective demolition schedule and verify availability of materials, demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - 4. Review requirements of work performed by other trades that rely on substrates exposed by selective demolition operations.
  - 5. Review areas where existing construction is to remain and requires protection.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. The Owner will occupy portions of the building immediately adjacent to the selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so Owner's operations will not be disrupted.
  - 1. Comply with requirements specified in Division 1 Section "Summary of Work."
- B. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
  - 1. If materials suspected of containing hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify the Architect and Owner. The Owner will remove the hazardous materials under a separate contract, or request a proposal to remove the hazardous materials.
- C. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.
- D. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
  - 1. Maintain fire-protection facilities in service during selective demolition operations.
- E. All Contractors shall be responsible for verification of all existing building dimensions and conditions, including finishes and materials, systems shown and designated as existing on the Contract Drawings prior to starting demolition and construction. Any discrepancies in information indicated on the Contract drawings shall be directed in writing to the attention of the Architect prior to the start of demolition and construction. Verification of clearances required for all new equipment, piping, ductwork and related components shall be the Contractor's responsibility.
- F. All Contractors shall patch, repair or replace all existing finishes and materials disturbed or damaged during demolition. All repair or replacement shall match adjacent existing and/or new finishes and materials as indicated.

- G. See Architectural, Structural, Mechanical, Electrical and Plumbing drawings for demolition work required. Coordinate all Work by other Contractors, including, but not limited to, capping and disconnection of building services.
- H. Existing conditions as appear in these Contract Documents may vary with actual conditions because of undocumented work performed by Owner's staff and by other contractors.
- I. All Contractors shall be responsible for verification of all demolition conditions related to accepted Alternate bids, including finishes and materials, systems shown and designated as existing or new on the Contract Drawings prior to starting of demolition and construction. Any discrepancies in information indicated on the Contract Drawings shall be directed in writing to the attention of Architect prior to starting demolition and construction.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during selective demolition, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped.
- B. Survey existing conditions and correlate with requirements indicated to determine the extent of selective demolition required.
- C. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and reinstalled and items to be removed and salvaged.
- D. When unanticipated mechanical, electrical, or structural elements that conflict with the intended function or design are encountered, investigate and measure the nature and extent of the conflict. Promptly submit a written report to the Architect.
- E. Survey of Existing Conditions: Record existing conditions by use of measured drawings, preconstruction photographs, or preconstruction videotapes.
  - 1. Before selective demolition or removal of existing building elements that will be reproduced or duplicated in final Work, make permanent record of measurements, materials, and construction details required to make exact reproductions.
- F. Perform surveys as the Work progresses to detect hazards resulting from selective demolition activities.

### 3.2 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Existing Services/Systems: Maintain services/systems indicated to remain and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
  - 1. Comply with requirements for existing services/systems interruptions specified in Division 1 Section "Summary of Work."
- B. Service/System Requirements: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off indicated utility services and mechanical/electrical systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.
  - 1. The Owner will arrange to shut off indicated services/systems when requested by the Contractor. The Contractor may make these arrangements if approved by the Owner.
  - 2. Arrange to shut off indicated utilities with utility companies.
  - 3. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, before proceeding with selective demolition, provide temporary services/systems that bypass the area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building.
  - 4. Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit after bypassing.
    - a. Where an entire wall is to be removed, existing services/systems may be removed with removal of the wall.

### 3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
  - 1. Comply with requirements for access and protection specified in Division 1 Section "Temporary Facilities & Controls".
- B. Temporary Facilities: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
  - 1. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from occupied portions of building.
  - 2. Provide temporary weather protection, during interval between selective demolition of existing construction on exterior surfaces and new construction, to prevent water leakage and damage to structure and interior areas.
  - 3. Protect walls, ceilings, floors, and other existing finish work that are to remain or that are exposed during selective demolition operations.
  - 4. Cover and protect furniture, furnishings, and equipment that have not been removed.
  - 5. Comply with requirements for temporary enclosures, dust control, heating, and cooling specified in Division 1 Section "Temporary Facilities & Controls."
- C. Temporary Shoring: Provide and maintain shoring, bracing, and structural supports as required to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of construction

and finishes to remain, and to prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement or collapse of construction being demolished.

1. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of selective demolition.

### 3.4 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION, GENERAL

- A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:

1. Proceed with selective demolition systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete selective demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.
2. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping, to minimize disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
3. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.
4. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
5. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
6. Remove decayed, vermin-infested, or otherwise dangerous or unsuitable materials and promptly dispose of off-site.
7. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to avoid free fall and to prevent ground impact or dust generation.
8. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
9. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly.

- B. Reuse of Building Elements: Do not demolish building elements beyond what is indicated in the Contract Documents without Architect's approval.

- C. Removed and Salvaged Items:

1. Clean salvaged items.
2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
4. Transport items to Owner's storage area on-site.
5. Protect items from damage during storage.

- D. Removed and Reinstalled Items:

1. Clean and repair items to functional condition adequate for intended reuse. Paint equipment to match new equipment.

2. Pack or crate items after cleaning and repairing. Identify contents of containers.
  3. Protect items from damage during storage.
  4. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make item functional for use indicated.
- E. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by Architect, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during selective demolition and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.

### 3.5 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION PROCEDURES FOR SPECIFIC MATERIALS

- A. Concrete: Demolish in small sections. Cut concrete at junctures with construction to remain, using power-driven saw. Neatly trim openings to dimensions indicated.
- B. Masonry: Demolish in small sections. Cut masonry at junctures with construction to remain, using power-driven saw, then remove masonry between saw cuts.
- C. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade: Saw-cut perimeter of area to be demolished, then break up and remove.
- D. Resilient Floor Coverings: Remove floor coverings and adhesive according to recommendations in RFCI-WP and its Addendum.
1. Remove residual adhesive and prepare substrate for new floor coverings by one of the methods recommended by RFCI.
- E. Roofing: Remove no more existing roofing than can be covered in one day by new roofing and so that building interior remains watertight and weathertight. Refer to Division 7 Sections for new roofing requirements.
1. Remove existing roof membrane, flashings, copings, and roof accessories as indicated in the demolition and renovation notes.
- F. Air-Conditioning Equipment: Remove equipment without releasing refrigerants.
- G. Refer to the drawings for additional demolition work if any for each room or building component.
- H. Prepare existing remaining substrates to receive new finishes as indicated on the finish schedule. Preparation of substrates shall be in conformance with the installation requirements of each new finish.

### 3.6 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

- A. General: Except for items or materials indicated to be recycled, reused, salvaged, reinstalled, or otherwise indicated to remain Owner's property, remove demolished materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in an EPA-approved landfill.

1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
  2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
  3. Remove debris from elevated portions of building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.
- B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.
- C. Disposal: Transport demolished materials off Owner's property and legally dispose of them.

### 3.7 CLEANING

- A. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

END OF SECTION 024119

## SECTION 033000 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section specifies cast-in place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, vapor barriers, mix designs, placement procedures, other accessory materials and finishes.
- B. Cast-in Place concrete includes but is not limited to the following:
  - 1. Footings and foundation walls
  - 2. Interior slabs-on-grade
  - 3. Masonry infill
  - 4. Suspended slabs
  - 5. Equipment bases and foundations
  - 6. Fill for steel pan stair treads and landings.
- C. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 5 "Structural Steel Framing" for embedded items.
  - 2. Division 5 "Metal Fabrications" for embedded items.
  - 3. Division 9 Section "Wood Athletic Flooring" for required moisture, pH, and other required compatibility testing requirements.
  - 4. Division 9 Section "Resilient Tile Flooring" for required moisture, pH, and other required compatibility testing requirements.
  - 5. Division 9 Section "Resinous Flooring" for required moisture, pH, and other required compatibility testing requirements.
  - 6. Division 9 Section "Tile Carpeting" for required moisture, pH, and other required compatibility testing requirements.
  - 7. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for drainage fill under slabs-on grade.
  - 8. Division 32 Section "Concrete Pavement" for exterior concrete pavement and sidewalks.
  - 9. Division 32 Section "Concrete Paving Joint Sealants" for joint sealants to be used in exterior concrete paving.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of manufactured material and product indicated.
- B. Design Mixes: For each concrete mix. Include alternate mix designs when characteristics of materials, project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
  - 1. If mix water is to be withheld at the plant and later added at the Project site to provide the water to cement ratio of the design mix, this must be clearly indicated on EVERY delivery ticket to the Project site.
- C. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Details of fabrication, bending, and placement, prepared according to ACI 315, "Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement". Include material, grade, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, arrangement, and supports of concrete reinforcement.
- D. Material Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that each of the following items complies with requirements:
  - 1. Cementitious materials and aggregates.
  - 2. Steel reinforcement and reinforcement accessories.
  - 3. Polypropylene Fiber Reinforcement
  - 4. Admixtures.
  - 5. Curing materials.
  - 6. Floor and slab treatments, when required by the Drawings.
  - 7. Vapor barriers.
  - 8. Semi-rigid joint filler.
  - 9. Premolded expansion joint-filler strips.
  - 10. Repair materials, when required for repair, and use of the repair is accepted by the Architect.
  - 11. Epoxy for drilling and placing dowels into hardened concrete.
  - 12. Waterstops
- E. Minutes of Pre-installation Conference.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed concrete Work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products complying with ASTM C 94 requirements for production facilities and equipment.
  - 1. Manufacturer must use Maryland Department of Transportation certified materials.



- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
  - 1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-1 or an equivalent certification program.
  - 2. Refer to "Field Quality Control" Paragraph below for testing requirements.
- D. Source Limitations: Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant, each aggregate from one source, and each admixture from the same manufacturer.
- E. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code-Reinforcing Steel".
- F. ACI Publications: Comply with the following, unless more stringent provisions are indicated:
  - 1. ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete".
  - 2. ACI 117, "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials".
  - 3. CRSI Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute, "Manual of Standard Practice".
  - 4. ACI 306.1 "Standard Specification for Cold Weather Concreting"
  - 5. ACI 305 "Hot Weather Concreting"
- G. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Meetings".
  - 1. Before submitting design mixes, review concrete mix design and examine procedures for ensuring quality of concrete materials. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cast-in-place concrete to attend, including the following:
    - a. Contractor's superintendent.
    - b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixes.
    - c. Ready-mix concrete producer.
    - d. Concrete subcontractor.
  - 2. The Contractor's superintendent must conduct a Pre-installation meeting with a representative of the fiber manufacturer, listed in the "Polypropylene Fiber Reinforcement" Paragraph of this specification below, to obtain technical assistance, guidance, and recommendations for mix designs and finishing practices for a fiber free finished top surface prior to placing any building slab concrete. In addition to any recommendations given by the fiber manufacturer, the Contractor shall follow the requirements of the "Finishing Floors and Slabs" Paragraph of this specification below. Any conflict between the requirements noted and recommendations of the fiber manufacturer shall specifically be brought to the Architect.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage. Store reinforcement in a manner that prevents soil, mud, debris, or oil from adhering to the bars. If for any reason soil, mud, debris, oil or other deleterious material is on a bar, it shall be removed before the bar is installed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

- A. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that will provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
  - 1. Plywood, metal, or other approved panel materials that produce a smooth, formed finish are acceptable.
- B. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved materials are acceptable. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for a tight fit.
- C. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 3/4 inch by 3/4 inch, minimum.
- D. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
  - 1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.
- E. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off metal or glass-fiber-reinforced plastic form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.
  - 1. Furnish units that will leave no corrodible metal closer than 1 inch to the plane of the exposed concrete surface.
  - 2. Furnish ties that, when removed, will leave holes not larger than 1 inch in diameter in concrete surface.
  - 3. Furnish ties with integral water-barrier plates to walls indicated to receive dampproofing or waterproofing.
- F. Forms for Cylindrical Columns, Pedestals, and Supports: Metal, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic, paper or fiber tubes that will produce surfaces with gradual or abrupt irregularities not exceeding specified formwork surface class. Provide units with sufficient wall thickness to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.

### 2.2 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, deformed.

- B. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 185, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.

## 2.3 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

- A. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire fabric in place. Manufacture bar supports according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete or fiber-reinforced concrete of greater compressive strength than concrete, and as follows:
  - 1. For concrete surfaces exposed to view where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected or CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel bar supports.
- B. Joint Dowel Bars: Plain-steel bars, ASTM A 615, Grade 60. Cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs.

## 2.4 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I.
  - 1. Fly Ash: Fly ash may be part of the concrete mix as follows.
    - a. Fly ash to be in accordance with ASTM C 618, Class C or F. Use only in concrete mixes for foundation footings, CMU wall grout fills and slabs-on-grade.
  - 2. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag
    - a. Use one brand of cement throughout project unless approved otherwise by Architect.
- B. Normal-Weight Aggregate: ASTM C 33, uniformly graded, and as follows:
  - 1. Nominal Maximum Aggregate Size: One inch (3/4 inch where placement by pumping)
- C. Water: Potable and complying with ASTM C 94.

## 2.5 ADMIXTURES

- A. General: Admixtures certified by manufacturer to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious material and to be compatible with other admixtures and cementitious materials. Do not use admixtures containing calcium chloride.
- B. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
  - 1. Admixture shall be certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures.
- C. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type A.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Eucon WR-75, Euclid Chemical Co.
  - b. Chemtard, ChemMasters Corp.
  - c. Plastocrete, 161, Sika Corp.
- D. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type F.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Super P, Anti-Hydro Co., Inc.
    - b. Eucon 37, Euclid Chemical Co.
    - c. Superslump, Metalcrete Industries
- E. Water-Reducing and Accelerating Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type E.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Accelguard 80, Euclid Chemical Co.
    - b. Accel-Set, Metalcrete Industries
    - c. Daraset, W.R. Grace & Co.
- F. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type D.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Eucon Retarder 75, Euclid Chemical Co.
    - b. Daratard-17, W. R. Grace & Co.
    - c. Plastiment, Sika Corporation
- G. Moisture Vapor Reduction Admixture (MVRA): **For use only in concrete slabs-on-grade.** ASTM C 494, Type S. Concrete moisture vapor reduction admixture for all interior slabs on grade shall be a non-toxic, liquid admixture that is specifically designed to have a natural chemical reaction with pre-existing elements inside the concrete to eliminate the route of moisture vapor emission through the slab by restricting the integral capillary system.
  1. Basis-of-Design Product: “Barrier One High Performance Concrete Admixture” manufactured by Barrier One, Inc.
  2. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, other products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. MVRA 900 , ISE LOGIK Industries, Gulfport, MS.

3. Provide one of the above named products or, upon approval of the Architect/Structural Engineer, and at the expense of the concrete MVRA manufacturer, provide a product that meets or exceeds the below project specific performance requirements:
  - a. Independent procurement of one cylinder per day of placement of concrete containing MVRA; do not proceed without MVRA representative being present.
  - b. Independent testing of all cylinders for hydraulic conductivity per ASTM D5084.
  - c. Assessing each cylinder for maximum flow of 6.0 E-08 cm/sec
  - d. Should any cylinder exceed the maximum flow, procure a core from that day's placement .
  - e. Independently test core for hydraulic conductivity per ASTM D5084.
  - f. Should any core exceed the maximum flow, provide a topical moisture mitigation system for all areas not meeting the stated limit; moisture mitigation system to include all labor, material and warranty that meets or exceeds the terms of the concrete moisture vapor reduction admixture manufacturer's warranty.
4. Warranty requirements: Product must be installed according to, and in compliance with the manufacturer's published data to include, but not be limited to dosing instructions, onsite representation requirements, and the use of an ASTM E 1745 vapor retarder, installed following ASTM E 1643 and ASTM F 710 guidelines; suspended concrete slabs do not require a vapor retarder.
  - a. MVRA Manufacturer's warranty shall include:
    - a) Term: Life of the concrete.
    - b) Repair and/or removal of failed flooring.
    - c) Placement of a topical moisture remediation system.
    - d) Replacement of flooring materials like original installed to include material and labor.
  - b. MVRA Manufacturer shall provide an adhesion warranty to match the term of the adhesive manufacturer's warranty in accordance with the MVRA manufacturer's requirements for conveyance of such.

## 2.6 POLYPROPYLENE FIBER REINFORCEMENT

- A. Synthetic Fiber: Fibrillated or monofilament polypropylene fibers engineered and designed for use in concrete, complying with ASTM C1116, Type III, 1/2 to 2-1/4 inches long. The fibers shall be placed in the concrete at the mixing plant.
- B. Available Products: Subject to compliance, provide one of the following to REPLACE welded wire fabric reinforcement in concrete slabs-on-grade:
  1. Grace Strux 90/40, W.R. Grace & Company, Construction Products Division
  2. Novemesh 950, SI Concrete Systems
  3. Forta Ferro, Forta Corporation

## 2.7 VAPOR BARRIER AND GRANULAR MATERIALS

- A. Vapor Barrier: ASTM E 1745, Class A, membrane that satisfies the following:
  - 1. Membrane shall not be less than 15 mils thick.
  - 2. Installation shall comply with the "Vapor Barrier and Granular Materials" Paragraph of this specification.
  - 3. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Stego Industries, LLC; Stego Wrap 15-mil Class A Vapor Barrier
    - b. Barrier-Bac, Inc.; VB-350 16 mil Class A Vapor Retarder
    - c. W. R. Meadows, Inc.; Sealtight Perminator 15 mil Class A Vapor Retarder
    - d. Insulation Solutions Inc.; Viper VaporCheck 16 mil Class A Vapor Barrier
- B. Granular Fill: Clean mixture of crushed stone or crushed or uncrushed gravel conforming to Maryland State Highway Administration gradation for 2A coarse aggregate.

## 2.8 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
- B. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. dry.
- C. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- D. Water: Potable.
- E. Clear, Solvent-Borne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B.
- F. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B.
- G. Clear, Solvent-Borne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A.
- H. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A.
- I. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products to include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Evaporation Retarder:
    - a. Cimfilm; Axim Concrete Technologies.
    - b. Finishing Aid Concentrate; Burke Group, LLC (The).
    - c. Spray-Film; ChemMasters.
    - d. Aquafilm; Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - e. Sure Film; Dayton Superior Corporation.
    - f. Eucobar; Euclid Chemical Co.
    - g. Vapor Aid; Kaufman Products, Inc.

- h. Lambco Skin; Lambert Corporation.
  - i. E-Con; L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.
  - j. Confilm; Master Builders, Inc.
  - k. Waterhold; Metalcrete Industries.
  - l. Rich Film; Richmond Screw Anchor Co.
  - m. SikaFilm; Sika Corporation.
  - n. Finishing Aid; Symons Corporation.
  - o. Certi-Vex EnvioAssist; Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.
2. Clear, Solvent-Borne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound:
- a. AH Clear Cure; Anti-Hydro International, Inc.
  - b. Spartan-Cote; Burke Group, LLC (The).
  - c. Spray-Cure & Seal 15; ChemMasters.
  - d. Conspec #1-15 percent solids; Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - e. Day-Chem Cure and Seal; Dayton Superior Corporation.
  - f. Diamond Clear; Euclid Chemical Co.
  - g. Nitocure S; Fosroc.
  - h. Lambco 120; Lambert Corporation.
  - i. L&M Dress & Seal 18; L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.
  - j. CS-309; W. R. Meadows, Inc.
  - k. Seal N Kure; Metalcrete Industries.
  - l. Rich Seal 14 percent UV; Richmond Screw Anchor Co.
  - m. Kure-N-Seal; Sonneborn, Div. of ChemRex, Inc.
  - n. Flortec 14; Sternson Group.
  - o. Cure & Seal 14 percent; Symons Corporation.
  - p. Clear Seal 150; Tamms Industries Co., Div. of LaPorte Construction Chemicals of North America, Inc.
  - q. Acrylic Cure; Unitex.
  - r. Certi-Vex AC 309; Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.
3. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound:
- a. AH Clear Cure WB; Anti-Hydro International, Inc.
  - b. Klear Kote WB II Regular; Burke Chemicals.
  - c. Safe-Cure & Seal 20; ChemMasters.
  - d. High Seal; Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - e. Safe Cure and Seal; Dayton Superior Corporation.
  - f. Aqua Cure VOX; Euclid Chemical Co.
  - g. Cure & Seal 309 Emulsion; Kaufman Products Inc.
  - h. Glazecote Sealer-20; Lambert Corporation.
  - i. Dress & Seal WB; L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.
  - j. Vocomp-20; W. R. Meadows, Inc.
  - k. Metcure; Metalcrete Industries.
  - l. Cure & Seal 150E; Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation.
  - m. Rich Seal 14 percent E; Richmond Screw Anchor Co.
  - n. Kure-N-Seal WB; Sonneborn, Div. of ChemRex, Inc.
  - o. Florseal W.B.; Sternson Group.

- p. Cure & Seal 14 percent E; Symons Corporation.
  - q. Seal Cure WB 150; Tamms Industries Co., Div. of LaPorte Construction Chemicals of North America, Inc.
  - r. Hydro Seal; Unitex.
  - s. Starseal 309; Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.
4. Clear, Solvent-Borne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound:
- a. Spray-Cure & Seal Plus; ChemMasters.
  - b. UV Super Seal; Lambert Corporation.
  - c. Lumiseal Plus; L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.
  - d. CS-309/30; W. R. Meadows, Inc.
  - e. Seal N Kure 30; Metalcrete Industries.
  - f. Rich Seal 31 percent UV; Richmond Screw Anchor Co.
  - g. Cure & Seal 31 percent UV; Symons Corporation.
  - h. Certi-Vex AC 1315; Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.
5. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound:
- a. Klear-Kote Cure-Sealer-Hardener, 30 percent solids; Burke Group, LLC (The).
  - b. Polyseal WB; ChemMasters.
  - c. UV Safe Seal; Lambert Corporation.
  - d. Lumiseal WB Plus; L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.
  - e. Vocomp-30; W. R. Meadows, Inc.
  - f. Metcure 30; Metalcrete Industries.
  - g. Vexcon Starseal 1315; Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.

## 2.9 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber.
- B. Semi-rigid Joint Filler: Two-component, semi-rigid. 100 percent solids per ASTM D 2240.
- C. Epoxy-Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class and grade to suit requirements, and as follows:
  - 1. Type: Class IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
- D. Reglets: Fabricate reglets of not less than 0.0217-inch- thick galvanized steel sheet. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of reglet to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.
- E. Dovetail Anchor Slots: Hot-dip galvanized steel sheet, not less than 0.0336 inch thick, with bent tab anchors. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of slots to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.
- F. Waterstops: Flexible PVC waterstops for embedding in concrete to prevent passage of fluids through joints. Factory fabricate corners, intersections, and directional changes. Use profile of



ribbed surface with center bulb. The waterstop is to be embedded 3 inches into concrete unless noted otherwise on drawings.

## 2.10 REPAIR MATERIALS

- A. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
  2. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
  3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
  4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4,100 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
  5. Repair Topping: Traffic-bearing, cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/4 inch.
    - a. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
    - b. Primer: Product of topping manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
    - c. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by topping manufacturer.
    - d. Compressive Strength: Not less than 5700 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109.

## 2.11 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

- A. Prepare design mixes for each type and strength of concrete determined by either laboratory trial mix or field test data bases, as follows:
1. Proportion normal-weight concrete according to ACI 211.1 and ACI 301 and ACI 318-02.
  2. Under circumstances where laboratory trial mix or field test data are not available, the required average compressive strength of concrete produced with materials similar to those specified shall be at least 1,200 psi greater than the specified compressive strength. This alternative shall not be permitted if the specified compressive strength is greater than 4,000 psi.
- B. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mix designs for the laboratory trial mix basis.
- C. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:

1. Fly Ash: 18 percent.
  2. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent.
- D. Air Content: Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in concrete at point of placement having an air content as follows within a tolerance of plus 1 or minus 1.5 percent, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Air Content: 6 percent for 3/4-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
- E. Do not air entrain concrete to trowel-finished interior floors and suspended slabs. Do not allow entrapped air content to exceed 3 percent.
- F. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 percent by weight of cement.
- G. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Use water-reducing admixture or high-range water-reducing admixture (superplasticizer) in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
  2. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.

## 2.12 CONCRETE MIXTURES FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS

- A. Footings: Proportion normal-weight concrete mix as follows:
1. Minimum Compressive Strength (28 Days): 3000 psi (Interior) and 4500 psi (Exterior).
  2. Select slump limits from subparagraphs below or revise to suit Project.
  3. Maximum Slump: 4 inches.
  4. Maximum Slump for Concrete Containing High-Range Water-Reducing Admixture: 8 inches after admixture is added to concrete with 2 to 4 inch slump.
- B. Foundation/Retaining Walls: See Structural Drawings.
- C. Slabs-on-Grade: Proportion normal-weight concrete mix as follows:
1. Minimum Compressive Strength (28 Days): 4000 psi (Interior) and 4500 psi (Exterior).
  2. Select cementitious materials content from subparagraphs below or delete if ACI 301 default for floors is sufficient. ACI 302.1R recommends quantities in listed order below, for nominal maximum aggregate sizes 1-1/2, 1, and 3/4 inch (38, 25, and 19 mm). ACI 301 sets identical quantities, but for minimum cement rather than cementitious materials content.
  3. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: 520 lb/cu. yd.
  4. Maximum Slump for Concrete Containing High-Range Water-Reducing Admixture: 8-inches after admixture is added to concrete .
  5. Interior slab mix is to contain a high-range, water-reducing admixture with a water cement ratio equal to 0.47.

6. Produce a mix that has the minimum amount of water necessary to generate a 2 to 3 inch slump prior to the addition of any water reducing admixtures, as recommended in ACI 302.1R, "Concrete Floor and Slab Construction", Chapter 6, "Concrete Properties and Consistency".
7. Reinforce concrete with polypropylene fiber reinforcement at a dosage rate specified by fiber reinforcement manufacturer. Reinforcement to be placed in concrete at the mixing plant per fiber reinforcement manufacturer's recommendations.
8. Per ACI 544.3, mix designs for concrete containing fiber reinforcement shall include a maximum 55% by volume coarse aggregate content by total volume of aggregates (sand and stone).

D. Suspended Slabs: Proportion normal-weight concrete mix as follows:

1. Minimum Compressive Strength (28 Days): 3500 psi.
2. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: 520 lb/cu. yd.
3. Maximum Slump for Concrete Containing High-Range Water-Reducing Admixture: 8-inches after admixture is added to concrete .
4. Interior slab mix is to contain a high-range, water-reducing admixture with a water cement ratio equal to 0.47.
5. Produce a mix that has the minimum amount of water necessary to generate a 2 to 3 inch slump prior to the addition of any water reducing admixtures, as recommended in ACI 302.1R, "Concrete Floor and Slab Construction", Chapter 6, "Concrete Properties and Consistency"
6. Reinforce concrete with welded wire fabric per contract documents and supported per Paragraph 3.5.E. The use of polypropylene fiber reinforcement is not allowed without the permission of the Engineer-Of-Record.

E. Exterior Sidewalks: See Division 32 Section "Concrete Pavement."

## 2.13 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

- A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice".

## 2.14 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94 and ASTM C 1116, and furnish batch ticket information for EACH delivery to the Project site.
  1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg. F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 FORMWORK

- A. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until concrete structure can support such loads.
- B. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.
- C. Limit concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347R as abrupt or gradual, as follows:
  - 1. Class A, 1/8 inch for concrete exposed to view.
  - 2. Class B, 1/4 inch for all other concrete surfaces.
- D. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical. Kerf wood inserts for forming keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
  - 1. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.
- E. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.
- F. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.
- G. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.
- H. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
- I. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.
- J. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.
- K. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.

### 3.2 EMBEDDED ITEMS

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use Setting Drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 1. Install anchor bolts, accurately located, to elevations required.

2. Install reglets to receive top edge of foundation sheet waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and other conditions.
3. Install dovetail anchor slots in concrete structures as indicated.

### 3.3 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS

- A. General: Formwork, for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work, that do not support the weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg. F for 24 hours after placing concrete provided concrete is hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations and provided curing and protection operations are maintained.
- B. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material will not be acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-release agent.
- C. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Architect.

### 3.4 VAPOR BARRIER AND GRANULAR MATERIAL

- A. Vapor Barrier: Place, protect, and repair membrane according to ASTM E 1643, ASTM F 710 and manufacturer's written instructions. Contractor shall place the vapor barrier directly below the concrete slab and on top of granular fill. Lap joints 6 inches minimum and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape. Sheets to extend to interior face of foundation walls, turn up vertically and terminate flush with top of concrete floor slab. Adhere to foundation wall with manufacturer's recommended tape. Seal all penetrations with manufacturer's recommended methods of boots, mastic or tape.
- B. Granular Fill: Place a minimum of 4 inches compacted granular fill on top of subgrade to elevation tolerances of plus 0 inch or minus 1/2 inch.

### 3.5 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing reinforcement.
  1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials.
- C. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.

1. Shop- or field-weld reinforcement according to AWS D1.4, where indicated.
- D. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- E. Install welded wire fabric in longest practicable lengths on bar supports spaced at 3'-0" maximum spacing to minimize sagging. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least one mesh spacing. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction. Lace overlaps with wire.

### 3.6 JOINTS

- A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
  1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints, unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
  2. Form from preformed galvanized steel, plastic keyway-section forms, or bulkhead forms with keys, unless otherwise indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
  3. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
  4. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated. Locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
  5. Use epoxy-bonding adhesive at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
- C. Contraction (Control) Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Construct contraction joints in slabs-on-grade to form panels of patterns as shown. Use saw cuts or inserts.
  1. Grooved Joints Using Inserts: Form contraction joints by inserting premolded plastic, hardboard, or fiberboard strip into fresh concrete until top surface of strip is flush with slab surface. After concrete has cured, remove inserts and clean groove of loose debris.
  2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8 inch wide joints to a depth of one-third the slab thickness. Cut into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.
  3. Clean all debris from joints.
- D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
  1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface, unless otherwise indicated.

2. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished concrete surface where joint sealants, specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants," are indicated.
  3. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.
- E. Dowel Joints: Install dowel sleeves and dowels or dowel bar and support assemblies at joints where indicated.
1. Use dowel sleeves or lubricate or asphalt-coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

### 3.7 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.
- B. Before placing concrete, water may not be added at Project site, unless there is a specific written indication on the delivery slip of how much water has not been added to the mix at the mixing plant.
1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mix. The addition of fiber reinforcement to concrete for slab construction will reduce field tested concrete slumps. The lower slump values for concrete that contain fiber reinforcement will not reduce workability of the concrete. Per ACI 302, the workability of a concrete mixture is not directly proportional to the slump. The addition of water at the project site to increase slump will likely result in excessive bleed water during finishing operations and is not permitted. Contractor shall contact fiber reinforcement representative to address any concerns with concrete workability and field tested slumps.
- C. Deposit concrete continuously or in layers of such thickness that no new concrete will be placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as specified. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
1. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment. Use equipment and procedures for consolidating concrete recommended by ACI 309R.
  2. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations no farther than the visible effectiveness of the vibrator. Place vibrators to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mix constituents to segregate.
- D. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.

1. Consolidate concrete during placement operations so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
  2. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
  3. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
  4. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
  5. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, free of humps or hollows, before excess moisture or bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.
- E. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
1. When air temperature has fallen to, or is expected to fall below 40 deg F, uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50 deg. F and not more than 80 deg. F at point of placement.
  2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
  3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators, unless otherwise specified and approved in mix designs.
- F. Hot-Weather Placement: Place concrete according to recommendations in ACI 305R and as follows, when hot-weather conditions exist:
1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg. F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
  2. Cover steel reinforcement with water-soaked burlap so steel temperature will not exceed ambient air temperature immediately before embedding in concrete.
  3. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade moisture uniform without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

### 3.8 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

- A. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defective areas repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections exceeding ACI 347R limits for class of surface specified.
- B. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and defective areas. Remove fins and other projections exceeding 1/8 inch in height.
1. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view or to be covered with a coating or covering material applied directly to concrete, such as waterproofing, dampproofing, veneer plaster, or painting.
  2. Do not apply rubbed finish to smooth-formed finish.



C. Rubbed Finish: Apply the following to smooth-formed finished concrete:

1. Smooth-Rubbed Finish: Not later than one day after form removal, moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or another abrasive until producing a uniform color and texture. Do not apply cement grout other than that created by the rubbing process.
2. Grout-Cleaned Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply grout of a consistency of thick paint to coat surfaces and fill small holes. Mix one part portland cement to one and one-half parts fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding admixture and water. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match adjacent surfaces. Scrub grout into voids and remove excess grout. When grout whitens, rub surface with clean burlap and keep surface damp by fog spray for at least 36 hours.

D. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.9 WATERSTOPS

- A. Flexible Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other joints to form a continuous diaphragm. Install in longest lengths practicable. Support and protect exposed waterstops during progress of the Work. Field fabricate joints in waterstops according to manufacture's written instructions.

### 3.10 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

- A. General: Comply with recommendations in ACI 302.1R for screeding, restraighening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
- B. Concrete placement conditions should satisfy the following requirements to reduce random slab cracking:

1. The base shall be free of frost and should not contain standing water. If concrete is placed in hot, dry conditions, the base should be lightly damped with water in advance of concreting.
2. When slabs are placed on grade, there should be no more than 30 deg. F difference between the temperature of the base and concrete at the time of placement.
3. Ideally, concrete should be protected from sun and wind and be placed after floor or roof deck is installed.

C. Requirements for finishing slabs with fiber reinforcement:

1. The use of vibratory screeds per standard ACI recommendations is required.
2. Consult fiber manufacturer representative if bleed water appears during finishing operations. Removing bleed water by any means other than natural evaporation will likely expose fibers in the finished surface.

3. Conduct power trowel operations as late as possible per standard ACI recommendations.
- D. Scratch Finish: While still plastic, texture concrete surface that has been screeded and bull-floated or darbied. Use stiff brushes, brooms, or rakes.
1. Apply scratch finish to surfaces indicated and to surfaces to receive concrete floor topping or mortar setting beds for ceramic or quarry tile, portland cement terrazzo, and other bonded cementitious floor finishes.
- E. Float Finish: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power driven floats. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraightening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
1. Apply float finish to surfaces indicated, to surfaces to receive trowel finish, and to floor and slab surfaces to be covered with fluid-applied or sheet waterproofing, built-up or membrane roofing, or sand-bed terrazzo.
- F. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first trowel finish and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
1. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces indicated and to floor and slab surfaces exposed to view or to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin film-finish coating system
  2. Finish surfaces to the following tolerances, measured within 24 hours according to ASTM E 1155 for a randomly trafficked floor surface:
    - a. Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 35; and levelness, F(L) 25; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 24; and levelness, F(L) 17; for slabs-on-grade.
    - b. Specified values of flatness shall be based on "10-ft straightedge method" for suspended slabs. Flatness shall be within 1/8-inch per 10-ft for four of five consecutive measurements. In addition, visually obvious faults in floor flatness shall be corrected at contractor's own expense.
- G. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a partial trowel finish, stopping after second troweling, to surfaces indicated and to surfaces where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed by either thickset or thin-set method. Immediately after second troweling, and when concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom.
- H. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, and ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.
1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

### 3.11 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

- A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures, unless otherwise indicated, after work of other trades is in place. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete Work.
- B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.
- C. Equipment Bases and Foundations: Provide machine and equipment bases and foundations as shown on Drawings. Set anchor bolts for machines and equipment at correct elevations, complying with diagrams or templates of manufacturer furnishing machines and equipment.

### 3.12 CONCRETE PROTECTION AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and with recommendations in ACI 305R for hot-weather protection during curing.
- B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
- C. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing by one or a combination of the following methods for unformed surfaces.
- D. Unformed Surfaces: Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete. Cure unformed surfaces, including floors and slabs, concrete floor toppings, and other surfaces, by one or a combination of the following methods:
  - 1. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with Plastic Sheet cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches. Cure for not less than 24 hours.
    - a. Cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings with a Plastic Sheet cover for 24 hours or a curing compound that the manufacturer recommends for use with floor coverings.
  - 2. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
  - 3. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial

application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

### 3.13 JOINT FILLING

- A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joint clean and dry.
- C. Install semi-rigid epoxy joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and at least 2 inches deep in formed joints. Fill joint in a manner that provides a finish at the joint which is flush with the surrounding surface of the slab.
- D. Joint filling is not required for 1/8-inch wide control joints.

### 3.14 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.
- B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of one part portland cement to two and one-half parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.
- C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.
  - 1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch in any dimension in solid concrete but not less than 1 inch in depth. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
  - 2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar will match surrounding color. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
  - 3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Architect.
- D. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high areas. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.

1. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
  2. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
  3. Correct localized low areas during or immediately after completing surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
  4. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
  5. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch to match adjacent floor elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
  6. Repair defective areas, except random cracks less than 0.01 inch wide and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts and expose steel reinforcement with at least 3/4 inch clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mix as original concrete except without coarse aggregate. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
  7. Repair random cracks less than 0.01 inch wide and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter with patching mortar. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.
- E. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar. All removal and repairs shall be at Contractor's own expense.
- F. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval. All removal and repairs shall be at Contractor's own expense.

### 3.15 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Contractor will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to sample materials, perform tests, and submit test reports during concrete placement according to requirements specified in this Article. See above Paragraph 2.5.G.3 for testing and performance requirements at the expense of the concrete moisture vapor reduction admixture (MVRA) manufacturer.
- B. Testing Services: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:

1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mix exceeding 5 cu. yd., but less than 25 cu. yd., plus one set for each additional 30 cu. yd. or fraction thereof.
2. Slump: ASTM C 143; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mix. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
3. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mix.
4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
5. Compression Test Specimens:
  - a. ASTM C 31; cast and laboratory (standard) cure one set of three standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample. Transport the cylinders to laboratory within 24 hours for final curing and testing.
  - b. ASTM C 31; cast and field cure one standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample. Field cure the cylinders for the first five (5) days, minimum, in the field under the same conditions as the cast concrete. Transport the cylinders to the laboratory for continued curing and testing.
6. Compressive-Strength Tests:
  - a. ASTM C 39; test one laboratory (standard) cured specimen at 7 days and 2 specimens at 28 days.
  - b. ASTM C 39; test field cured specimen at 7 days.
- C. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion cylinders that have been totally cured in the laboratory (no field curing), Contractor shall evaluate operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
- D. A 28 day compressive-strength test for concrete shall be the average compressive strength from two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at 28 days.
- E. Strength of concrete will be satisfactory if every average of sets of three consecutive compressive-strength tests at 28 days (total of 6 cylinders) equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
- F. If time of concrete strength gain is affected by materials in the mix, such as fly ash, provide correlation information between the 28-day compressive strength and the final compressive strength prior to performing compressive strength tests.
- G. Non-destructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
- H. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect. The Contractor will be notified of the tests and the

tests will be paid for by the Contractor. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42 or by other methods as directed by Architect.

END OF SECTION 033000

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



## SECTION 042000 - UNIT MASONRY (ASSEMBLIES)

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes unit masonry assemblies consisting of the following:

1. Concrete masonry units.
2. Face brick.
3. Mortar and grout.
4. Reinforcing steel.
5. Masonry joint reinforcement.
6. Ties and anchors.
7. Embedded flashing.
8. Miscellaneous masonry accessories.

- B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 3 Section "Cast-In-Place Concrete"
2. Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications"
3. Division 5 Section "Structural Steel Framing"
4. Division 5 Section "Cold Formed Metal Framing"
5. Division 6 Section "Sheathing"
6. Division 7 Section "Elastomeric Sheet Waterproofing"
7. Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim"
8. Division 7 Section "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems"
9. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants"
10. Division 8 Section "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames"

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide unit masonry that develops the following net-area compressive strengths (f'm) at 28 days. Determine compressive strength of masonry from net-area compressive strengths of masonry units and mortar types according to Tables 1 and 2 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

1. For Concrete Unit Masonry: 2000 psi (MPa).

## 1.1 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each different masonry unit, accessory, and other manufactured product specified, to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Submittals".
- B. Shop Drawings: In accordance with Division 1 Section "Submittals", prepare and submit shop drawings including details of the following, at a scale of not less than 3" = 1'-0".
  1. Locations and types of lintels.
  2. Indicate required horizontal and vertical reinforcing and horizontal masonry bond beams.
  3. Fabricated flashing details, sections and installation methods including, but not limited to, through-wall base flashings, sill flashings, head flashings, low roof/high wall flashings, cap flashings, corner flashings, end dam flashings, stepped flashings and 2-piece flashing assemblies.
  4. Locations and detailed methods of attachment to supporting structural items and systems.
  5. Submit details and installation methods incorporating special shape units.
  6. Submit documentation of constructability issues related to design, installation methods, applicable building codes, fire-rating and/or compatibility conditions. Accompany documentation with the most recent Technical Standards published by the International Masonry Institute, National Concrete Masonry Association, Brick Industry Association and the product manufacturer's printed recommendations.
    - a. Compatibility Reports: Certification from foamed-in-place polyurethane insulation manufacturer indicating insulation is chemically and adhesively compatible with all adjoining cavity wall assembly materials including, but not limited to, membrane and metal flashing materials, sealants, backer rods, masonry reinforcing, masonry ties, gaskets and similar materials. List all materials, if any, which may be damaged by coming into contact with foamed-in-place insulation, either by short-term or long-term contact. Refer to Division 7 Section "Foamed-In-Place Insulation."
- C. Samples for Initial Selection of the following:
  1. Unit masonry samples in small-scale form showing the full range of colors and textures available for each different exposed masonry unit required. Submit face brick to show range of colors, texture and mortar types for matching existing brick. Submit concrete masonry samples to illustrate texture.
  2. Colored mortar samples showing the full range of colors available.
- D. Samples for Verification: For the following:
  1. Full-size units for each different exposed masonry unit required, showing the full range of exposed colors, textures, and dimensions to be expected in the completed construction.
  2. Colored mortar samples for each color required, showing the full range of colors expected in the finished construction. Make samples using the same sand and mortar ingredients to be used on Project. Label samples to indicate types and amounts of pigments used.

3. Weeps/vents in color to match mortar color.
  4. Accessories embedded in the masonry.
- E. List of Materials Used in Constructing Mockups: List generic product names together with manufacturers, manufacturers' product names, model numbers, lot numbers, batch numbers, source of supply, and other information as required to identify materials used. Include mix proportions for mortar and grout and source of aggregates.
1. Submittal is for information only. Neither receipt of list nor approval of mockup constitutes approval of deviations from the Contract Documents, unless such deviations are specifically brought to the attention of the Architect and approved in writing.
- F. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- G. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results of the following for compliance with requirements indicated:
1. Each type of masonry unit required.
    - a. Include size-variation data for brick, verifying that actual range of sizes falls within specified tolerances.
    - b. Include test results, measurements, and calculations establishing net-area compressive strength of masonry units and gross-area compressive strength of clay bricks.
  2. Mortar complying with ASTM C270.
  3. Grout mixes complying with compressive strength requirements of ASTM C476. Include description of type and proportions of grout ingredients.
  4. Submit concrete mix design for filling masonry cells and bond beams. Use concrete mix having a 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.
- H. Material Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that each of the following items complies with requirements:
1. Each type of masonry unit required.
    - a. Include size-variation data for brick, verifying that actual range of sizes falls within specified tolerances.
    - b. Include test data, measurements, and calculations establishing net-area compressive strength of masonry units.
  2. Each cement product required for mortar and grout, including name of manufacturer, brand, type, and weight slips at time of delivery.
  3. Each combination of masonry unit type and mortar type. Include statement of net-area compressive strength of masonry units, mortar type, and net-area of masonry determined according to Tables 1 and 2 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
  4. Each material and grade indicated for reinforcing bars.
  5. Each type and size of joint reinforcement.
  6. Each type and size of anchor, tie, and metal accessory.

- I. Hot and Cold-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with hot and cold-weather requirements.

## 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM C1093 to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E548.
- B. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, through one source from a single manufacturer and manufacturing plant.
- C. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from one manufacturer for each cementitious component and from one source or producer for each aggregate.
- D. Testing Service: Owner to engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform tests in compliance with applicable codes.
- E. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide materials and construction identical to those of assemblies with fire-resistance ratings determined per Applicable Code by a testing and inspecting agency, by equivalent concrete masonry thickness, or by another means, as acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- F. Sample Panels: Prior to installation of above grade unit masonry, build sample panels, using single wythe veneer materials selected for the completed Work. Build sample panels for each type of veneer masonry in sizes approximately 48 inches long by 48 inches high by full unit thickness.
  - 1. Locate panels in the locations indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
  - 2. Clean exposed faces of panels with masonry cleaner indicated.
  - 3. Protect approved sample panels from the elements with weather-resistant membrane.
  - 4. Maintain sample panels during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
  - 5. Approval of sample panels is for color, texture, and blending of masonry units; relationship of mortar and sealant colors to masonry unit colors; tooling of joints; aesthetic qualities of workmanship; and other material and construction qualities specifically approved by Architect in writing.
    - a. Approval of sample panels does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in sample panels, unless such deviations are specifically approved by Architect in writing.
    - b. Demolish and remove sample panels when directed.
- G. Mockup Panels: Prior to installation of above grade unit masonry, allowing sufficient time for construction and approval, build mockup panels, using materials and products indicated for the completed Work, to verify selections made under sample Submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects. Build mockup panels for each type of unit masonry assembly in sizes of full

assembly thickness by approximately 72 inches long by 72 inches high or larger to accommodate all necessary components.

1. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
2. Locate mockups in the locations indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
3. Provide masonry opening with installed aluminum window frame, steel lintel, sill and associated blocking, air-barrier and flashing as detailed in the drawings and as specified in this Section.
4. Include metal coping, roof edge fascia, gutters, *thru-wall* overflow roof scupper and associated blocking and fasteners as detailed in the drawings and as specified in Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
5. Omit portions of veneer, sill, coping, fascia and aluminum frame in order to provide viewable "*cut-away*" areas and items of construction ordinarily hidden behind finished wall construction. Coordinate with Architect prior to Mockup Panel construction.
6. Build mockups for the following types of unit masonry assemblies in sizes required by full assembly thickness, including face veneer, cavity, backup and accessories. Include a sealant-filled vertical joint at least 16 inches long in each mockup.
  - a. Exposed unit masonry veneer with unit masonry backup assembly.
  - b. Exposed unit masonry veneer with metal stud backup assembly.
  - c. Other assemblies incorporating unit masonry backup and claddings as specified in related sections including but not limited to, metal panel systems and exterior insulation finish system.
  - d. Sealants as specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
7. Clean exposed faces of mockups with masonry cleaner as indicated.
8. Protect accepted mockups from the elements with weather-resistant membrane.
9. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
10. Approval of mockup panels is for color, texture, and blending of masonry units; relationship of mortar and sealant colors to masonry unit colors; tooling of joints; aesthetic qualities of workmanship; incorporation of specified and detailed products and accessories and other material and construction qualities specifically approved by Architect in writing.
  - a. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups, unless such deviations are specifically approved by Architect in writing.
11. Demolish and remove mockups only when directed by Architect.

- H. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

### 1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.
  - 1. Protect concrete masonry units from moisture absorption so that, at the time of installation, the moisture content is not more than the maximum allowed at the time of delivery.
- B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
- D. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers. Store preblended, dry mortar mix on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location or in a metal dispensing silo with weatherproof cover.
- E. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

#### 1.4 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.
  - 1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides and hold cover securely in place.
  - 2. Where one wythe of multiwythe masonry walls is completed in advance of other wythes, secure cover a minimum of 24 inches down face next to unconstructed wythe and hold cover in place.
- B. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least 3 days after building masonry walls or columns.
- C. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.
  - 1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by coverings spread on ground and over wall surface.
  - 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
  - 3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
  - 4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.

- D. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
  - 1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 50 deg F (4 deg C) and above and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than 7 days after completing cleaning. Follow manufacturer's recommendations for minimum temperature.
- E. Hot-Weather Requirements: Protect unit masonry work when temperature and humidity conditions produce excessive evaporation of water from mortar and grout. Provide artificial shade and wind breaks and use cooled materials as required.
  - 1. When ambient temperature exceeds 90 deg F with a wind velocity greater than 8 mph, do not spread mortar beds more than 48 inches ahead of masonry. Set masonry units within one minute of spreading mortar.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

- A. General: Provide shapes indicated and as follows:
  - 1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sash, control joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
  - 2. Provide bullnose units for ALL INTERIOR outside corners.
  - 3. Provide single score units where indicated.
- B. Concrete Masonry Units: ASTM C90 and as follows:
  - 1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 2000 psi (MPa).
  - 2. Weight Classification: Normal weight.
  - 3. Size (Width): Manufactured to the following dimensions:
    - a. 4 inches nominal; 3-5/8 inches actual.
    - b. 6 inches nominal; 5-5/8 inches actual.
    - c. 8 inches nominal; 7-5/8 inches actual.
    - d. 10 inches nominal; 9-5/8 inches actual.
    - e. 12 inches nominal; 11-5/8 inches actual.
    - f. 14 inches nominal; 13-5/8 inches actual.
    - g. 16 inches nominal; 15-5/8 inches actual.
  - 4. Exposed Faces: Manufacturer's standard color and texture, unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.2 BRICK

- A. General: Provide shapes indicated and as follows for each form of brick required:
1. Provide units without cores or frogs and with exposed surfaces finished for ends of sills and caps and for similar applications that would otherwise expose unfinished brick surfaces.
- B. Provide special shapes for applications requiring brick of size, form, color, and texture on exposed surfaces that cannot be produced by sawing.
1. Provide special shapes for applications where stretcher units cannot accommodate special conditions, including those at corners, movement joints, bond beams, sashes, and lintels.
  2. Provide special shapes for applications where shapes produced by sawing would result in sawed surfaces being exposed to view.
- C. Face Brick: ASTM C216, Grade SW, Type FBS, and as follows:
1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 3000 psi.
  2. Initial Rate of Absorption: Less than 20 g/30 sq. in. per minute when tested per ASTM C67.
  3. Efflorescence: Provide brick that has been tested according to ASTM C67 and is rated "not effloresced."
  4. Surface Coloring: Brick with surface coloring, other than flashed or sand-finished brick, shall withstand 50 cycles of freezing and thawing per ASTM C67 with no observable difference in the applied finish when viewed from 10 feet.
  5. Size: Manufactured to the following actual dimensions:
    - a. Utility: 3-1/2 to 3-5/8 inches thick by 3-1/2 to 3-5/8 inches high by 11-1/2 to 11-5/8 inches long.
  6. Color and Texture: As a minimum standard of quality, this specification is based on the products indicated below:
    - a. Type "A" Utility Brick: Watson town Brick Bedford Matt T-3 or equal as approved by Professional. Provide colored mortar to match brick color. Alternate brick color to be Glen Grey Corp. #200, "Flashed Matt". Mortar color to be Glen Gery colored mortar blend G-202.
    - b. Type "B" Utility Brick: Watson town Brick Park Avenue Velour T-8 or equal as approved by Professional. Provide colored mortar to match brick color. Alternate brick color to be Glen-Gery Corp. Buff/Spec (W42). Mortar color to be Glen Gery colored mortar blend G-407.
  7. Manufacturers: Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, product that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Glen-Gery Corp.



- b. Redland Brick, Inc.
- c. Endicott, Inc.
- d. General Shale, Inc.
- e. U. S. Brick

## 2.3 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C150, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C207, Type S.
- C. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I or Type III, and hydrated lime complying with ASTM C207, Type S.
- D. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C144; except for joints less than 1/4 inch thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 sieve.
  - 1. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural-colored sand or ground marble, granite, or other sound stone; of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
- E. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C404.
- F. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortar
- G. Water-Repellent Admixture: Liquid water-repellent mortar admixture intended for use with concrete masonry units, containing integral water repellent by same manufacturer as that used in the concrete masonry units (Section 2.C.5.a).
- H. Water: Potable.
- I. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements and suitability as reviewed by the Engineer, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Colored Portland Cement-Lime Mix:
    - a. Eaglebond; Blue Circle Cement.
    - b. Color Mortar Blend; Glen-Gery Corporation.
    - c. Rainbow Mortamix Custom Color Cement/Lime; Holnam, Inc.
    - d. Centurion Colorbond PL; Lafarge Corporation.
    - e. Lehigh Custom Color Portland/Lime; Lehigh Portland Cement Co.
    - f. Riverton Portland Cement Lime Custom Color; Riverton Corporation (The).
  - 2. Mortar Pigments:
    - a. True Tone Mortar Colors; Davis Colors.

- b. Centurion Pigments; Lafarge Corporation.
  - c. SGS Mortar Colors; Solomon Grind-Chem Services, Inc.
- 3. Water-Repellent Admixture:
  - a. Dry-Block Mortar Admixture; W. R. Grace & Co., Construction Products Division.
  - b. Mortar Tite; Addiment Inc.
  - c. Rheopel; Master Builders.

## 2.4 REINFORCING STEEL

- A. Uncoated Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615; Grade 60.

## 2.5 MASONRY JOINT REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: ASTM A951 and as follows:
  - 1. Hot-dip galvanized, carbon-steel wire for both interior and exterior walls.
  - 2. Wire Size for Side Rods: W1.7 or 0.148 inch diameter unless otherwise noted.
  - 3. Wire Size for Cross Rods: W1.7 or 0.148 diameter unless otherwise noted.
  - 4. Provide in lengths of not less than 10 feet, with prefabricated corner and tee units where indicated.
- B. For single-wythe masonry, provide either ladder or truss type with single pair of side rods and cross rods spaced not more than 16 inches o.c. Truss type shall not be used in vertically reinforced unit masonry walls.
- C. For multi-wythe masonry, provide types as follows:
  - 1. Adjustable (2-piece) type with single pair of side rods and cross ties spaced not more than 16 inches o.c. and with separate adjustable veneer ties engaging the cross ties. Crossties are either U-shaped with eyes or rectangular. Space side rods for embedment within each face shell of backup wythe and size adjustable ties to extend at least halfway through outer wythe but with at least 5/8-inch cover on outside face. Unless otherwise indicated, install in first and second courses above finished floor and in alternating back-up masonry courses thereafter.
    - a. Use where indicated and where horizontal joints of facing wythe do not align (1-1/4 inches or less) with those of backup wythe.
    - b. Use where facing wythe is of different material than backup wythe.
    - c. Provide #270 Adjustable Ladder Eye-Wire Anchor System by Hohmann & Barnard, Inc., or equal product.
  - 2. Adjustable (3-piece) type with ladder type reinforcement at back-up wythe which includes an extended cross rod. A vertical rod is hooked onto the extended cross rod and extends down to and behind the cross rod of the next lower truss type unit. An adjustable

vee tie is hooked around the vertical rod for placement into the mortar joint of the face veneer.

- a. Use where indicated and where horizontal joints of facing wythe do not align (greater than 1-1/4 inches) with those of the back-up wythe.
- b. Provide Tie-HVR Anchor System by Hohmann & Barnard, Inc., or equal product.

## 2.6 TIES AND ANCHORS, GENERAL

- A. General: Provide ties and anchors, specified in subsequent articles, made from materials that comply with this Article, and as required by Building Code Requirements for Masonry Structures; use of hot-dipped galvanized ties and anchors in exterior wall construction.
- B. Hot-Dip Galvanized Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A82; with ASTM A153, Class B-2 coating.
- C. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A653, G60, commercial-quality, steel sheet zinc coated by hot-dip process on continuous lines before fabrication.
- D. Steel Sheet, Galvanized after Fabrication: ASTM A366 cold-rolled, carbon-steel sheet hot-dip galvanized after fabrication to comply with ASTM A153.
- E. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36. Plates, shapes, and bars exposed to weather shall be hot-dipped galvanized after fabrication.

## 2.7 ADJUSTABLE ANCHORS FOR CONNECTING TO STEEL FRAME OR LINTELS

- A. General: Provide two-piece assemblies that allow vertical or horizontal adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall.
  1. Anchor Section: Crimped 1/4 inch diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel wire anchor section for welding to steel.
  2. Tie Section: Triangular-shaped wire tie, sized to extend within 1 inch of masonry face, made from 0.25 inch diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel wire.

## 2.8 ANCHORS FOR CONNECTING TO SUBSTRATES

- A. General: Provide two-piece assemblies that allow vertical or horizontal adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall.
  1. X-Seal® Veneer Anchors with VBT-Vee Byna-Tie by Hohmann & Barnard, Inc., or equal product.
  2. X-Seal® Anchor shall be coordinated to details and/or conditions for the appropriate length to accommodate cavity width from face of rigid insulation to the masonry veneer and to include the appropriate connection interface to the anchor substrate, pronged legs to match insulation thickness so that prongs abut the steel studs, and/or at masonry the

face of the substrates. Provide appropriate stainless steel self-drilling self-tapping screws and gasketed seal tape by Hohmann & Barnard, Inc., or equal product.

3. 2-Seal Byna-Lok Wire Tie shall be coordinated to details and conditions for metal stud wall construction for the appropriate length to accommodate cavity width from face of rigid insulation face to the masonry veneer and to include the insulation thickness and sheathing thickness so that the anchor barrel abuts the metal studs. The anchor barrel has a dual-barrel #12 self-drilling shaft with factory-installed EPDM washers to seal both the face of the insulation and the air barrier. The Byna-Lok Wire Tie is 9 gauge or 3/16 wire, anchors spaced at 16 inches x 16 inches directly into metal studs by Hohmann & Barnard, Inc., or equal product.
4. Veneer Anchors #345-SV at sill blocking and #345-BT at jamb blocking spaced and secured at 16 inches o.c. horizontally and vertically. Coordinate details and/or conditions for the appropriate length to accommodate cavity width from face of rigid insulation and/or wood blockings and/or concrete masonry back-up face to the masonry veneer and to include the appropriate connection interface to the anchor substrate. Provide appropriate stainless steel self-drilling self-tapping screws. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc., or equal product.

## 2.9 JOINT STABILIZATION ANCHORS

- A. General: Provide stabilization anchors in horizontal joints of masonry units across the joint between walls at T-shape wall intersections as follows:
  1. Use either a manufactured steel joint stabilizing anchor consisting of two steel rods, connected together on each side of masonry joint by sliding plate assemblies or 1-1/2 inch x 1/4 inch x 32 inch steel strap anchor with 3 inch (90 degree) right-angle bent ends at masonry shear walls.
  2. Anchors to be embedded in grout-filled cores of hollow concrete masonry units.
  3. 16 inches o.c. vertical spacing.
  4. Finish: Mill galvanized or hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A153.

## 2.10 ADJUSTABLE MASONRY-VENEER ANCHORS

- A. General: Provide two-piece assemblies that allow vertical or horizontal adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall, for attachment through rigid insulation to wood or metal studs, and as follows:
  1. Structural Performance Characteristics: Capable of withstanding a 100-lbf load in both tension and compression without deforming or developing play in excess of 0.05 inch.
- B. Screw-Attached, Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Units consisting of a wire tie section and a metal anchor section complying with the following requirements:
  1. Anchor Section: Gasketed sheet metal plate with screw holes top and bottom; top and bottom ends bent to form pronged legs to penetrate insulation/sheathing and contact

studs or concrete masonry unit face; and raised rib-stiffened strap stamped into center to provide a slot between strap and plate for connection of wire tie.

- a. Plate 1-1/4 inches wide by 6 inches long with strap 5/8 inch wide by 6 inches long; slot clearance formed between face of plate and back of strap shall not exceed diameter of wire tie by more than 1/32 inch.
  - b. Provide anchor manufacturer's standard, self-adhering, gaskets manufactured to fit behind anchor plate and to prevent moisture from penetrating sheathing at pronged legs and screw holes.
- C. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Screw-Attached, Masonry-Veneer Anchors:
    - a. X-Seal with box tie with drip and X-Seal Tape, by Hohmann & Barnard, Inc., or equal product.

## 2.11 MISCELLANEOUS ANCHORS

- A. Unit Type Inserts in Concrete: Cast-iron or malleable-iron inserts of type and size indicated.
- B. Anchor Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A307, Grade A; with ASTM A563 hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers; hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A153, Class C; of diameter and length indicated and in the following configurations:
1. Headed bolts.
  2. Nonheaded bolts, bent in manner indicated.
- C. Postinstalled Anchors: Anchors as described below, with capability to sustain, without failure, load imposed within factors of safety indicated, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
1. Type: Chemical anchors.
  2. Type: Expansion anchors.
  3. Type: Undercut anchors.
  4. For Postinstalled Anchors in Concrete: Capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to four times the loads imposed.
  5. For Postinstalled Anchors in Grouted Masonry Units: Capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to six times the loads imposed.

## 2.12 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Metal Flashing: Fabrications listed in Unit Masonry Assemblies take precedence over Division 7 Materials. Fabricate from the following metal complying with requirements specified in Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" and below:

1. Fabricate through-wall metal flashing embedded in masonry from Type 304 26 gauge (.018 inches thick) Stainless Steel, formed to shape indicated.
  2. Fabricate metal expansion-joint waterstop from Type 304 26 gauge (.018 inches thick) Stainless Steel, formed to shape indicated.
  3. Fabricate Stainless Steel Drip Plate from Type 304 26 gauge (.018 inches thick) Stainless Steel, furnished with a smooth, factory-formed hemmed edge. Width: 3-inches
  4. Fabricate Copper Drip Plate from 20 ounce per square foot Sheet Copper, furnished with a smooth, factory-formed hemmed edge. Width: 3-inches
- B. Concealed Flashing: For flashing partly exposed to the exterior, use metal flashing specified above. For flashing not exposed to the exterior, use the following, unless otherwise indicated:
1. EPDM: Ethylene Propylene Diene Terpolymer synthetic rubber. Flexible 40 mil elastomeric rubber membrane. Minimum width as detailed.
- C. Solder and Sealants for Sheet Metal Flashings: As specified in Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- D. Adhesives, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by the flashing manufacturer for bonding flashing sheets to each other and to substrates.
- E. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
1. Pre-fabricated Metal Flashing:
    - a. Cheney Flashing; Cheney Flashing Company, Inc.
    - b. Sandell
  2. EPDM Flashing, flexible membrane:
    - a. Carlisle Pre-Kleened EPDM; Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing, Incorporated.
    - b. Firestone Flashgard Thru-Wall Flashing; Firestone Building Products Co.
    - c. H & B Epra-Max EPDM Thru-Wall Flashing; Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
  3. Single-Wythe Masonry Flashing:
    - a. High-density polypropylene sloped continuous flashing pans with integral weep spouts, connector bridges, and included 90 percent open weave polyester mesh drainage mats in each CMU core. System size to fit standard CMU widths; Block Flash by Mortar Net Solutions, or equal product.

## 2.13 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES/MATERIALS

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, materials that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:

1. For substitution products, refer to Division 1 Section "Substitution Procedures."

- B. Compressible Expansion Material: Closed cell neoprene sponge with sensitive adhesive on one side ASTM D1056 Grade 2A1.

Products: Provide one of the following:

1. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc., NS-Neoprene Sponge
2. Dur-O-Wal, D/A 2015
3. Sandell Mfg. Co., Inc.

- C. Compressible Exterior Expansion Joint Filler: Silicone faced acrylic-impregnated expanding foam sealant and closed-cell foam sealant system. ASTM E283-04, compressible up to 50 percent; of width and thickness indicated. Color as selected by Architect, from full range of standard and special colors.

Products: Provide the following:

1. Colorseal, Emseal Joint Systems, Ltd.

- D. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Styrene-Butadiene-Rubber Compound designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall. ASTM D2000, Designation M2AA-805.

Products: Provide one of the following:

1. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
2. Dur-O-Wal
3. Sandell Mfg. Co., Inc.

- E. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated, organic roofing felt complying with ASTM D226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).

- F. Sill Weep: At brick sills weeps shall be installed as detailed vertically at 16 inches o.c. centered upon the length of the sill. At precast sills weeps shall be installed as detailed horizontally on top of the metal drip plate at 16 inches o.c. centered upon the length of the sill. Install per manufacturers printed instructions.

Products: Provide the following:

1. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc., 341 W/S Weep
  - a. Medium density polyethylene tested in conformance with ASTM D2244, D638 and D746.
  - b. 3/8 inch O.D. x 4 inch long with extended 4 inch wicks and brass or stainless steel screen to match color of drip plate.
  - c. Lay extended wicks horizontally in opposite directions.

- G. Cavity Drainage Material: Free-draining mesh; made from polyethylene strands and shaped to avoid being clogged by mortar droppings. Use standard thickness products in compliance with manufacturer's gap tolerance between cavity substrate surfaces.

Products: Provide one of the following:

1. Mortar Net; Mortar Net USA, Ltd.
2. Mortar Trap, Hohmann & Barnard, Inc. (Basis of Design)

- H. Cavity Weep: Free-draining. Color as selected by Architect, from full range of standard and special colors.

Products: Provide one of the following:

1. Mortar Net Weep Vents, Mortar Net USA, Ltd.
2. Mortar Trap, Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
  - a. Height of weep shall match the height of the specified masonry veneer (up to 4 inch nominal) as indicated in Products. Use the 4 inch nominal height weep at 8 inches or higher masonry veneer units.
  - b. Color as selected to match associated mortar.
  - c. Made from polyester mesh.
3. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc., QV-Quadro-Vent
  - a. Polypropylene tested in conformance with ASTM D2240, D790B, D638 and D1238B.
  - b. Honeycomb design.
  - c. Color as selected to match associated mortar.
  - d. Size according to associated masonry veneer units.

- I. Cavity Vent: Free-draining. Color as selected by Architect from full range of standard and special colors.

Products: Provide one of the following:

1. Mortar Net Weep Vents, Mortar Net USA, Ltd.
2. Mortar Trap Weep Vents, Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
  - a. Height of weep shall match the height of the specified masonry veneer (up to 4 inch nominal) as indicated in Products. Use the 4 inch nominal height weep at 8 inches or higher masonry veneer units.
  - b. Color as selected by Architect to match associated mortar.
  - c. Made from polyester mesh.
3. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc., QV-Quadro-Vent
  - a. Polypropylene tested in conformance with ASTM D2240, D790B, D638 and D1238B.
  - b. Honeycomb design.
  - c. Color as selected to match associated mortar.



d. Size according to associated masonry veneer units.

- J. Stud Wall Cavity Wall Flashing Termination Bar: 304 stainless steel 1 inch x 1/8 inch x 8 foot long bar with foam-tite seal, bar punched to accept fasteners at 8 inches o.c., secure into each stud. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc. termination bar T2 with FTS Foam-Tite Seal, or equal product.
- K. Cavity Air Barrier (installed over C.M.U.): Continuous single component, asphalt free, fluid applied vapor permeable self-sealing elastomeric air barrier membrane which permits moisture vapor to escape through the membrane while remaining resistant to water and air penetration ASTM E2178, ASTM E96 and ASTM E2357. Apply over C.M.U. at 60 square foot (25 mils wet) per gallon. Must be compatible with contacted surfaces and materials including cavity insulation.

Products: Subject to compliance with requirements:

1. Basis of Design: Enviro-Barrier VP™, Sandell Moisture Protection Systems by Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.

Materials that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Air Bloc 31MR – Manufactured by Henry Company
2. Perm-A-Barrier VP – Manufactured by WR Grace
3. Fire Resist Barritech VP – Manufactured by Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing

- L. Vapor Retarder (Installed over C.M.U. below exterior grade or interior floor slab elevation changes only and/or where noted or detailed): Continuous fluid applied membrane, asphalt based non-fibred emulsion-type damproofing which permits moisture vapor to escape through the film membrane while remaining resistant to water and air penetration ASTM D1187, ASTM D1227, E2178, ASTM E96, and ASTM E2357. Must be compatible with contacted surfaces and materials including cavity insulation.

Products: Provide the following subject to compliance with requirements. Materials that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Karnak, 100AF Non-filtered Emulsion Damproofing, Karnak Corporation
2. Sealmastic, Non-fibred Emulsion Damproofing, W.R. Meadow

- M. Cavity Air Barrier (installed over Gypsum Sheathing): Continuous single component, asphalt free, fluid applied vapor permeable self-sealing elastomeric air barrier membrane which permit moisture vapor to escape through the membrane while remaining resistant to water and air penetration ASTM E2178, ASTM E96 and ASTM E2357. Apply over exterior gypsum sheathing at 75 square foot (20 mils wet) per gallon. Must be compatible with contacted surfaces and materials including cavity insulation

Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements:

1. Basis of Design: Enviro-Barrier™ VP, Sandell Moisture Protection Systems by Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.

Materials that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Air Bloc 31MR – Manufactured by Henry Company
2. Perm-A-Barrier VP – Manufactured by WR Grace
3. Fire Resist Barritech VP – Manufactured by Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing

N. Cavity Air Barrier Accessories (installed over C.M.U. and Gypsum Sheathing) for use in detailing transitions between dissimilar materials, cracks and voids, window and door openings, etc.

Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements:

1. Enviro-Barrier™ Mastic, gun grade mastic, Sandell Moisture Protection Systems by Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
2. Stretch-X-Seal Membrane, a flexible self-sealing adhesive backed with release liner, transition membrane flashing and sill tape, Sandell Moisture Protection Systems, by Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
3. Spray-Tape™, a water based single component self-sealing spray or brush applied detail flashing for air barriers applied at 100 square foot (60 mils wet), a minimum of 3 inches around the opening and a minimum of 3 inches into the opening, Sandell Moisture Protection Systems, by Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.

Materials that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Accessories – Manufactured by Henry Company
2. Accessories – Manufactured by WR Grace
3. Accessories – Manufactured by Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing

O. Cavity Insulation (Installed over C.M.U.): 16 inches x 96 inches square-edged extruded-polystyrene board. ASTM C578, Type IV, compressive strength 25 p.s.i. with manufacturer's standard board joint sealing system.

Products: Provide one of the following:

1. Foamular 250, Owens-Corning Co.
2. Cavitymate or Scoreboard, Dow Chemical Co.

P. Cavity Insulation (Installed over Gypsum Sheathing): 48 inch x 96 inch shiplap or tongue and groove edged extruded-polystyrene board. ASTM C578, Type IV, compressive strength 25 p.s.i. with manufacturer's standard board joint sealing system.

Products: Provide one of the following:

1. Foamular 250, Owens-Corning Co.
2. Cavitymate SC, Dow Chemical Co.

Q. Insulation Inserts: (installed in cores of C.M.U.) as indicated on the drawings. Insert in each C.M.U. core individually molded expanded polystyrene with a minimum density of 1.3 pounds per cubic foot, thermal resistance of 5.0 per inch of thickness at 75 degrees. ASTM C578 Standard Type X.

1. ICON Universal Inserts, as produced by Concrete Block Insulating Systems, Inc. or equal product.
- R. Gypsum Sheathing: Gypsum sheathing for wall cavity assemblies takes precedence over Division 6 materials. Gypsum sheathing conforming with ASTM C1177 and ASTM E84 with glass mats both sides and long edges, water-resistant treated core. Subject to compliance with requirements of the following:
  1. Dens-Glass Gold Sheathing, Georgia-Pacific.

#### 2.14 MASONRY CLEANERS

- A. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from new masonry without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces. Use product expressly approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and manufacturer of masonry units being cleaned. Follow brick manufacturer's recommendations for cleaning solution for each brick type.
  1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be used to clean unit masonry surfaces include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Cleaners for Red and Light-Colored Brick Not Subject to Metallic Staining with Mortar Not Subject to Bleaching:
      - 1) 202 New Masonry Detergent; Diedrich Technologies, Inc.
      - 2) Sure Klean No. 600 Detergent; ProSoCo, Inc.
    - b. Cleaners for Red and Dark-Colored Brick Not Subject to Metallic Staining:
      - 1) 200 Lime Solv; Diedrich Technologies, Inc.
      - 2) Sure Klean No. 101 Lime Solvent; ProSoCo., Inc.
    - c. Cleaners for Brick Subject to Metallic Staining:
      - 1) 202V Vana-Stop; Diedrich Technologies, Inc.
      - 2) Sure Klean Vana Trol; ProSoCo, Inc.

#### 2.15 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

- A. General: Do not use calcium chloride. The use of admixtures shall not be considered unless their suitability is reviewed by the Engineer and demonstrated by laboratory test results simulating the conditions that warrant the desired use of the admixture.
- B. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in the form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.
- C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C270, Proportion Specification.

1. Limit cementitious materials in mortar to portland cement and hydrated lime.
  2. For masonry below grade, foundation walls, retaining walls in contact with earth, and where indicated, use Type M or S mortar one (1) part portland cement, (1/4) part Type S hydrated lime and (3-3/4) parts sand, with minimum 28-day compressive strength of 2500 psi.
  3. For above grade exterior brick and non-load bearing partitions use Type N mortar (1) part portland cement, (1) part hydrated lime Type S and (6) parts sand.
  4. For exterior above grade and load bearing clay brick and manufactured stone use Type S mortar.
  5. For interior and exterior tuck pointing use Type N mortar. For restoration work it is important for the masonry contractor to review the existing masonry and submit for approval the appropriate type mortar.
  6. For new brick veneer above grade use Type N mortar.
  7. For natural stone masonry use Type M mortar.
- D. Pigmented Mortar: Select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Limit pigments to the following percentages of cement content by weight:
1. For mineral-oxide pigments and portland cement-lime mortar, not more than 10 percent.
  2. For carbon-black pigment and portland cement-lime mortar, not more than 2 percent.
  3. For mineral-oxide pigments and mortar cement mortar, not more than 5 percent.
  4. For carbon-black pigment and mortar cement mortar, not more than 1 percent.
- E. Colored-Aggregate Mortar: Produce required mortar color by using colored aggregates combined with selected cementitious materials.
1. Mix to match Architect's sample.
- F. Grout for Unit Masonry:
1. Use either pea gravel cement concrete or grout confirming to ASTM C476 with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.
  2. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches as measured according to ASTM C143.

## 2.16 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Brick Tests: For each type and grade of brick indicated, meet the requirements in the "Brick" Paragraph of this Section. Units will be tested according to ASTM C67.
- B. Concrete Masonry Unit Tests: For each type of concrete masonry unit indicated, meet the requirements in the "Concrete Masonry Units" Paragraph of this Section. Units will be tested according to ASTM C140.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
  - 1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.
  - 2. Verify that foundations are within tolerances specified.
  - 3. Verify that reinforcing dowels are properly placed.
  - 4. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- B. Before installation, examine rough-in and built-in construction to verify actual locations of piping connections.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Unit Masonry Assemblies shall be installed in accordance with Contract Documents, most recent technical standards published by International Masonry Institute, National Concrete Masonry Association, Brick Industry Association and the product manufacturer's printed recommendations.
- B. Thickness: Build cavity and composite walls and other masonry construction to the full thickness shown. Build single wythe walls to the actual widths of masonry units, using units of widths indicated.
- C. Build chases and recesses to accommodate items specified in this Section and in other Sections of the Specifications.
- D. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match the construction immediately adjacent to the opening.
- E. Cut masonry units with motor-driven saws to provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Cut units as required to provide a continuous pattern and to fit adjoining construction. Where possible, use full-size units without cutting. Allow units cut with water-cooled saws to dry before placing, unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.
- F. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures.
  - 1. Mix units from several pallets or cubes as they are placed.
- G. Wetting of Clay Brick: Wet clay brick 3 to 24 hours before laying if the initial rate of absorption exceeds 20 g/30 sq. in. per minute when tested per ASTM C67. Allow units to absorb water so they are damp but not wet at the time of laying.
- H. ***No conduit or pipe shall be installed vertically or horizontally in the cavity***, except for items such as wall hydrants, electrical fixtures, etc., for which penetrations shall be horizontal, perpendicular through cavity, located directly at the intended item.

- I. Install air barrier systems per manufacturer's recommended printed procedures.
- J. Install insulation board systems per manufacturer's recommended printed procedures.
- K. In lieu of field formed flashing corners and end dams, preformed stainless steel corners and end dams may be used at the contractor's option. All products shall be compatible with the flashing system and shall be installed per the manufacturer's recommended printed procedures in addition to the sealing requirements described in the specification.
- L. Install insulation per manufacturer's printed procedures.
- M. Install single wythe masonry flashing per manufacturer's printed procedures.

### 3.3 CONSTRUCTION TOLERANCES

- A. Comply with tolerances in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 and the following:
- B. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 20 feet, nor 1/2 inch maximum.
- C. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, nor 1/2 inch maximum.
- D. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as exposed lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/4 inch in 20 feet, nor 1/2 inch maximum.
- E. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch, with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch. Do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than 1/8 inch.
- F. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch. Do not vary from adjacent bed-joint and head-joint thicknesses by more than 1/8 inch.

### 3.4 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
- B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Lay exposed masonry in the following bond pattern; do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
  - 1. One-half running bond with vertical joint in each course centered on units in courses above and below.
  - 2. One-third running bond at utility size face brick with vertical joint in each course centered on units in courses above and below.

- C. Lay concealed masonry with all units in a wythe in running bond or bonded by lapping not less than 2 inches. Bond and interlock each course of each wythe at corners. Do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- D. Stopping and Resuming Work: In each course, rack back one-half-unit length for one-half running bond or one-third-unit length for one-third running bond; do not tooth. Clean exposed surfaces of set masonry, wet clay masonry units lightly if required, and remove loose masonry units and mortar before laying fresh masonry.
- E. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified under this and other Sections of the Specifications. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
- F. Fill space between hollow-metal frames and masonry solidly with mortar, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Fill cores in hollow concrete masonry units with grout 24 inches (600 mm) under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Entire courses and/or individual units of irregular surface faced masonry (i.e., split face) shall be turned smooth side out in locations as directed by Architect during Preinstallation Conference.
- I. Build non-load-bearing interior partitions full height of story to underside of solid floor or roof structure above, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Install compressible filler in joint between top of partition and underside of structure above.
  - 2. At fire-rated partitions, install firestopping in joint between top of partition and underside of structure above to comply with Division 7 Section "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems."

### 3.5 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

- A. Lay hollow masonry units as follows:
  - 1. With full mortar coverage on horizontal and vertical face shells.
  - 2. Bed webs in mortar in starting course on footings and in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters, and where adjacent to cells or cavities to be filled with grout.
  - 3. For starting course on footings where cells are not grouted, spread out full mortar bed, including areas under cells.
- B. Lay solid brick-size masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and compress into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.
  - 1. At cavity walls, bevel beds away from cavity, to minimize mortar protrusions into cavity. As work progresses, trowel mortar fins protruding into cavity flat against the cavity face of the brick.

- C. Set stone trim units in full bed of mortar with vertical joints slushed full. Fill dowel, anchor, and similar holes solid. Wet stone-joint surface thoroughly before setting; for soiled stone surfaces, clean bedding and exposed surfaces with fiber brush and soap powder and rinse thoroughly with clear water.
- D. Site wall copings or caps (including stone, concrete and masonry) to be set on EPDM flashing. Extend EPDM flashing from a point of 1 inch behind the exterior face of the outer wythe of masonry for the full width of the wall to a point 1 inch behind the exterior face of the outer wythe behind the exterior face of the outer with of masonry on the opposite wall face. Seal laps between lengths of flashing with lap sealant, overlap 2 inches to 3 inches. Provide water-tight seal around anchors using flashing manufacturer's recommended products. Tool exposed joints to a point 3/8 inch below face of coping or cap material. Apply continuous sealant bead in tooled joints. Sealant to match site wall mortar color. Adhere metal drip plate with elastomeric sealant or manufacturer's approved bonded tape creating a 1/4 inch drip plate. Seal laps between lengths of flashing with lap sealant, overlap minimum. 4 inches. Seal laps between lengths of drip plate with lap sealant, overlap minimum 4 inches. Provide positive drainage to weeps where bottom of flashing turns out to outer wythe.
- E. Sill Units (including stone, concrete and masonry): Tool exposed joints to a point 3/8 inch below face of material. Apply continuous sealant bead in tooled joints. Sealant to match mortar color. At brick sills tool exposed joints to match adjacent joints. Tool joints between weeps.
- F. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than the joint thickness, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Collar Joints in Clay Tile Masonry: After each course is laid, fill the vertical, longitudinal joint between wythes solidly with grout at exterior walls, except cavity walls, and solidly with mortar at interior walls and partitions.

### 3.6 BONDING OF MULTIWYTHE MASONRY

- A. Use masonry joint reinforcement installed in horizontal mortar joints to bond wythes together.
- B. Corners: Provide interlocking masonry unit bond in each wythe and course at corners, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Provide continuity with masonry joint reinforcement at corners by using prefabricated "L" units as well as masonry bonding.
- C. Intersecting and Abutting Walls: Unless vertical expansion or control joints are shown at juncture, bond walls together as follows:
  - 1. Provide continuity with masonry joint reinforcement by using prefabricated "T" units.

### 3.7 CAVITIES



- A. Keep cavities clean of mortar droppings and other materials during construction. Strike joints of back-up wall wythes facing cavities flush.
- B. Installing Cavity-Wall Insulation: Apply rectangular grid adhesive on inside face of insulation boards. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other confining obstructions in cavity, with edges butted tightly both ways. Press units firmly against inside wythe of masonry or other construction as shown.
  - 1. Seal or tape all insulation board joints, crack and gaps, piping and conduit penetrations with materials compatible with insulation and masonry.
  - 2. All insulation board joints and penetrations shall be sealed with manufacturers standard joint sealant systems to meet the air barrier requirements of ASTM E2357 Assembly test and the International Code Council (ICC-ES) Evaluation Report ESR-2142.
- C. Wall Assembly for ASTM C578 polystyrene foam plastic insulation board shall meet the requirements of NFPA 285 Wall Assembly.

### 3.8 MASONRY JOINT REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Provide continuous masonry joint reinforcement as indicated. Install entire length of longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6 inches.
  - 1. Space reinforcement not more than 16 inches o.c.
  - 2. Space reinforcement not more than 8 inches o.c. in foundation walls and parapet walls.
    - a. Reinforcement above is in addition to continuous reinforcement.
- B. Cut or interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide continuity at corners and wall intersections by using prefabricated "L" and "T" sections. Cut and bend reinforcing units as directed by manufacturer for continuity at returns, offsets, column fireproofing, pipe enclosures, and other special conditions.
- D. At all flashing locations, reinforcement shall not interrupt the flashing.

### 3.9 ANCHORING MASONRY TO STRUCTURAL MEMBERS

- A. Anchor masonry to structural members where masonry abuts or faces structural members to comply with the following:
  - 1. Anchor masonry to structural members with flexible channel slot anchors embedded in masonry joints and attached to the structure. Provide a 1-inch space in width between masonry and structural member, unless otherwise indicated. Keep open space free of mortar or other rigid materials.
  - 2. Space anchors at the location of the slotted channel anchor assembly on the structure member.

### 3.10 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. General: Install control and expansion joints in unit masonry where indicated. Build-in related items as masonry progresses. Do not form a continuous span through movement joints unless provisions are made to prevent in-plane restraint of wall or partition movement.
- B. Form control joints in concrete masonry as detailed on the drawings or by one of the following approved methods:
  - 1. Fit bond-breaker strips into hollow contour in ends of concrete masonry units on one side of control joint. Fill resultant core with grout and rake joints in exposed faces. Maximum distance between C.M.U. ***control joints shall not exceed distances as indicated on Structural Drawings.***
  - 2. Install preformed control-joint gaskets designed to fit sash block
  - 3. Submit for approval a method as recommended by recent technical standards published by Industry standards as noted in section 3.2.A.
- C. Form building expansion joints in exterior masonry veneer as follows:
  - 1. Form open joint of width indicated; install compressible exterior expansion joint filler as per manufacturers' recommendation. Keep joint free and clear of mortar. Locations as indicated on drawings.
- D. Build in pressure-relieving expansion joints where indicated; construct joints by installing compressible expansion material.

### 3.11 LINTELS

- A. Install lintels where indicated.
- B. Provide lintels at all masonry wall openings greater than 12 inches wide. Refer to Structural drawings and Lintel Schedule.

### 3.12 FLASHING, WEEPS, AND VENTS

- A. General: Install continuous embedded flashing and weeps in masonry at shelf angles, lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated.
- B. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Unless otherwise indicated, place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing with adhesive, sealant, or tape as recommended by flashing manufacturer. Adhere all flashing to steel angles.
- C. Install flashing as follows:
  - 1a. At thru-wall base flashing conditions and masonry relieving angles at composite masonry walls, including cavity walls, extend EPDM flashing from a point of 1 inch behind the exterior face of the outer wythe of masonry, through the outer wythe, turned up a

minimum of 16 inches behind the insulation over the air barrier system and into the inner wythe 1-1/2 inches. Install air barrier behind the flashing. Adhere metal drip plate with elastomeric sealant or manufacturer's approved bonding tape creating a ¼ inch drip plate. Seal laps between lengths of flashing with lap sealant, overlap minimum 4 inches. Seal laps between lengths of drip plate with lap sealant, overlap minimum 4 inches. Provide positive drainage to weeps where bottom of flashing turns out to outer wythe. Install backer rod and sealant under drip plate at masonry relieving angle conditions.

- 1b. At thru-wall base flashing conditions and masonry relieving angles at metal stud masonry veneer walls extend EPDM flashing from a point of 1-inch behind the exterior face of the outer wythe of masonry, through the outer wythe, turned up a minimum of 16 inches on the exterior face of the sheathing over the air barrier system and secure with metal termination bar and continuous elastomeric sealant, secure into each metal stud. Install air barrier behind the flashing. Adhere metal drip plate with elastomeric sealant or manufacturer's approved bonding tape creating a ¼ inch drip plate. Seal the top of the EPDM flashing to the sheathing in accordance with flashing manufacturer's recommended termination seal system. Seal the air barrier to the EPDM flashing with the membrane manufacturer's flashing tape. Seal laps between lengths of flashing with lap sealant, overlap minimum 4 inches. Seal laps between lengths of drip plate with lap sealant, overlap minimum 4 inches. Install backer rod and sealant under drip plate at masonry relieving angle conditions.
- 1c. At masonry opening (i.e. window) sill flashing conditions, extend EPDM flashing from a point of 1 inch behind the exterior face of the outer wythe of masonry, through the outer wythe, turned up vertically and continuing horizontally below window frame sill to meet angle flashing stop. Flashing to extend vertically in joint between window frame and vertical leg of angle flashing stop, terminating just below top edge. Flashing to be concealed below joint sealant. Seal laps between lengths of flashing with lap sealant, overlap minimum 4 inches. Extend flashing at sill ends and turn up not less than 2 inches to form a pan. Install air barrier behind the flashing. Adhere metal drip plate with elastomeric sealant or manufacturer's approved bonding tape creating a ¼ inch drip plate. Seal laps between lengths of flashing with lap sealant, overlap minimum 4 inches. Seal laps between lengths of drip plate with lap sealant, overlap minimum 4 inches. Provide positive drainage to weeps where bottom of flashing turns out to outer wythe. At precast sills install weep material horizontally on top of the metal drip plate at 16 inches o.c. At brick sills install sill weeps vertically at 16 inches o.c. Center the weeps upon the length of the sill and tool the joints. At wood blocking sills provide Hohmann & Barnard, Inc. #345 SV and at wood blocking jambs provide Hohmann & Barnard, Inc. #345-BT veneer anchors as indicated in the details. Space and secure anchors horizontally and vertically at 16 inches o.c.
2. At lintels and shelf angles, extend EPDM flashing a minimum of 4 inches into masonry at each end or to cover the extent of the lintel, which is greater. At heads and sills, extend flashing at ends and turn flashing up not less than 2 inches to form a pan. Extend EPDM flashing from a point of 1 inch behind the exterior face of the outer wythe of masonry, through the outer wythe, turned up a minimum of 16 inches behind the insulation over the air barrier system and into the inner wythe 1-1/2 inches. Install air barrier behind the flashing. Adhere metal drip plate with elastomeric sealant or manufacturer's approved bonding tape creating a ¼ inch drip plate. Seal laps between lengths of flashing with lap sealant, overlap minimum 4 inches. Seal laps between lengths of drip plate with lap sealant, overlap minimum 4 inches. Provide positive drainage to weeps where bottom of

flashing turns out to outer wythe. Install backer rod and sealant under drip plate at masonry relieving angle conditions.

- 3a. At low roof to high wall conditions, composite masonry walls, including cavity walls, install a (two piece interlocking type) 26 gauge stainless steel sheet flashing through the outer wythe of masonry. Turn up embedded piece a minimum of 2 inches, flush with inner wythe of masonry at cavity to form a pan (Behind insulation). Overlap ends of stainless steel flashing a minimum of 6 inches and seal lap with elastomeric sealant. Extend EPDM flashing from a point 1 inch behind exterior face of outer wythe of masonry, through the outer wythe, turned up a minimum of 16 inches (behind insulation) over the air barrier system and into the inner wythe 1-1/2 inches. Install air barrier behind the flashing. Seal lap between stainless steel flashing and EPDM flashing with elastomeric sealant. Install interlocking piece of flashing over roof termination as indicated on drawing.
- 3b. At low roof to high wall conditions, at metal stud masonry veneer walls, install a (two piece interlocking type) 26 gauge stainless steel sheet flashing through the outer wythe of masonry. Turn up embedded piece a minimum of 2 inches, flush with inner wythe of masonry at cavity to form a pan (behind insulation). Overlap ends of stainless steel flashing a minimum of 6 inches and seal lap with elastomeric sealant. Extend EPDM flashing from a point 1 inch behind exterior face of outer wythe of masonry, through the outer wythe, turned up a minimum of 16 inches on the exterior face of the sheathing over the air barrier system and secure with metal termination bar and continuous elastomeric sealant, secure into each metal stud. Install air barrier behind the flashing. Seal the lap between stainless steel flashing and EPDM flashing with elastomeric sealant. Install interlocking piece of flashing over roof termination as indicated on drawing. Seal the top of the EPDM flashing to the sheathing in accordance with flashing manufacturer's recommended termination seal system. Seal the air barrier to the EPDM flashing with the membrane manufacturer's flashing tape.

- D. Install cavity weeps, cavity vents, sill sweeps and cavity drainage material in the head joints in exterior wythes of masonry as indicated on drawing and as follows:
  - 1. Space cavity weeps at minimum 24 inches o.c., 16 inches o.c. at 16 inches long masonry units.
  - 2. Space cavity vents at minimum 48 inches o.c.
  - 3. Install continuous sill weep material horizontally on top of flashing.
  - 4. Place continuous cavity drainage material immediately above flashing in cavities.
  - 5. Test weep with water poured into cavity to insure draining water freely comes out of each weep hole.
- E. Install reglets and nailers for flashing and other related construction where they are shown to be built into masonry.

### 3.13 AIR BARRIER SYSTEM

- A. Apply cavity air barrier system on the entire exterior face of the inner wythe of masonry (behind insulation board) to form a monolithic membrane on the cavity wall. Air barrier accessories shall be installed as detailed and/or required by system manufacturer over all dissimilar material transitions such as wood blocking, structural framing, cracks and voids, door and window openings and any other construction element that will prevent a continuous monolithic

membrane. Follow manufacturers recommended installation procedures. System shall meet the requirements of the International Energy Conservation Code (IECC) ASTM E2357 Air Assembly Test.

- B. Install air barrier system on the entire exterior face of the metal stud wall sheathing (behind insulation board). Air-barrier accessories shall be installed as detailed and/or required by system manufacturer over all dissimilar material transitions such as wood blocking, structural framing, cracks and voids, door and window openings and any other construction element that will prevent a continuous monolithic membrane. Follow manufacturers recommended installation procedures. System shall meet the requirements of the International Energy Conservation Code (IECC) ASTM E2357 Air Assembly Test.

### 3.14 REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY INSTALLATION

- A. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.
  - 1. Construct formwork to conform to shape, line, and dimensions shown. Make the formwork sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
  - 2. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and other temporary loads that may be placed on them during construction.
- B. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements of ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
- C. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained sufficient strength to resist grout pressure.
  - 1. Comply with requirements of ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.

### 3.15 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Contractor shall engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform field quality-control testing indicated below.
- B. Testing Frequency: Tests and Evaluations listed in this Article will be performed during construction for each 35,000 bricks or 5,700 concrete masonry units Testing requirements for mortar and grout may be deleted if prism testing is retained.
- C. Mortar properties will be tested per ASTM C780.
- D. Grout will be sampled and tested for compressive strength per ASTM C1019.

- E. Prism-Test Method: For each type of structural masonry wall construction indicated, masonry prisms will be tested per ASTM C1314, and as follows:
  - 1. Prepare 1 set of prisms for testing at 7 days and 1 set for testing at 28 days.
- F. Test weeps. Allow masonry 12 hours setting time before test. Test to be done in 10' lengths of cavity.

### 3.16 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
  - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
  - 2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
  - 3. Protect adjacent stone and non-masonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent, polyethylene film, or waterproof masking tape.
  - 4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing the surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
  - 5. Clean brick by the bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes No. 20, using job-mixed detergent solution.
  - 6. Clean masonry with a proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 7. Clean concrete masonry by cleaning method indicated in NCMA TEK 8-2 applicable to type of stain on exposed surfaces.

### 3.17 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.

END OF SECTION 042000

## SECTION 047200 - CAST STONE MASONRY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Cast-stone trim including the following:
    - a. Window sills.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for installing cast-stone units in unit masonry.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. For cast-stone units, include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for cast-stone units. Include dimensions, details of reinforcement and anchorages if any, and indication of finished faces.
  - 1. Include building elevations showing layout of units and locations of joints and anchors.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For colored mortar.
- D. Samples for Verification:
  - 1. For each color and texture of cast stone required, 10 inches square in size.
  - 2. For each trim shape required, 10 inches in length.
  - 3. For colored mortar, make Samples using same sand and mortar ingredients to be used on Project. Label Samples to indicate types and amounts of pigments used.
- E. Full-Size Samples: For each color texture and shape of cast-stone unit required.
  - 1. Make available for Architect's review at Project site.

2. Make Samples from materials to be used for units used on Project immediately before beginning production of units for Project.
3. Approved Samples may be installed in the Work.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer and testing agency.
  1. Include copies of material test reports for completed projects, indicating compliance of cast stone with ASTM C1364.
- B. Material Test Reports: For each mix required to produce cast stone, based on testing according to ASTM C1364, including test for resistance to freezing and thawing.
  1. Provide test reports based on testing within previous two years.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer of cast-stone units similar to those indicated for this Project, that has sufficient production capacity to manufacture required units, and is a plant certified by the Cast Stone Institute.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E329 for testing indicated.
- C. Mockups: Furnish cast stone for installation in mockups specified in Section 042000 "Unit Masonry."
- D. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
  1. Build mockup of typical wall area as shown on Drawings.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Coordinate delivery of cast stone with unit masonry work to avoid delaying the Work and to minimize the need for on-site storage.
- B. Pack, handle, and ship cast-stone units in suitable packs or pallets.
  1. Lift with wide-belt slings; do not use wire rope or ropes that might cause staining. Move cast-stone units if required, using dollies with wood supports.
  2. Store cast-stone units on wood skids or pallets with non-staining, waterproof covers, securely tied. Arrange to distribute weight evenly and to prevent damage to units. Ventilate under covers to prevent condensation.
- C. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.



- D. Store mortar aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination can be avoided.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
  - 1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F and above and will remain so until cast stone has dried, but no fewer than seven days after completing cleaning.
- B. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Cast Stone: Obtain cast-stone units from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color, from one manufacturer for each cementitious component and from one source or producer for each aggregate.

### 2.2 CAST-STONE MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C1364.
- B. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I or Type III, containing not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C114. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce cast-stone color indicated.
- C. Coarse Aggregates: Granite, quartz, or limestone complying with ASTM C33/C33M; gradation and colors as needed to produce required cast-stone textures and colors.
- D. Fine Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone complying with ASTM C33/C33M, gradation and colors as needed to produce required cast-stone textures and colors.
- E. Color Pigment: ASTM C979/C979M, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures; color stable, free of carbon black, nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.
- F. Admixtures: Use only admixtures specified or approved in writing by Architect.

1. Do not use admixtures that contain more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious materials. Do not use admixtures containing calcium chloride.
  2. Use only admixtures that are certified by manufacturer to be compatible with cement and other admixtures used.
  3. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C260/C260M. Add to mixes for units exposed to the exterior at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in an air content of 4 to 6 percent, except do not add to zero-slump concrete mixes.
  4. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type A.
  5. Water-Reducing, Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type D.
  6. Water-Reducing, Accelerating Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type E.
- G. Reinforcement: Deformed steel bars complying with ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60. Use galvanized or epoxy-coated reinforcement when covered with less than 1-1/2 inches of cast-stone material.
1. Epoxy Coating: ASTM A775/A775M.
  2. Galvanized Coating: ASTM A767/A767M.
- H. Embedded Anchors and Other Inserts: Fabricated from stainless steel complying with ASTM A240/A240M, ASTM A276, or ASTM A666, Type 304 steel complying with ASTM A36/A36M.

## 2.3 CAST-STONE UNITS

- A. Cast-Stone Units: Comply with ASTM C1364.
1. Units shall be manufactured using the vibrant dry tamp or wet-cast method.
  2. Units shall be resistant to freezing and thawing as determined by laboratory testing according to ASTM C666/C666M, Procedure A, as modified by ASTM C1364.
- B. Fabricate units with sharp arris and accurately reproduced details, with indicated texture on all exposed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
1. Slope exposed horizontal surfaces 1:12 to drain unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Provide raised fillets at backs of sills and at ends indicated to be built into jambs.
  3. Provide drips on projecting elements unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fabrication Tolerances:
1. Variation in Cross Section: Do not vary from indicated dimensions by more than 1/8 inch.
  2. Variation in Length: Do not vary from indicated dimensions by more than 1/360 of the length of unit or 1/8 inch, whichever is greater, but in no case by more than 1/4 inch.
  3. Warp, Bow, and Twist: Not to exceed 1/360 of the length of unit or 1/8 inch, whichever is greater.
  4. Location of Grooves, False Joints, Holes, Anchorages, and Similar Features: Do not vary from indicated position by more than 1/8 inch on formed surfaces of units and 3/8 inch on unformed surfaces.

D. Cure Units as Follows:

1. Cure units in enclosed, moist curing room at 95 to 100 percent relative humidity and temperature of 100 deg F for 12 hours or 70 deg F for 16 hours.
2. Keep units damp and continue curing to comply with one of the following:
  - a. No fewer than five days at mean daily temperature of 70 deg F or above.
  - b. No fewer than six days at mean daily temperature of 60 deg F or above.
  - c. No fewer than seven days at mean daily temperature of 50 deg F or above.
  - d. No fewer than eight days at mean daily temperature of 45 deg F or above.

E. Acid etch units after curing to remove cement film from surfaces to be exposed to view.

F. Colors and Textures: Color and texture of units to match existing.

2.4 MORTAR MATERIALS

A. Provide mortar materials that comply with Section 042000 "Unit Masonry."

B. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.

C. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C207, Type S.

D. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.

E. Masonry Cement: ASTM C91/C91M.

F. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes and complying with ASTM C979/C979M. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortar.

G. Colored Cement Product: Packaged blend made from portland cement and hydrated lime, masonry cement, or mortar cement and mortar pigments, all complying with specified requirements, and containing no other ingredients.

1. Colored Portland Cement-Lime Mix:
2. Colored Masonry Cement:
3. Formulate blend as required to produce color indicated or, if not indicated, as selected from manufacturer's standard colors.
4. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
5. Pigments shall not exceed 5 percent of masonry cement or mortar cement by weight.

H. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C144.

1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
2. For joints less than 1/4 inch thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 sieve.
3. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.
4. Colored Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.

I. Water: Potable.

## 2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Anchors: Type and size indicated, fabricated from Type 304 stainless steel complying with ASTM A240/A240M, ASTM A276.
- B. Dowels: 1/2-inch diameter round bars, fabricated from Type 304 stainless steel complying with ASTM A240/A240M, ASTM A276.
- C. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from new masonry without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces. Use product expressly approved for intended use by cast-stone manufacturer and expressly approved by cleaner manufacturer for use on cast stone and adjacent masonry materials.

## 2.6 MORTAR MIXES

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for mortar mixes.
- B. Do not use admixtures including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
  2. Use portland cement-lime, masonry cement, or mortar cement mortar unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Comply with ASTM C270, Proportion Specification.
  1. For setting mortar, use Type N.
  2. For pointing mortar, use Type N or O.
- D. Pigmented Mortar: Use colored cement product or select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not add pigments to colored cement products.
  1. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
  2. Pigments shall not exceed 5 percent of masonry cement or mortar cement by weight.
  3. Mix to match Architect's sample.

4. Application: Use pigmented mortar for exposed mortar joints.
- E. Colored-Aggregate Mortar: Produce required mortar color by using colored aggregates and natural color or white cement as necessary to produce required mortar color.
  1. Mix to match Architect's sample.
  2. Application: Use colored-aggregate mortar for exposed mortar joints.

## 2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Engage a qualified independent testing agency to sample and test cast-stone units according to ASTM C1364.
  1. Include one test for resistance to freezing and thawing.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 SETTING CAST STONE IN MORTAR

- A. Install cast-stone units to comply with requirements in Section 042000 "Unit Masonry."
- B. Set cast stone as indicated on Drawings. Set units accurately in locations indicated, with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.
  1. Install anchors, supports, fasteners, and other attachments indicated or necessary to secure units in place.
  2. Coordinate installation of cast stone with installation of flashing specified in other Sections.
- C. Wet joint surfaces thoroughly before applying mortar or setting in mortar.
- D. Set units in full bed of mortar with full head joints unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Set units with joints 1/4 to 3/8 inch wide unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Build anchors and ties into mortar joints as units are set.
  3. Fill dowel holes and anchor slots with mortar.
  4. Fill collar joints solid as units are set.
  5. Build concealed flashing into mortar joints as units are set.

6. Keep head joints in copings and between other units with exposed horizontal surfaces open to receive sealant.
  7. Keep joints at shelf angles open to receive sealant.
- E. Rake out joints for pointing with mortar to depths of not less than 3/4 inch. Rake joints to uniform depths with square bottoms and clean sides. Scrub faces of units to remove excess mortar as joints are raked.
  - F. Point mortar joints by placing and compacting mortar in layers not greater than 3/8 inch. Compact each layer thoroughly and allow it to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.
  - G. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard. Use a smooth plastic jointer larger than joint thickness.
  - H. Rake out joints for pointing with sealant to depths of not less than 3/4 inch. Scrub faces of units to remove excess mortar as joints are raked.
  - I. Point joints with sealant to comply with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
    1. Prime cast-stone surfaces to receive sealant and install compressible backer rod in joints before applying sealant unless otherwise indicated.
  - J. Provide sealant joints at head joints of copings and other horizontal surfaces; at expansion, control, and pressure-relieving joints; and at locations indicated.
    1. Keep joints free of mortar and other rigid materials.
    2. Build in compressible foam-plastic joint fillers where indicated.
    3. Form joint of width indicated, but not less than 3/8 inch.
    4. Prime cast-stone surfaces to receive sealant and install compressible backer rod in joints before applying sealant unless otherwise indicated.
    5. Prepare and apply sealant of type and at locations indicated to comply with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

### 3.3 SETTING ANCHORED CAST STONE WITH SEALANT-FILLED JOINTS

- A. Set cast stone as indicated on Drawings. Set units accurately in locations indicated, with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.
  1. Install anchors, supports, fasteners, and other attachments indicated or necessary to secure units in place.
  2. Shim and adjust anchors, supports, and accessories to set cast stone in locations indicated with uniform joints.
- B. Keep cavities open where unfilled space is indicated between back of cast-stone units and backup wall; do not fill cavities with mortar or grout.

- C. Fill anchor holes with sealant.
  - 1. Where dowel holes occur at pressure-relieving joints, provide compressible material at ends of dowels.
- D. Set cast stone supported on clip or continuous angles on resilient setting shims. Use material of thickness required to maintain uniform joint widths. Hold shims back from face of cast stone a distance at least equal to width of joint.
- E. Keep joints free of mortar and other rigid materials. Remove temporary shims and spacers from joints after anchors and supports are secured in place and cast-stone units are anchored. Do not begin sealant installation until temporary shims and spacers are removed.
  - 1. Form open joint of width indicated, but not less than 3/8 inch.
- F. Prime cast-stone surfaces to receive sealant and install compressible backer rod in joints before applying sealant unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Prepare and apply sealant of type and at locations indicated to comply with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

### 3.4 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Variation from Plumb: Do not exceed 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
- B. Variation from Level: Do not exceed 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
- C. Variation in Joint Width: Do not vary joint thickness more than 1/8 inch in 36 inches or one-fourth of nominal joint width, whichever is less.
- D. Variation in Plane between Adjacent Surfaces (Lipping): Do not vary from flush alignment with adjacent units or adjacent surfaces indicated to be flush with units by more than 1/16 inch, except where variation is due to warpage of units within tolerances specified.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace stained and otherwise damaged units and units not matching approved Samples. Cast stone may be repaired if methods and results are approved by Architect.
- B. Replace units in a manner that results in cast stone matching approved Samples, complying with other requirements, and showing no evidence of replacement.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean cast stone as work progresses.
  - 1. Remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
  - 2. Remove excess sealant immediately, including spills, smears, and spatter.

D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed cast stone as follows:

1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
2. Test cleaning methods on sample; leave one sample uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of cast stone.
3. Protect adjacent surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
4. Wet surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing thoroughly with clear water.
5. Clean cast stone by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes 20.
6. Clean cast stone with proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 047200



## SECTION 051200 - STRUCTURAL STEEL

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Structural steel.
  - 2. Architecturally exposed structural steel.
  - 3. Grout.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 1 Section "Quality Requirements" for independent testing agency procedures and administrative requirements.
  - 2. Division 5 Section "Steel Deck" for field installation of shear connectors.
  - 3. Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for steel lintels or shelf angles not attached to structural-steel frame, miscellaneous steel fabrications and other metal items not defined as structural steel.
  - 4. Division 9 painting Sections and Division 9 Section "High-Performance Coatings" for surface preparation and priming requirements.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Structural Steel: Elements of structural-steel frame, as classified by AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," that support design loads.
- B. Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel: Structural steel designated as architecturally exposed structural steel in the Contract Documents.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Connections: Provide details of simple shear connections required by the Contract Documents to be selected or completed by structural-steel fabricator to withstand ASD-service loads indicated and comply with other information and restrictions indicated.
  - 1. Select and complete connections using schematic details indicated and AISC's "Manual of Steel Construction, Allowable Stress Design".

2. Engineering Responsibility: Fabricator's responsibilities include using a qualified professional engineer to prepare structural analysis data for structural-steel connections.

B. Construction: Type 2, simple framing.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.

1. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
2. Include embedment drawings.
3. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld.
4. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical high-strength bolted connections.
5. For structural-steel connections indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
6. Prior to steel erection, provide a survey of column base plate column centerline and anchor bolt locations indicating plan and elevation deviations for each. The survey shall be prepared by a registered surveyor.

C. Welding certificates.

D. Qualification Data: For Installer, fabricator and testing agency.

E. Mill Test Reports: Signed by manufacturers certifying that the following products comply with requirements:

1. Structural steel including chemical and physical properties.
2. Bolts, nuts, and washers including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
3. Direct-tension indicators.
4. Tension-control, high-strength bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
5. Shear stud connectors.
6. Shop primers.
7. Non-shrink grout.

F. Source quality-control test reports.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector, Category CSE.

- B. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category Sbd.
- C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code-Steel."
- D. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
  - 1. AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
  - 2. AISC's "Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings" and "Supplement No. 2."
  - 3. AISC's "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings--Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design
  - 4. AISC's "Specification for the Design of Steel Hollow Structural Sections."
  - 5. AISC's "Specification for Allowable Stress Design of Single-Angle Members
  - 6. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- E. Mockups: Build mockups of architecturally exposed structural steel to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
  - 1. Coordinate finish painting requirements with Division 9 painting Sections.
  - 2. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from erosion and deterioration.
  - 1. Store fasteners in a protected place. Clean and re-lubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
  - 2. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.

#### 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Furnish anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

- A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so post-consumer recycled content plus one-half of pre-consumer recycled content is not less than 60 percent.
- B. W-Shapes: ASTM A 992/A 992M.
- C. Channels: ASTM A 36/A 36M
- D. Angles, Plate and Bar: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- E. Corrosion-Resisting Structural Steel: ASTM A 588/A 588M, Grade 50.
- F. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 500, Grade B , structural tubing.
- G. Corrosion-Resisting Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 847, structural tubing.
- H. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or S, Grade B.
  - 1. Weight Class: Standard.
  - 2. Finish: Black, except where indicated to be galvanized.
- I. Medium-Strength Steel Castings: ASTM A 27/A 27M, Grade 65-35, carbon steel.
- J. High-Strength Steel Castings: ASTM A 148/A 148M, Grade 80-50, carbon or alloy steel.
- K. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

### 2.2 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS

- A. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325, Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 hardened carbon-steel washers.
  - 1. Finish: Plain.
  - 2. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 325 compressible-washer type.
    - a. Finish: Plain.
- B. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 490, Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 hardened carbon-steel washers, plain.
  - 1. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 490, compressible-washer type, plain.

- C. Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F 1852, Type 1, round head steel structural bolts with splined ends; ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 hardened carbon-steel washers.
  - 1. Finish: Plain.
- D. Shear Connectors: ASTM A 108, Grades 1015 through 1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished carbon steel; AWS D1.1, Type B.
- E. Unheaded Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36
  - 1. Configuration: Straight.
  - 2. Nuts: ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon steel.
  - 3. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
  - 4. Washers: ASTM F 436 hardened carbon steel.
  - 5. Finish: Plain
- F. Headed Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, straight.
  - 1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon steel.
  - 2. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
  - 3. Washers: ASTM F 436 hardened carbon steel.
  - 4. Finish: Plain.
- G. Threaded Rods: ASTM A 36/A 36M
  - 1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon steel.
  - 2. Washers: ASTM F 436 hardened carbon steel.
  - 3. Finish: Plain
- H. Clevises Turnbuckles: ASTM A 108, Grade 1035, cold-finished carbon steel.
- I. Eye Bolts and Nuts: ASTM A 108, Grade 1030, cold-finished carbon steel.
- J. Sleeve Nuts: ASTM A 108, Grade 1018, cold-finished carbon steel.

## 2.3 PRIMER

- A. Primer: SSPC-Paint 25, Type I iron oxide, zinc oxide, raw linseed oil, and alkyd.
- B. Primer: SSPC-Paint 25 BCS, Type I iron oxide, zinc oxide, raw linseed oil, and alkyd.
- C. Primer: SSPC-Paint 23, latex primer.
- D. Primer: Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, non-asphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer.
- E. Galvanizing Repair Paint SSPC-Paint 20.

## 2.4 GROUT

- A. Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I; and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 404, Size No. 2. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.
- B. Metallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, metallic aggregate grout, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.
- C. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, non-staining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and AISC's "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings--Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design".
  - 1. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
  - 2. Identify high-strength structural steel according to ASTM A 6/ A 6M and maintain markings until structural steel has been erected.
  - 3. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
  - 4. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.
- B. Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel: Comply with fabrication requirements, including tolerance limits, of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for structural steel identified as architecturally exposed structural steel.
  - 1. Fabricate with exposed surfaces smooth, square, and free of surface blemishes including pitting, rust, scale, and roughness.
  - 2. Remove blemishes by filling or grinding or by welding and grinding, before cleaning, treating, and shop priming.
- C. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.
  - 1. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1.
- D. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.
- E. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.
- F. Cleaning: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted according to SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."

- G. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- H. Steel Wall-Opening Framing: Select true and straight members for fabricating steel wall-opening framing to be attached to structural steel. Straighten as required to provide uniform, square, and true members in completed wall framing.
- I. Welded Door Frames: Build up welded door frames attached to structural steel. Weld exposed joints continuously and grind smooth. Plug-weld fixed steel bar stops to frames. Secure removable stops to frames with countersunk, cross-recessed head machine screws, uniformly spaced not more than 10 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for passage of other work through steel framing members.
  - 1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.[ Do not thermally cut bolt holes or enlarge holes by burning.]
  - 2. Base-Plate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
  - 3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.

## 2.6 SHOP CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
  - 1. Joint Type: Refer to contract drawings.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 for welding procedure specifications, tolerances, appearance, and quality of welds and for methods used in correcting welding work.
  - 1. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
  - 2. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for mill material.
  - 3. Verify that weld sizes, fabrication sequence, and equipment used for architecturally exposed structural steel will limit distortions to allowable tolerances. Prevent weld show-through on exposed steel surfaces.
    - a. Grind butt welds flush.
    - b. Grind or fill exposed fillet welds to smooth profile. Dress exposed welds.

## 2.7 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Shop prime steel surfaces except the following:

1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches.
  2. Surfaces to be field welded.
  3. Surfaces to be high-strength bolted with slip-critical connections.
  4. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.
  5. Galvanized surfaces.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:
1. SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
  2. SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
  3. SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning."
  4. SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  5. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-Off Blast Cleaning."
  6. SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
  7. SSPC-SP 10/NACE No. 2, "Near-White Blast Cleaning."
  8. SSPC-SP 11, "Power Tool Cleaning to Bare Metal."
  9. SSPC-SP 14/NACE No. 8, "Industrial Blast Cleaning."
- C. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.
1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.
  2. Apply two coats of shop paint to inaccessible surfaces after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.
- D. Painting: Apply a 1-coat, non-asphaltic primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide 7.00, "Painting System Guide 7.00: Guide for Selecting One-Coat Shop Painting Systems," to provide a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils.

## 2.8 GALVANIZING

- A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel according to ASTM A 123/ A 123M.
1. Fill vent holes and grind smooth after galvanizing.
  2. Galvanize lintels attached to structural-steel frame and located in exterior walls.
  3. Galvanize ALL exposed exterior steel (including steel receiving high performance coating) including but not limited to structural steel beams, tubes and columns, steel plates, etc. and as indicated on the drawings.



## 2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Contractor will engage an independent testing and inspecting agency to perform shop tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  - 1. Provide testing agency with access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.
- C. Bolted Connections: Shop-bolted connections will be tested and inspected according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- D. Welded Connections: In addition to visual inspection, shop-welded connections will be tested and inspected according to AWS D1.1 and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
  - 1. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
  - 2. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
  - 3. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
  - 4. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.
- E. In addition to visual inspection, shop-welded shear connectors will be tested and inspected according to requirements in AWS D1.1 for stud welding and as follows:
  - 1. Bend tests will be performed if visual inspections reveal either a less-than- continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
  - 2. Tests will be conducted on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested, according to requirements in AWS D1.1.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments, with steel erector present, for compliance with requirements.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in

intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Do not remove temporary shoring supporting composite deck construction until cast-in-place concrete has attained its design compressive strength.

### 3.3 ERECTION

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings--Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design".
- B. Base and Bearing Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting base and bearing plates. Clean bottom surface of base and bearing plates.
  1. Set base and bearing plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
  2. Weld plate washers to top of base plate.
  3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of base or bearing plate before packing with grout.
  4. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and base or bearing plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.
- C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel and architecturally exposed structural steel within AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
- D. Align and adjust various members forming part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that will be in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
  1. Level and plumb individual members of structure.
  2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.
- E. Splice members only where indicated.
- F. Remove erection bolts on welded, architecturally exposed structural steel; fill holes with plug welds; and grind smooth at exposed surfaces.
- G. Do not use thermal cutting during erection unless approved by Architect. Finish thermally cut sections within smoothness limits in AWS D1.1.
- H. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.

- I. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
  - 1. Joint Type: Refer to contract drawings.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 for welding procedure specifications, tolerances, appearance, and quality of welds and for methods used in correcting welding work.
  - 1. Comply with AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings--Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design for bearing, adequacy of temporary connections, alignment, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
  - 2. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
  - 3. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for mill material.
  - 4. Verify that weld sizes, fabrication sequence, and equipment used for architecturally exposed structural steel will limit distortions to allowable tolerances. Prevent weld show-through on exposed steel surfaces.
    - a. Grind butt welds flush.
    - b. Grind or fill exposed fillet welds to smooth profile. Dress exposed welds.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Contractor will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect field welds and high-strength bolted connections.
- B. Bolted Connections: Shop-bolted connections will be tested and inspected according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- C. Welded Connections: Field welds will be visually inspected according to AWS D1.1.
  - 1. In addition to visual inspection, field welds will be tested according to AWS D1.1 and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
    - a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
    - b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
    - c. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.

d. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.

- D. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field-welded shear connectors according to requirements in AWS D1.1 for stud welding and as follows:
1. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than- continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
  2. Conduct tests on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested, according to requirements in AWS D1.1.
- E. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

### 3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Repair damaged galvanized coatings on galvanized items with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Touchup Painting: After installation, promptly clean, prepare, and prime or reprime field connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of prime-painted joists and accessories, bearing plates, and abutting structural steel.
1. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.
  2. Apply a compatible primer of same type as shop primer used on adjacent surfaces.
- C. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting are specified in Division 9 painting Sections.

END OF SECTION 051200

## SECTION 052100 - STEEL JOISTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. K-series steel joists.
  - 2. K-series steel joist substitutes.
  - 3. Joist accessories.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for installing bearing plates in concrete.
  - 2. Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry Assemblies" for installing bearing plates in unit masonry.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. SJI "Specifications": Steel Joist Institute's "Standard Specifications, Load Tables and Weight Tables for Steel Joists and Joist Girders."
- B. Special Joists: Steel joists or joist girders requiring modification by manufacturer to support nonuniform, unequal, or special loading conditions that invalidate load tables in SJI's "Specifications."

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide special joists and connections capable of withstanding design loads indicated.
- B. Design special joists to withstand design loads with live load deflections no greater than the following:
  - 1. Roof Joists: Vertical deflection of 1/360 of the span.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of joist, accessory, and product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layout, designation, number, type, location, and spacings of joists. Include joining and anchorage details, bracing, bridging, joist accessories; splice and connection locations and details; and attachments to other construction.
  - 1. Indicate locations and details of bearing plates to be embedded in other construction.
  - 2. Comprehensive engineering analysis of special joists signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for its preparation.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that joists comply with requirements.
- E. Mill Certificates: Signed by bolt manufacturers certifying that bolts comply with requirements.
- F. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.
- G. Field quality-control test and inspection reports.
- H. Research/Evaluation Reports: For joists.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer certified by SJI to manufacture joists complying with applicable standard specifications and load tables of SJI "Specifications."
  - 1. Manufacturer's responsibilities include providing professional engineering services for designing special joists to comply with performance requirements.
- B. SJI Specifications: Comply with standard specifications in SJI's "Specifications" that are applicable to types of joists indicated.
- C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle joists as recommended in SJI's "Specifications."
- B. Protect joists from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

## 1.8 SEQUENCING

- A. Deliver steel bearing plates to be built into masonry construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Steel: Comply with SJI's "Specifications" for web and steel-angle chord members.
  - 1. Recycled Content: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so post-consumer recycled content plus one-half of pre-consumer recycled content is not less than 60 percent.
- B. Steel Bearing Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- C. Carbon-Steel Bolts and Threaded Fasteners: ASTM A 307, Grade A, carbon-steel, hex-head bolts and threaded fasteners; carbon-steel nuts; and flat, unhardened steel washers.
  - 1. Finish: Plain, uncoated.
- D. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325, Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 hardened carbon-steel washers.
  - 1. Finish: Plain.
- E. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.
- F. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20.

### 2.2 PRIMERS

- A. Primer: SSPC-Paint 15, or manufacturer's standard shop primer complying with performance requirements in SSPC-Paint 15.

### 2.3 K-SERIES STEEL JOISTS

- A. Manufacture joists according to "Standard Specifications for Open Web Steel Joists, K-Series", in SJI's Specifications, with steel-angle top- and bottom-chord members, underslung ends, and parallel top chord; of joist type indicated.
  - 1. Joist Type: K-series steel joists.
- B. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for shop welding, appearance, quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.

- C. Top-Chord Extensions: Extend top chords of joists with SJI's Type S top-chord extensions where indicated, complying with SJI's "Specifications."
- D. Extended Ends: Extend bearing ends of joists with SJI's Type R extended ends where indicated, complying with SJI's "Specifications."
- E. Camber joists according to SJI's "Specifications."
- F. Equip bearing ends of joists with manufacturer's standard beveled ends or sloped shoes if joist slope exceeds 1/4 inch per 12 inches.

## 2.4 JOIST ACCESSORIES

- A. Bridging: Provide bridging anchors and number of rows of horizontal or diagonal bridging of material, size, and type required by SJI's "Specifications" for type of joist, chord size, spacing, and span. Furnish additional erection bridging if required for stability.
- B. Fabricate steel bearing plates with integral anchorages of sizes and thicknesses indicated. Shop prime paint.
- C. Steel bearing plates with integral anchorages are specified in Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications."
- D. Supply ceiling extensions, either extended bottom-chord elements or a separate extension unit of enough strength to support ceiling construction. Extend ends to within 1/2 inch of finished wall surface, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Supply miscellaneous accessories, including splice plates and bolts required by joist manufacturer to complete joist installation.

## 2.5 CLEANING AND SHOP PAINTING

- A. Clean and remove loose scale, heavy rust, and other foreign materials from fabricated joists and accessories by hand-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 2 or power-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 3.
- B. Do not prime paint joists and accessories to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.
- C. Apply 1 coat of shop primer to joists and joist accessories to be primed to provide a continuous, dry paint film not less than 1 mil thick.
- D. Shop priming of joists and joist accessories is specified in Division 9 painting Sections. Section "High-Performance Coatings."



## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting substrates, embedded bearing plates, and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
  - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Do not install joists until supporting construction is in place and secured.
- B. Install joists and accessories plumb, square, and true to line; securely fasten to supporting construction according to SJI's "Specifications," joist manufacturer's written recommendations, and requirements in this Section.
  - 1. Before installation, splice joists delivered to Project site in more than one piece.
  - 2. Space, adjust, and align joists accurately in location before permanently fastening.
  - 3. Install temporary bracing and erection bridging, connections, and anchors to ensure that joists are stabilized during construction.
  - 4. Delay rigidly connecting bottom-chord extensions to columns or supports, where noted, until dead loads have been applied.
- C. Field weld joists to supporting steel bearing plates and framework. Coordinate welding sequence and procedure with placement of joists. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
- D. Bolt joists to supporting steel framework using carbon-steel bolts.
- E. Bolt joists to supporting steel framework using high-strength structural bolts. Comply with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or ASTM A 490 Bolts" for high-strength structural bolt installation and tightening requirements.
- F. Install and connect bridging concurrently with joist erection, before construction loads are applied. Anchor ends of bridging lines at top and bottom chords if terminating at walls or beams.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Contractor will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect field welds and bolted connections and to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test and inspection reports.
- B. Field welds will be visually inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

- C. In addition to visual inspection, field welds will be tested according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following procedures, as applicable:
  - 1. Radiographic Testing: ASTM E 94.
  - 2. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709.
  - 3. Ultrasonic Testing: ASTM E 164.
  - 4. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
- D. Bolted connections will be visually inspected.
- E. High-strength, field-bolted connections will be tested and verified according to procedures in RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or ASTM A 490 Bolts."
- F. Correct deficiencies in Work that test and inspection reports have indicated are not in compliance with specified requirements.
- G. Additional testing will be performed to determine compliance of corrected Work with specified requirements.

#### 3.4 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Repair damaged galvanized coatings on galvanized items with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Touchup Painting: After installation, promptly clean, prepare, and prime or re-prime field connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of prime-painted joists, bearing plates, abutting structural steel, and accessories.
  - 1. Clean and prepare surfaces by hand-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 2, or power-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 3.
  - 2. Apply a compatible primer of same type as shop primer used on adjacent surfaces.
- C. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting are specified in Division 9 painting Sections. Section "High-Performance Coatings."
- D. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and installer that ensure that joists and accessories are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 052100

## SECTION 053100 - STEEL DECK

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Roof deck.
  - 2. Floor deck.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete fill.
  - 2. Division 5 Section "Structural Steel" for shop- and field-welded shear connectors.
  - 3. Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for framing deck openings with miscellaneous steel shapes.
  - 4. Division 9 painting Sections for repair painting of primed deck.
  - 5. Division 16 Section "Underfloor Raceways" for preset inserts, activation kits, afterset inserts, service fittings, header ducts, and trench header ducts used with cellular floor-deck systems.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of deck, accessory, and product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, reinforcing channels, pans, cut deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of steel deck, signed by product manufacturer.
- D. Welding certificates.
- E. Field quality-control test and inspection reports.
- F. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating that each of the following complies with requirements:
  - 1. Power-actuated mechanical fasteners.

- G. Research/Evaluation Reports: For steel deck.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
- B. Source Limitations for Electrified Cellular Floor Deck: Obtain cellular floor-deck units and compatible electrical components, such as preset inserts, activation kits, afterset inserts, service fittings, header ducts, and trench header ducts, from same manufacturer.
- C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
- D. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide steel deck units identical to those tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
  - 2. Steel deck units shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
- E. AISI Specifications: Comply with calculated structural characteristics of steel deck according to AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."
- F. Electrical Raceway Units: Provide UL-labeled cellular floor-deck units complying with UL 209 and listed in UL's "Electrical Construction Equipment Directory" for use with standard header ducts and outlets for electrical distribution systems.
- G. FMG Listing: Provide steel roof deck evaluated by FMG and listed in its "Approval Guide, Building Materials" for Class 1 fire rating and Class 1-90 windstorm ratings.
- H. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so post-consumer recycled content plus one-half of pre-consumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect steel deck from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.
- B. Stack steel deck on platforms or pallets and slope to provide drainage. Protect with a waterproof covering and ventilate to avoid condensation.
  - 1. Protect and ventilate acoustical cellular roof deck with factory-installed insulation to maintain insulation free of moisture.

## 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of sound-absorbing insulation strips in topside ribs of acoustical deck with roofing installation specified in Division 7 Section to ensure protection of insulation strips against damage from effects of weather and other causes.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Recycled Content: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so post-consumer recycled content plus one-half of pre-consumer recycled content is not less than 60 percent.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Steel Deck:
    - a. ASC Profiles, Inc.
    - b. Canam Steel Corp.;The Canam Manac Group.
    - c. Consolidated Systems, Inc.
    - d. DACS, Inc.
    - e. D-Mac Industries Inc.
    - f. Epic Metals Corporation.
    - g. Marlyn Steel Decks, Inc.
    - h. New Millennium Building Systems, LLC.
    - i. Nucor Corp.; Vulcraft Division.
    - j. Roof Deck, Inc.
    - k. United Steel Deck, Inc.
    - l. Valley Joist; Division of EBSCO Industries, Inc.
    - m. Vercor Manufacturing Co.
    - n. Wheeling Corrugating Company; Div. of Wheeling-Pittsburgh Steel Corporation.

### 2.2 ROOF DECK

- A. Steel Roof Deck: Fabricate panels, without top-flange stiffening grooves, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Steel Roof Deck," in SDI Publication No. 30, and with the following:
  - 1. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33, G90 zinc coating for deck exposed to the elements.
  - 2. Deck Profile: As indicated on Contract Drawings.

3. Profile Depth: As indicated on Contract Drawings.
4. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated on Contract Drawings.
5. Span Condition: Triple span or more.
6. Side Laps: Overlapped or interlocking seam at Contractor's option.

## 2.3 FLOOR DECK:

- A. Steel Form Deck: Fabricate ribbed-steel sheet composite deck panels to comply with “SDI Specifications and Commentary for Composite Steel Form Deck”, in SDI Publication No. 29, and the following:
  1. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 G60 zinc coating.
  2. Profile Depth: As indicated on Contract Drawings
  3. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated on Contract Drawings.
  4. Span Condition: Triple span minimum.
  5. Side Laps: Overlapped

## 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with requirements indicated.
- B. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, low-velocity, power-actuated or pneumatically driven carbon-steel fasteners; or self-drilling, self-threading screws.
- C. Side-Lap Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, hexagonal washer head; self-drilling, carbon-steel screws, No. 10 minimum diameter.
- D. Flexible Closure Strips: Vulcanized, closed-cell, synthetic rubber.
- E. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi, not less than 0.0359-inch design uncoated thickness, of same material and finish as deck; of profile indicated or required for application.
- F. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi, of same material and finish as deck, and of thickness and profile recommended by SDI Publication No. 30 for overhang and slab depth.
- G. Column Closures, End Closures, Z-Closures, and Cover Plates: Steel sheet, of same material, finish, and thickness as deck, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Piercing Hanger Tabs: Piercing steel sheet hanger attachment devices for use with floor deck.

- I. Recessed Sump Pans: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch thick, of same material and finish as deck, with 3-inch- wide flanges and sloped recessed pans of 1-1/2-inch minimum depth. For drains, cut holes in the field.
- J. Flat Sump Plate: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch thick, of same material and finish as deck. For drains, cut holes in the field.
- K. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 or DOD-P-21035, with dry film containing a minimum of 94 percent zinc dust by weight.
- L. Repair Paint: Manufacturer's standard rust-inhibitive primer of same color as primer.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting frame and field conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install deck panels and accessories according to applicable specifications and commentary in SDI Publication No. 30, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
- B. Install temporary shoring before placing deck panels, if required to meet deflection limitations.
- C. Locate deck bundles to prevent overloading of supporting members.
- D. Place deck panels on supporting frame and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting frame before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract side-lap interlocks.
  - 1. Align cellular deck panels over full length of cell runs and align cells at ends of abutting panels.
- E. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.
- F. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to deck.
- G. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of deck, and support of other work.
- H. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.
- I. Mechanical fasteners may be used in lieu of welding to fasten deck. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to deck manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.3 ROOF-DECK INSTALLATION

- A. Fasten roof-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated or arc seam welds with an equal perimeter that is not less than 1-1/2 inches long, and as follows:
  - 1. Weld Diameter: 3/4 inch nominal.
  - 2. Weld Spacing: Weld edge and interior ribs of deck units with a minimum of two welds per deck unit at each support. Space welds maximum 12 inches apart in the field of roof and 6 inches apart in roof corners and perimeter, based on roof-area definitions in FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-28.
  - 3. Weld Washers: Install weld washers at each weld location.
- B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding the lesser of 1/2 of the span or 18 inches, and as follows:
  - 1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
  - 2. Mechanically clinch or button punch.
  - 3. Fasten with a minimum of 1-1/2-inch- long welds.
- C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches, with end joints as follows:
  - 1. End Joints: Lapped 2 inches minimum.
- D. Roof Sump Pans and Sump Plates: Install over openings provided in roof deck and weld flanges to top of deck. Space welds not more than 12 inches apart with at least one weld at each corner.
  - 1. Install reinforcing channels or zees in ribs to span between supports and weld.
- E. Miscellaneous Roof-Deck Accessories: Install ridge and valley plates, finish strips, end closures, and reinforcing channels according to deck manufacturer's written instructions. Weld to substrate to provide a complete deck installation.
  - 1. Weld cover plates at changes in direction of roof-deck panels, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Flexible Closure Strips: Install flexible closure strips over partitions, walls, and where indicated. Install with adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure complete closure.
- G. Sound-Absorbing Insulation: Installation into topside ribs of deck as specified in in Division 7 Section.



### 3.4 FLOOR-DECK INSTALLATION

- A. Fasten floor-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated and as follows:
  - 1. Weld Diameter: 3/4 inch, nominal.
  - 2. Weld Spacing: Weld edge ribs of panels at each support. Space additional welds an average of 12 inches apart, but not more than 18 inches apart.
  - 3. Weld Washers: Install weld washers at each weld location.
- B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding the lesser of half of the span or 36 inches, and as follows:
  - 1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
  - 2. Mechanically clinch or button punch.
  - 3. Fasten with a minimum of 1-1/2-inch- long welds.
- C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches , with end joints as follows:
  - 1. End Joints: Lapped.
- D. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Weld steel sheet pour stops and girder fillers to supporting structure according to SDI recommendations, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Floor-Deck Closures: Weld steel sheet column closures, cell closures, and Z-closures to deck, according to SDI recommendations, to provide tight-fitting closures at open ends of ribs and sides of deck.
- F. Install piercing hanger tabs at 16 inches apart in both directions, within 9 inches of walls at ends, and not more than 12 inches from walls at sides, unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Contractor will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Field welds will be subject to inspection.
- C. Testing agency will report inspection results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.
- D. Remove and replace work that does not comply with specified requirements.
- E. Additional inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of corrected work with specified requirements.

### 3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on both surfaces of deck with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions to ensure that steel deck is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 053100

## SECTION 054000 - COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Exterior wall framing.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 9 Section "Gypsum Board Assemblies" for interior non-load-bearing, metal-stud framing and ceiling-suspension assemblies.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Minimum Uncoated Steel Thickness: Minimum uncoated thickness of cold-formed framing delivered to the Project site shall be not less than 95 percent of the thickness used in the cold-formed framing design. Lesser thicknesses shall be permitted at bends due to cold forming.
- B. Producer: Entity that produces steel sheet coiled fabricated into cold-formed members.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide cold-formed metal framing capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated on sheet S0.01 of the contract drawings.
- B. Deflection Limits: Design framing systems to withstand design wind loads without deflections greater than the following:
  - a. Exterior wall framing backing up masonry veneer: Horizontal deflection of 1/600 of the wall height.
  - b. Exterior wall framing backing up cement board siding: Horizontal deflection of 1/360 of the wall height.
- C. Design framing systems to provide for movement of framing members without damage or overstressing, sheathing failure, connection failure, undue strain on fasteners and anchors, or

other detrimental effects when subject to a maximum ambient temperature change of 120 deg F.

- D. Design framing system to maintain clearances at openings, to allow for construction tolerances, and to accommodate live load deflection of primary building structure as follows:
  - a. Upward and downward movement of .75 inch.
- E. Cold-Formed Steel Framing, General: Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions."
  - 1. Headers: Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Header Design."
  - 2. Design exterior non-load-bearing wall framing to accommodate horizontal deflection without regard for contribution of sheathing materials.
  - 3. Roof Trusses: Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Truss Design."

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of cold-formed metal framing product and accessory indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed metal framing; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners. Show reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining work.
  - 1. For cold-formed metal framing indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer, licensed in the State of Maryland responsible for their preparation.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- E. Product Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency, unless otherwise stated, indicating that each of the following complies with requirements, based on evaluation of comprehensive tests for current products:
  - 1. Steel sheet.
  - 2. Expansion anchors.
  - 3. Power-actuated anchors.
  - 4. Mechanical fasteners.
  - 5. Vertical deflection clips.
  - 6. Miscellaneous structural clips and accessories.

- F. Research/Evaluation Reports: For cold-formed metal framing.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, design calculations, and other structural data by a qualified professional engineer.
- B. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of cold-formed metal framing that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM E 329 to conduct the testing indicated.
- D. Product Tests: Mill certificates or data from a qualified independent testing agency indicating steel sheet complies with requirements, including base-metal thickness, yield strength, tensile strength, total elongation, chemical requirements, and metallic-coating thickness.
- E. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code--Steel," and AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."
- F. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide cold-formed metal framing identical to that of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- G. AISI Specifications and Standards: Comply with AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members" and its "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions."
  - 1. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Truss Design."
  - 2. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Header Design."
- H. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Prescriptive Method for One and Two Family Dwellings."
- I. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect cold-formed metal framing from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.
- B. Store cold-formed metal framing, protect with a waterproof covering, and ventilate to avoid condensation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering cold-formed metal framing that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide cold-formed metal framing by one of the following:
  - 1. Allied Studco.
  - 2. AllSteel Products, Inc.
  - 3. Aegis, Metal Framing, LLC.
  - 4. Clarkwestern Dietrich Building Systems, LLC.
  - 5. Design Shapes in Steel.
  - 6. Formetal Co. Inc. (The).
  - 7. Innovative Steel Systems.
  - 8. MarinoWare; a division of Ware Industries.
  - 9. Southeastern Stud & Components, Inc.
  - 10. Steel Construction Systems.
  - 11. Steeler, Inc.
  - 12. Super Stud Building Products, Inc.
  - 13. United Metal Products, Inc.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating weight as follows:
  - 1. Grade: ST33H.
  - 2. Coating: G90 or equivalent.
- B. Steel Sheet for Vertical Deflection Clips: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural steel, zinc coated, of grade and coating as follows:
  - 1. Grade: 50, Class 1 or 2.
  - 2. Coating: G90.

### 2.3 EXTERIOR WALL FRAMING

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
  - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated on Contract Drawings.
  - 2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches.

- B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with straight flanges, and as follows:
  - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated on Contract Drawings.
  - 2. Flange Width: 1-1/4 inches.
- C. Vertical Deflection Clips: Manufacturer's standard head clips, capable of accommodating upward and downward vertical displacement of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Clarkwestern Dietrich Building Systems, LLC.
    - b. MarinoWare, a division of Ware Industries.
    - c. SCAFCO Corporation
    - d. The Steel Network, Inc.
- D. Deflection Track: Manufacturer's single, deep-leg, U-shaped steel track; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, of web depth to contain studs while allowing free vertical movement, with flanges designed to support horizontal and lateral loads and transfer them to the primary structure.

## 2.4 FRAMING ACCESSORIES

- A. Fabricate steel-framing accessories from steel sheet, ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of same grade and coating weight used for framing members.
- B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated, as follows:
  - 1. Supplementary framing.
  - 2. Bracing, bridging, and solid blocking.
  - 3. Web stiffeners.
  - 4. Anchor clips.
  - 5. End clips.
  - 6. Foundation clips.
  - 7. Gusset plates.
  - 8. Stud kickers, knee braces, and girts.
  - 9. Joist hangers and end closures.
  - 10. Hole reinforcing plates.
  - 11. Backer plates.

## 2.5 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS

- A. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A 36/A 36M, zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
- B. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, threaded carbon-steel hex-headed bolts and carbon-steel nuts; and flat, hardened-steel washers; zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C.
- C. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 5 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- D. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- E. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C 1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping steel drill screws.
  - 1. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing, manufacturer's standard elsewhere.
- F. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 or DOD-P-21035.
- B. Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I; and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 404. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.
- C. Nonmetallic, Non-shrink Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, non-staining grout containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, and plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C 1107, with fluid consistency and 30-minute working time.
- D. Shims: Load bearing, high-density multimonomer plastic, non-leaching.
- E. Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to match width of bottom track or rim track members.

## 2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened, according to referenced AISI's specifications and standards, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.



1. Fabricate framing assemblies using jigs or templates.
  2. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
  3. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting as standard with fabricator. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
    - a. Comply with AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
    - b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, with screw penetrating joined members by not less than three exposed screw threads.
  4. Fasten other materials to cold-formed metal framing by welding, bolting, or screw fastening, according to Shop Drawings.
- B. Reinforce, stiffen, and brace framing assemblies to withstand handling, delivery, and erection stresses. Lift fabricated assemblies to prevent damage or permanent distortion.
- C. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate assemblies level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet and as follows:
1. Spacing: Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.
  2. Squareness: Fabricate each cold-formed metal framing assembly to a maximum out-of-square tolerance of 1/8 inch.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting substrates and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach continuous angles, supplementary framing, or tracks to structural members indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.
- B. After applying sprayed fire-resistive materials, remove only as much of these materials as needed to complete installation of cold-formed framing without reducing thickness of fire-resistive materials below that are required to obtain fire-resistance rating indicated. Protect remaining fire-resistive materials from damage.

- C. Install load bearing shims or grout between the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations to ensure a uniform bearing surface on supporting concrete or masonry construction.
- D. Install sealer gaskets to isolate the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cold-formed metal framing may be shop or field fabricated for installation, or it may be field assembled.
- B. Install cold-formed metal framing according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions" and to manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Install shop- or field-fabricated, cold-formed framing and securely anchor to supporting structure.
  - 1. Screw, bolt, or weld wall panels at horizontal and vertical junctures to produce flush, even, true-to-line joints with maximum variation in plane and true position between fabricated panels not exceeding 1/16 inch.
- D. Install cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened.
  - 1. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
  - 2. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
    - a. Comply with AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
    - b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, and complying with requirements for spacing, edge distances, and screw penetration.
- E. Install framing members in one-piece lengths unless splice connections are indicated for track or tension members.
- F. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads comparable in intensity to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.
- G. Do not bridge building expansion and control joints with cold-formed metal framing. Independently frame both sides of joints.

- H. Install insulation, specified in Division 7 Section "Building Insulation," in built-up exterior framing members, such as headers, sills, boxed joists, and multiple studs at openings, that are inaccessible on completion of framing work.
- I. Fasten hole reinforcing plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's standard punched openings.
- J. Erection Tolerances: Install cold-formed metal framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet and as follows:
  - 1. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

### 3.4 EXTERIOR WALL INSTALLATION

- A. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure as indicated.
- B. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom track, unless otherwise indicated. Space studs as follows:
  - 1. Stud Spacing: As indicated on Shop Drawings.
- C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for non-plumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.
- D. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.
  - 1. Install single-leg deflection tracks and anchor to building structure.
  - 2. Connect vertical deflection clips to bypassing or infill studs and anchor to building structure.
- E. Install horizontal bridging in wall studs, spaced in rows indicated on Shop Drawings but not more than 72 inches apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.
  - 1. Top Bridging for Single Deflection Track: Install row of horizontal bridging within 12 inches of single deflection track. Install a combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud or stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness matching studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.
    - a. Install solid blocking at centers indicated on Shop Drawings.
  - 2. Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs.

3. Bridging: Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.
  4. Bridging: Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, fasteners, and stud girts, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Contractor will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports. The testing and inspection agency shall perform the following:
1. Inspect field screwed and powder fastened connections. Visually inspect welded connections, perform required tests and inspections, and prepare test reports.
  2. Submit three copies of test reports to the Architect.
  3. Review mill test reports, and certify compliance with Specification requirements to the Architect.
  4. If steel is not accompanied by test reports, or if test reports fail to verify compliance, perform additional tests in compliance with procedures specified in the appropriate ASTM specifications and prepare test reports.
  5. Conduct and interpret the tests and state in each report whether the test specimens comply with the requirements.
  6. Verify mil thickness of materials with the requirements of the reviewed shop drawings.
  7. Perform additional tests, at the Contractor's expense, as may be necessary to reconfirm any noncompliance of the original work, as may be necessary to show compliance of corrected work.
  8. Shop Welding: Inspect and test during fabrication of structural steel assemblies, as follows:
    - a. Certify welders and conduct inspections and tests as required. Record types and locations of all defects found in the work. Record work required and performed to correct deficiencies.
    - b. Perform visual inspection of ALL welds.
    - c. Inspect erection for plumb, level and alignment within tolerances listed.
    - d. Inspect for general conformance to the Contract Documents and reviewed shop drawings.
- B. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.
- C. Remove and replace work where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

### 3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed metal framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that cold-formed metal framing is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 054000

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 055001 – MISCELLANEOUS METAL FABRICATIONS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Steel framing and supports for operable partitions.
2. Steel framing and supports for countertops.
3. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
4. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other sections.
5. Metal ladders.
6. Miscellaneous steel trim.
7. Loose bearing and leveling plates for applications where they are not specified in other sections.
8. Cast Iron Downspout Shoes

- B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include the following:

1. Anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, and wedge-type inserts indicated to be built into unit masonry.
2. Steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.
3. Loose steel lintels.

- C. Related Requirements:

1. Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for installing anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, wedge-type inserts, and other items cast into concrete.
2. Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry Assemblies" for installing loose lintels, anchor bolts, and other items built into unit masonry.
3. Division 5 Section "Structural Steel".
4. Division 9 Sections "Interior Painting" and "High-Performance Coatings".

### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of metal fabrications that are anchored to or that receive other work. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Nonslip aggregates and nonslip-aggregate surface finishes.
  - 2. Abrasive inserts.
  - 3. Paint products.
  - 4. Grout.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.
- C. Samples for verification showing type and finish of abrasive inserts.
  - 1. Color charts for abrasive inserts.

### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.
- B. Mill Certificates: Signed by stainless-steel manufacturers, certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
- E. Research/Evaluation Reports: For post-installed anchors, from ICC-ES.

### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."



B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
3. AWS D1.6/D1.6M, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Division 1 Section "Quality Requirements," to design ladders.
- B. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.
1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F ambient; 180 deg F material surfaces.

### 2.2 METALS

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.
- B. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 20 percent.
- C. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- D. Stainless-Steel Sheet, Strip, and Plate: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304.
- E. Stainless-Steel Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type 304.
- F. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500/A 500M, cold-formed steel tubing.
- G. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Standard Weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Aluminum Plate and Sheet: ASTM B 209, Alloy 6061-T6.

- I. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T6.
- J. Aluminum-Alloy Rolled Tread Plate: ASTM B 632/B 632M, Alloy 6061-T6.
- K. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy 443.0-F.

## 2.3 FASTENERS

- A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
  - 1. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening aluminum.
  - 2. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening stainless steel.
  - 3. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening nickel silver.
- B. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with hex nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. Stainless-Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head annealed stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M); with hex nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M); and, where indicated, flat washers; Alloy Group 1 (A1).
- D. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and, where indicated, flat washers.
  - 1. Hot-dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.
- E. Anchors, General: Anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488/E 488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- F. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors.
  - 1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 (A1) stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M), and nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M).

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Low-Emitting Materials: Paints and coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's (formerly, the California

Department of Health Services') "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

- B. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."
- C. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Primer formulated for exterior use over zinc-coated metal and compatible with finish paint systems indicated.
- D. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
- E. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187/D 1187M.
- F. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- G. Concrete: Comply with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.

## 2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- D. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.

- F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- G. Fabricate seams and other connections that are exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.
- B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.
  - 1. Fabricate units from slotted channel framing where indicated.
  - 2. Furnish inserts for units installed after concrete is placed.
- C. Fabricate steel girders for wood frame construction from continuous steel shapes of sizes indicated.
  - 1. Provide bearing plates welded to beams where indicated.
  - 2. Drill or punch girders and plates for field-bolted connections where indicated.
  - 3. Where wood nailers are attached to girders with bolts or lag screws, drill or punch holes at 24 inches o.c.
- D. Galvanize miscellaneous framing and supports where indicated.
- E. Prime miscellaneous framing and supports with primer specified in Division 9 Sections "Interior Painting" and "High-Performance Coatings" where indicated.

## 2.7 SHELF ANGLES

- A. Fabricate shelf angles from steel angles of sizes indicated and for attachment to concrete framing. Provide horizontally slotted holes to receive **3/4-inch** bolts, spaced not more than **6 inches** from ends and **24 inches** o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Provide mitered and welded units at corners.
  - 2. Provide open joints in shelf angles at expansion and control joints. Make open joint approximately **2 inches** larger than expansion or control joint.

- B. For cavity walls, provide vertical channel brackets to support angles from backup masonry and concrete.
- C. Galvanize shelf angles located in exterior walls.

## 2.8 METAL LADDERS

- A. General:
  - 1. For metal ladders at roof hatches, comply with ANSI A14.3, except for elevator pit ladders.
  - 2. For elevator pit ladders, comply with ASME A17.1/CSA B44.
- B. Steel Ladders:
  - 1. Space siderails 16 inches apart unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Siderails: Continuous, 1/2-by-2-1/2-inch steel flat bars, with eased edges.
  - 3. Rungs: 3/4-inch-diameter square steel bars.
  - 4. Fit rungs in centerline of siderails; plug-weld and grind smooth on outer rail faces.
  - 5. Provide nonslip surfaces on top of each rung, either by coating rung with aluminum-oxide granules set in epoxy-resin adhesive or by using a type of manufactured rung filled with aluminum-oxide grout.
  - 6. Provide platforms as indicated fabricated from welded or pressure-locked steel bar grating, supported by steel angles. Limit openings in gratings to no more than 3/4 inch in least dimension.
  - 7. Support each ladder at top and bottom and not more than 60 inches with welded or bolted steel brackets.
  - 8. Galvanize and prime exterior ladders, including brackets.

## 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL TRIM

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of profiles shown with continuously welded joints and smooth exposed edges. Miter corners and use concealed field splices where possible.
- B. Provide cutouts, fittings, and anchorages as needed to coordinate assembly and installation with other work.
  - 1. Provide with integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete or masonry construction.
- C. Galvanize and prime exterior miscellaneous steel trim.

## 2.10 LOOSE BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

- A. Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items bearing on masonry or concrete construction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts and for grouting.
- B. Prime plates with zinc-rich primer.

## 2.11 LOOSE STEEL LINTELS

- A. Fabricate loose steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated. Fabricate in single lengths for each opening unless otherwise indicated. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated.
- B. Size loose lintels to provide bearing length at each side of openings equal to 1/12 of clear span, but not less than 8 inches unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Galvanize loose steel lintels located in exterior walls.

## 2.12 STEEL WELD PLATES AND ANGLES

- A. Provide steel weld plates and angles not specified in other Sections, for items supported from concrete construction as needed to complete the Work. Provide each unit with no fewer than two integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete.

## 2.13 CAST IRON DOWNSPOUT SHOES

- A. Cast Iron, Type DS4, with fittings required for transition from metal downspouts and to underground storm water piping.
  - 1. Equal to Catalog No. R-4929-A1 (3"x4" downspouts) and R-4929-A4 (4"x5" downspouts) as manufactured by Neenah Foundry Company. Shoes to be primed and powder coated in shop in color to match downspout color.

## 2.14 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.
- B. Finish exposed surfaces to remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, and to blend into surrounding surface.

## 2.15 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.

1. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
- B. Preparation for Shop Priming Galvanized Items: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean railings of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with metallic phosphate process.
- C. Shop prime iron and steel items not indicated to be galvanized unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Shop prime with primers specified in Division 9 Section "High-Performance Coatings" are indicated.
- D. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
- E. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
  1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

## 2.16 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. As-Fabricated Finish: AA-M12.
- B. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, Class I, AA-M12C22A41.

## 2.17 METAL SHIPS' LADDERS

- A. Provide metal ships' ladders where indicated. Fabricate of open-type construction with channel or plate stringers and pipe and tube railings unless otherwise indicated. Provide brackets and fittings for installation.
  1. Treads shall be not less than 5 inches exclusive of nosing or less than 8-1/2 inches including the nosing, and riser height shall be not more than 9-1/2 inches.
  2. Fabricate ships' ladders, including railings from steel.
  3. Fabricate treads and platforms from welded or pressure-locked steel bar grating. Limit openings in gratings to no more than 1/2 inch in least dimension.
  4. Comply with applicable railing requirements in Section 055213 "Pipe and Tube Railings."
- B. Galvanize exterior steel ships' ladders, including treads, railings, brackets, and fasteners.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.
- E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
- F. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that come into contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals with the following:
  - 1. Cast Aluminum: Heavy coat of bituminous paint.
  - 2. Extruded Aluminum: Two coats of clear lacquer.

### 3.2 INSTALLING MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.
- B. Anchor supports for overhead doors and overhead grilles securely to, and rigidly brace from, building structure.



### 3.3 INSTALLING METAL BOLLARDS

- A. Anchor bollards in place with concrete footings. Center and align bollards in holes 3 inches above bottom of excavation. Place concrete and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Support and brace bollards in position until concrete has cured.
- B. Fill bollards solidly with concrete, mounding top surface to shed water.
  - 1. Do not fill removable bollards with concrete.

### 3.4 INSTALLING ABRASIVE INSERTS

- A. Center inserts on tread widths unless otherwise indicated.
- B. For inserts embedded in concrete steps or curbs, align inserts level with tread surfaces.

### 3.5 INSTALLING BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

- A. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of plates.
- B. Set bearing and leveling plates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After bearing members have been positioned and plumbed, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with nonshrink grout. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.

### 3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.
- B. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 9 Sections "Interior Painting" and "High-Performance Coatings."
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.

END OF SECTION 055001

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Framing with dimension lumber.
  - 2. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
  - 3. Wood blocking, cants, and nailers.
  - 4. Wood furring and grounds.
  - 5. Wood sleepers.
  - 6. Plywood backing panels.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 9 Section "Wood Flooring"
  - 2. Division 9 Section "Wood Athletic Flooring"

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal or greater but less than 5 inches nominal in least dimension.
- B. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
  - 1. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
  - 2. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
  - 3. RIS: Redwood Inspection Service.
  - 4. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
  - 5. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
  - 6. WWPAA: Western Wood Products Association.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.

1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.
3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5664.
4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
5. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
  1. Wood-preservative-treated wood.
  2. Fire-retardant-treated wood.
  3. Power-driven fasteners.
  4. Powder-actuated fasteners.
  5. Expansion anchors.
  6. Metal framing anchors.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack lumber flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect lumber from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
  - 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
  - 2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece or omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.
  - 3. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.
  - 4. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Lumber: 15 percent for 2-inch nominal thickness or less, 19 percent for more than 2-inch nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.

### 2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWP A U1; Use Category UC2.
  - 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium. Do not use inorganic boron (SBX) for sill plates.
  - 2. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or that does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
  - 1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.
- D. Application: Treat all rough carpentry unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
  - 2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.

3. Wood framing and furring attached directly to the interior of below-grade exterior masonry or concrete walls.
4. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs-on-grade.

## 2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials complying with requirements in this article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
  1. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
  2. Exterior Type: Treated materials shall comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated lumber and plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering according to ASTM D 2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
  3. Interior Type A: Treated materials shall have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested according to ASTM D 3201 at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.
  4. Design Value Adjustment Factors: Treated lumber shall be tested according to ASTM D 5664 and design value adjustment factors shall be calculated according to ASTM D 6841. Where high temperature fire-retardant treatment is indicated, provide material with adjustment factors of not less than 0.85 modulus of elasticity and 0.75 for extreme fiber in bending for Project's climatological zone.
- C. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Kiln-dry plywood after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 15 percent.
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.
- E. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not bleed through, contain colorants, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- F. Application: Treat items indicated on drawings, and the following:
  1. Framing for raised platforms.
  2. Framing for stages.
  3. Concealed blocking.
  4. Plywood backing panels.

## 2.4 DIMENSION LUMBER FRAMING

### A. Joists, Rafters, and Other Framing: Select Structural No. 1 grade.

#### 1. Species:

- a. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
- b. Southern pine; SPIB.
- c. Douglas fir-larch; WCLIB or WWPA.
- d. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
- e. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
- f. Douglas fir-south; WWPA.
- g. Hem-fir; WCLIB or WWPA.
- h. Douglas fir-larch (north); NLGA.
- i. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

## 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

### A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:

1. Blocking
2. Nailers
3. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs
4. Cants
5. Furring
6. Grounds

### B. For items of dimension lumber size, provide Construction or No. 2 grade lumber of any species.

### C. For concealed boards, provide lumber with 15 percent maximum moisture content.

### D. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.

### E. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.

### F. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

## 2.6 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

### A. Equipment Backing Panels: DOC PS 1, Exposure 1, C-D Plugged, fire-retardant treated, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 3/4-inch nominal thickness.

1. Plywood shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.7 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
  1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M or of Type 304 stainless steel.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
- D. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
- E. Lag Bolts: ASME B18.2.1 (ASME B18.2.3.8M).
- F. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.
- G. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to four times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.
  1. Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
  2. Material: Stainless steel with bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F 738M and ASTM F 836M, Grade A1 or A4).

## 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Adhesives for Gluing Furring and Sleepers to Concrete or Masonry: Formulation complying with ASTM D 3498 that is approved for use indicated by adhesive manufacturer.
  1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 70 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Water-Repellent Preservative: NWWDA-tested and -accepted formulation containing 3-iodo-2-propynyl butyl carbonate, combined with an insecticide containing chlorpyrifos as its active ingredient.



## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit. Locate furring, nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- B. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's WCD 1, "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Framing with Engineered Wood Products: Install engineered wood products to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Install plywood backing panels by fastening to masonry; coordinate locations with utilities requiring backing panels. Install fire-retardant treated plywood backing panels with classification marking of testing agency exposed to view.
- E. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
  - 1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than 16 inches o.c.
- G. Provide fire blocking in furred spaces, stud spaces, and other concealed cavities as indicated and as follows:
  - 1. Fire block furred spaces of walls, at each floor level, at ceiling, and at not more than 96 inches o.c. with solid wood blocking or noncombustible materials accurately fitted to close furred spaces.
  - 2. Fire block concealed spaces between floor sleepers with same material as sleepers to limit concealed spaces to not more than 100 sq. ft. and to solidly fill below partitions.
- H. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics will not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- I. Comply with AWP M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
  - 1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
  - 2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.

- J. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - 1. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
  - 2. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code.
  - 3. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
- K. Use steel common nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.
- L. For exposed work, arrange fasteners in straight rows parallel with edges of members, with fasteners evenly spaced, and with adjacent rows staggered.
  - 1. Comply with approved indicated fastener patterns where applicable.
  - 2. Use finishing nails unless otherwise indicated. Countersink nail heads and fill holes with wood filler.

### 3.2 WOOD GROUND, SLEEPER, BLOCKING, AND NAILER INSTALLATION

- A. Install where indicated and where required for screeding or attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Where wood-preserved-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.
- D. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than 1-1/2 inches wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

### 3.3 FLOOR JOIST FRAMING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install floor joists with crown edge up and support ends of each member with not less than 1-1/2 inches of bearing on wood or metal, or 3 inches on masonry. Attach floor joists as follows:
  - 1. Where supported on wood members, by toe nailing or by using metal framing anchors.
  - 2. Where framed into wood supporting members, by using wood ledgers as indicated or, if not indicated, by using metal joist hangers.

- B. Fire Cuts: At joists built into masonry, bevel cut ends 3 inches and do not embed more than 4 inches.
- C. Frame openings with headers and trimmers supported by metal joist hangers; double headers and trimmers where span of header exceeds 48 inches.
- D. Do not notch in middle third of joists; limit notches to one-sixth depth of joist, one-third at ends. Do not bore holes larger than  $\frac{1}{3}$  depth of joist; do not locate closer than 2 inches from top or bottom.
- E. Provide solid blocking of 2-inch nominal thickness by depth of joist at ends of joists unless nailed to header or band.
- F. Lap members framing from opposite sides of beams, girders, or partitions not less than 4 inches or securely tie opposing members together. Provide solid blocking of 2-inch nominal thickness by depth of joist over supports.
- G. Anchor members paralleling masonry with  $\frac{1}{4}$ -by-1- $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch metal strap anchors spaced not more than 96 inches o.c., extending over and fastening to three joists. Embed anchors at least 4 inches into grouted masonry with ends bent at right angles and extending 4 inches beyond bend.
- H. Provide solid blocking between joists under jamb studs for openings.
- I. Provide bridging of type indicated below, at intervals of 96 inches o.c., between joists.
  - 1. Diagonal wood bridging formed from bevel-cut, 1-by-3-inch nominal-size lumber, double-crossed and nailed at both ends to joists.
  - 2. Steel bridging installed to comply with bridging manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
- B. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes sufficiently wet that moisture content exceeds that specified, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 061000

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 061600 - SHEATHING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes exterior gypsum-based wall sheathing.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 5 Section "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" and Division 9 Section "Non-Structural Metal Framing," for metal framing designed to accommodate exterior gypsum sheathing.
  - 2. Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry," for other types of sheathing not specified in this Section.
  - 3. Division 7 Section "Weather Barriers," for water-resistive barriers applied over wall sheathing.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant-treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack panels flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect sheathing from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For assemblies with fire-resistance ratings, provide materials and construction identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory."

### 2.2 WALL SHEATHING

- A. Glass-Mat Gypsum Wall Sheathing: ASTM C 1177.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Georgia-Pacific Building Products "DensGlass Sheathing," or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - b. National Gypsum Company.
    - c. Temple-Inland Building Products, a Georgia-Pacific company.
    - d. United States Gypsum Co.
  - 2. Type and Thickness: Type X, 5/8 inch thick.
  - 3. Size: 48 by 96, 108 or 120 inches for vertical installation.
- B. Plywood Sheathing Concealed from View but Located Within Exterior Enclosure: PS 1, C-C Plugged or better, Exterior grade.
  - 1. Fire retardant treated at all locations.
  - 2. Preservative treatment at exterior locations where unprotected by air and moisture barrier.

### 2.3 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
  - 1. For wall sheathing, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153 of Type 304 stainless steel.
- B. Screws for Fastening Gypsum Sheathing to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Steel drill screws, in length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing to be attached, with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B 117.
  - 1. For steel framing less than 0.0329 inch thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C 1002.

2. For steel framing from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C 954.

## 2.4 SHEATHING JOINT-AND-PENETRATION TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. Sealant for Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing: Silicone emulsion sealant complying with ASTM C 834, compatible with sheathing tape and sheathing and recommended by tape and sheathing manufacturers for use with glass-fiber sheathing tape and for covering exposed fasteners.
  1. Sheathing Tape: Self-adhering glass-fiber tape, minimum 2 inches wide, 10 by 10 or 10 by 20 threads per inch, of type recommended by sheathing and tape manufacturers for use with silicone emulsion sealant in sealing joints in glass-mat gypsum sheathing and with a history of successful in-service use.

## 2.5 FACTORY WOOD TREATMENT

- A. Treated Lumber and Plywood: Comply with requirements of AWWA U1 - Use Category System for wood treatments determined by use categories, expected service conditions, and specific applications.
  1. Fire-Retardant Treated Wood: Mark each piece of wood with producer's stamp indicating compliance with specified requirements.
  2. Preservative-Treated Wood: Provide lumber and plywood marked or stamped by an ALSC-accredited testing agency, certifying level and type of treatment in accordance with AWWA standards.
- B. Fire Retardant Treatment:
  1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Arch Wood Protection, Inc: [www.wolmanizedwood.com](http://www.wolmanizedwood.com).
    - b. Hoover Treated Wood Products, Inc: [www.frtw.com](http://www.frtw.com).
    - c. J.H. Baxter & Co.: [www.jhbaxter.com](http://www.jhbaxter.com).
  2. Exterior Type: AWWA U1, Category UCFB, Commodity Specification H, chemically treated and pressure impregnated; capable of providing a maximum flame spread rating of 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84, with no evidence of significant combustion when test is extended for an additional 20 minutes both before and after accelerated weathering test performed in accordance with ASTM D2898.
    - a. Kiln dry wood after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent for lumber and 15 percent for plywood.
    - b. All fire retardant treated wood materials shall bear a UL "FR-S" label, or a label from an approved inspection agency.
    - c. Treat all concealed exterior rough carpentry panels, and other wood blocking as required.
    - d. Do not use treated wood in direct contact with the ground.
  3. Interior Type A: AWWA U1, Use Category UCFA, Commodity Specification H, low temperature (low hygroscopic) type, chemically treated and pressure impregnated; capable of providing a maximum flame spread rating of 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84, with no evidence of significant combustion when test is extended for an additional 20 minutes.

- a. Kiln dry wood after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent for lumber and 15 percent for plywood.
  - b. Treat all concealed interior rough carpentry panels, and other wood blocking as required.
  - c. Do not use treated wood in applications exposed to weather or where the wood may become wet.
- C. Preservative Treatment:
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Arch Wood Protection, Inc: [www.wolmanizedwood.com](http://www.wolmanizedwood.com).
    - b. Viance, LLC: [www.treatedwood.com](http://www.treatedwood.com).
    - c. Osmose, Inc: [www.osmose.com](http://www.osmose.com).
  - 2. Preservative Pressure Treatment of Lumber Above Grade: AWP A U1, Use Category UC3B, Commodity Specification A using waterborne preservative to 0.25 lb/cu ft retention.
    - a. Kiln dry lumber after treatment to maximum moisture content of 19 percent.
      - 1) Treat lumber exposed to weather.
    - b. Treated lumber locations:
      - 1) Exterior locations where unprotected by air and moisture barrier.
  - 3. Preservative Pressure Treatment of Plywood Above Grade: AWP A U1, Use Category UC2 and UC3B, Commodity Specification F using waterborne preservative to 0.25 lb/cu ft retention.
    - a. Kiln dry plywood after treatment to maximum moisture content of 19 percent.
    - b. Treated lumber locations.
    - c. Exterior locations where unprotected by air and moisture barrier.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement. Arrange joints so that pieces do not span between fewer than three support members.
- B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - 1. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
  - 2. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's "International Building Code."
  - 3. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's "International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings."



- D. Use common wire nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections. Install fasteners without splitting wood.
- E. Coordinate wall sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.
- F. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.
- G. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

### 3.2 GYPSUM SHEATHING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with GA-253 and with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Fasten gypsum sheathing to cold-formed metal framing with screws.
  - 2. Install boards with a 3/8-inch gap where non-load-bearing construction abuts structural elements.
  - 3. Install boards with a 1/4-inch gap where they abut masonry or similar materials that might retain moisture, to prevent wicking.
- B. Apply fasteners so heads bear tightly against face of sheathing, but do not cut into facing.
- C. Vertical Installation: Install board vertical edges centered over studs or furring. Abut ends and edges of each board with those of adjacent boards. Attach boards at perimeter and within field of board to each stud.
  - 1. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch from edges and ends of boards.
- D. Seal sheathing joints according to sheathing manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Apply glass-fiber sheathing tape to glass-mat gypsum sheathing joints and apply and trowel silicone emulsion sealant to embed entire face of tape in sealant. Apply sealant to exposed fasteners with a trowel so fasteners are completely covered. Seal other penetrations and openings.

END OF SECTION 061600

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 064023 - INTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Custom cabinets and millwork for reception desk.
  - 2. Hardware and accessories for custom cabinets.
  - 3. Interior standing and running wood trim.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 5 Sections "Pipe and Tube Railings" for brackets and accessories required for wood handrails.
  - 2. Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips required for installing woodwork and concealed within other construction before woodwork installation.
  - 3. Division 6 Section "Custom Graphic Plastic Laminate-Faced Wood Panels" for wayfinding and wood grain laminate panels to be used with interior architectural woodwork.
  - 4. Division 6 Section "Wood Flooring" for finished hardwood and softwood flooring assemblies.
  - 5. Division 8 Sections "Flush Wood Doors" and "Sound Control Door Assemblies" for wood species and finishes related to interior architectural woodwork.
  - 6. Division 9 Section "Painting" for shop-finishing requirements of interior architectural woodwork, including stains and transparent finishes.
  - 7. Division 12 Section "Simulated Stone Countertops" for shop-fabricated countertops and caps to be installed with custom cabinets and millwork.
  - 8. Division 12 Sections "Educational Casework" and "Library Furniture" for wood trim, cabinet hardware and accessories, and countertops.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Interior architectural woodwork includes wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips for installing woodwork items unless concealed within other construction before woodwork installation.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each product indicated, including high-pressure decorative laminate and accessories, cabinet and millwork hardware and accessories, and finishing materials and processes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show location of each item, dimensioned plans and elevations, large-scale details, attachment devices, and other components.
  - 1. Show details full size.
  - 2. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including concealed blocking and reinforcement specified in other Sections.
  - 3. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for grommets and other wire management components installed in architectural woodwork.
  - 4. Show veneer leaves with dimensions, grain direction, exposed face, and identification numbers indicating the flitch and sequence within the flitch for each leaf.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection:
  - 1. Shop-applied transparent finishes.
  - 2. Plastic laminates.
  - 3. Edging/banding materials.
- D. Samples for Verification:
  - 1. Lumber with or for transparent finish, not less than 50 sq. in., for each species and cut, finished on 1 side and 1 edge; include edge banding, where applicable.
  - 2. Veneer-faced panel products with or for transparent finish, 8 by 10 inches, for each species and cut. Include edge banding, where applicable.
  - 3. Plastic laminates, 8 by 10 inches, for each type, color, pattern, and surface finish, with 1 sample applied to core material and specified edge material applied to 1 edge.
  - 4. Exposed cabinet hardware and accessories; one unit for each type and finish.
  - 5. Handrail with transparent finish, 12 inches long by diameter indicated.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of product, signed by product manufacturer.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Installer who is either employed or approved by the Fabricator.

- C. Quality Standard: AWI labeling and certification for fabrication is not required; however, as a standard of quality the Fabricator and Installer shall comply with AWI's "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards" for grades of interior architectural woodwork indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.
- D. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where fire-retardant materials or products are indicated, provide materials and products with specified fire-test-response characteristics as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by UL, ITS, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency in the form of separable paper label or, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, imprint on surfaces of materials that will be concealed from view after installation.
- E. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - 1. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not deliver woodwork until painting and similar operations that could damage woodwork have been completed in installation areas. If woodwork must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Project Conditions" Article.

#### 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install woodwork until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Field Measurements: Where woodwork is indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
  - 1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support woodwork by field measurements before being enclosed, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
  - 2. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating woodwork without field measurements. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

## 1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to ensure that interior architectural woodwork can be supported and installed as indicated.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Wood Species and Cut for Transparent Finish: Unless otherwise noted, all interior architectural woodwork components for this Project shall consist of Northern Hard Maple, plain-sawn or sliced.
- B. Wood Products: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Recycled Content of Medium-Density Fiberboard and Particleboard: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 20 percent.
  - 2. Low-Emitting Materials: Composite wood products shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
  - 3. Medium-Density Fiberboard: ANSI A208.2, Grade MD, made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.
  - 4. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2, made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.
  - 5. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1, Medium Density Overlay.
  - 6. Veneer-Faced Panel Products (Hardwood Plywood): HPVA HP-1, made with adhesive containing no urea formaldehyde.
- C. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: NEMA LD 3, grades as indicated or, if not indicated, as required by woodwork quality standard.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering high-pressure premium level decorative laminates that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Formica Corporation.
    - b. Nevamar Company, LLC; Decorative Products Div.
    - c. Panolam Industries International Incorporated.
    - d. Wilsonart International; Div. of Premark International, Inc.

## 2.2 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials complying with requirements in this Article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified. Refer to Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry" for interior architectural woodwork to be installed in conjunction with fire-retardant-treated rough carpentry items.
  - 1. Do not use treated materials that do not comply with requirements of referenced woodworking standard or that are warped, discolored, or otherwise defective.
  - 2. Use fire-retardant-treatment formulations that do not bleed through or otherwise adversely affect finishes. Do not use colorants to distinguish treated materials from untreated materials.
  - 3. Identify fire-retardant-treated materials with appropriate classification marking of UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Comply with performance requirements of AWPA C20 (lumber) and AWPA C27 (plywood). Use the following treatment type:
  - 1. Interior Type A: Low-hygroscopic formulation.
  - 2. Mill lumber before treatment and implement special procedures during treatment and drying processes that prevent lumber from warping and developing discolorations from drying sticks or other causes, marring, and other defects affecting appearance of treated woodwork.
  - 3. Kiln-dry materials before and after treatment to levels required for untreated materials.
- C. Fire-Retardant Particleboard: Panels complying with the following requirements, made from softwood particles and fire-retardant chemicals mixed together at time of panel manufacture to achieve flame-spread index of 25 or less and smoke-developed index of 25 or less per ASTM E 84.
  - 1. For panels 3/4 inch thick and less, comply with ANSI A208.1 for Grade M-2 except for the following minimum properties: modulus of rupture, 1600 psi; modulus of elasticity, 300,000 psi; internal bond, 80 psi; and screw-holding capacity on face and edge, 250 and 225 lbf, respectively.
  - 2. For panels 13/16 to 1-1/4 inches thick, comply with ANSI A208.1 for Grade M-1 except for the following minimum properties: modulus of rupture, 1300 psi; modulus of elasticity, 250,000 psi; linear expansion, 0.50 percent; and screw-holding capacity on face and edge, 250 and 175 lbf, respectively.
  - 3. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products equal to "Duraflake FR" by Weyerhaeuser.

## 2.3 INTERIOR STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

- A. Grade: Custom.
- B. Wood Species and Cut: Northern Hard Maple, plain-sawn.

- C. For trim items wider than available lumber, use veneered construction. Do not glue for width.
- D. Back-out or groove backs of flat trim members and kerf backs of other wide, flat members, except for members with ends exposed in finished work.
- E. Assemble moldings in plant to maximum extent possible. Miter corners in plant and prepare for field assembly with bolted fittings designed to pull connections together.
- F. See drawings A1.3 for trim details @ graphic.

## 2.4 PLASTIC LAMINATE CABINETS & MILLWORK

- A. Laminate Cladding for Exposed Surfaces: High-pressure decorative laminate complying with the following requirements:
  - 1. Horizontal Surfaces Other Than Tops: Grade HGS.
  - 2. Vertical Surfaces: Grade VGS.
  - 3. Edges: PVC edge banding, 0.12 inch thick, matching laminate in color, pattern, and finish.
- B. Materials for Semiexposed Surfaces:
  - 1. Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: High-pressure decorative laminate, Grade VGS.
    - a. Edges of Plastic-Laminate Shelves: PVC edge banding, 0.12 inch thick, matching laminate in color, pattern, and finish.
    - b. For semiexposed backs of panels with exposed plastic-laminate surfaces, provide surface of high-pressure decorative laminate, Grade VGS.
  - 2. Drawer Sides and Backs: Hardwood plywood.
  - 3. Drawer Bottoms: Hardwood plywood.
- C. Concealed Backs of Panels with Exposed Plastic Laminate Surfaces: High-pressure decorative laminate, Grade BKL.
- D. Door and Drawer Edging: Provide 3mm PVC edging for all doors and drawers on laminate custom cabinets/millwork. Color shall be equal to "Wood Tape" brand, as selected from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- E. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:
  - 1. As selected by Architect from laminate manufacturer's full range in solid colors, wood grains and special patterns, all of which shall consist of a matte finish, unless otherwise noted.



## 2.5 CABINET HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide cabinet hardware and accessory materials associated with architectural cabinets.
- B. Frameless Concealed Hinges (European Type): BHMA A156.9, B01602, 135 degrees of opening, self-closing.
- C. Wire Pulls: Back mounted, solid metal, 4 inches long, 5/16 inch in diameter.
- D. Catches: Magnetic catches, BHMA A156.9, B03141.
- E. Adjustable Shelf Standards and Supports: BHMA A156.9, B04071; with shelf rests, B04081.
- F. Shelf Rests: BHMA A156.9, B04013; metal.
- G. Drawer Slides: BHMA A156.9, B05091.
  - 1. Heavy Duty (Grade 1HD-100 and Grade 1HD-200): Side mounted; full-extension type; zinc-plated steel ball-bearing slides.
  - 2. Box Drawer Slides: Grade 1HD-100; for drawers not more than 6 inches high and 24 inches wide.
  - 3. File Drawer Slides: Grade 1HD-100 and Grade 1HD-200; for drawers more than 6 inches high or 24 inches wide.
- H. Door Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07121.
- I. Drawer Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07041.
- J. Accessories: Equal to products manufactured by Doug Mockett & Company, Inc. Refer to Drawings for locations and types.
  - 1. Grommets: For cable passage through countertops; 1-1/4-inch outside diameter, black, molded-plastic grommets and matching plastic caps with slot for wire passage. Equal to "OG Series."
  - 2. Wire Management Hangers: Equal to "Model No. WM9;" color to be determined.
  - 3. Power and Data Modules: As indicated.
- K. Exposed Hardware Finishes: For exposed hardware, provide finish that complies with BHMA A156.18 for BHMA finish number indicated.
  - 1. Satin Stainless Steel: BHMA 630.
- L. For concealed hardware, provide manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements in BHMA A156.9.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Softwood or hardwood lumber, kiln dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.
- B. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts on inside face of exterior walls and elsewhere as required for corrosion resistance. Provide toothed-steel or lead expansion sleeves for drilled-in-place anchors.
- C. Adhesives, General: Adhesives shall not contain urea formaldehyde.
- D. Low-Emitting Materials: Adhesives shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- E. VOC Limits for Installation Adhesives: Installation adhesives shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
  - 1. Wood Glues: 30 g/L.
  - 2. Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
  - 3. Contact Adhesive: 250 g/L.
- F. Adhesive for Bonding Plastic Laminate: Unpigmented contact cement.
  - 1. Adhesive for Bonding Edges: Hot-melt adhesive or adhesive specified above for faces.

## 2.7 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Interior Woodwork Grade: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Premium-grade interior woodwork complying with referenced quality standard.
- B. Wood Moisture Content: Comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for wood moisture content in relation to ambient relative humidity during fabrication and in installation areas.
- C. Sand fire-retardant-treated wood lightly to remove raised grain on exposed surfaces before fabrication.
- D. Fabricate woodwork to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated. Ease edges to radius indicated for the following:
  - 1. Corners of Cabinets and Edges of Solid-Wood (Lumber) Members 3/4 Inch Thick or Less: 1/16 inch.
  - 2. Edges of Rails and Similar Members More Than 3/4 Inch Thick: 1/8 inch.
  - 3. Corners of Cabinets and Edges of Solid-Wood (Lumber) Members and Rails: 1/16 inch.
- E. Complete fabrication, including assembly, finishing, and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary

for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.

1. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times woodwork fabrication will be complete.
  2. Trial fit assemblies at fabrication shop that cannot be shipped completely assembled. Install dowels, screws, bolted connectors, and other fastening devices that can be removed after trial fitting. Verify that various parts fit as intended and check measurements of assemblies against field measurements indicated on Shop Drawings before disassembling for shipment.
- F. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, grommets, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.
1. Seal edges of openings in countertops with a coat of varnish.
- G. Where indicated, and whenever possible, install glass, plastic or metal panels, stand-offs, inlays, and similar decorative elements in the shop.

## 2.8 SHOP FINISHING

- A. Grade: Provide finishes of same grades as items to be finished.
- B. General: Finish architectural woodwork at fabrication shop as specified in this Section. Refer to Division 9 Section "Painting" for finish application requirements. Defer only final touchup, cleaning, and polishing until after installation.
- C. Preparation for Finishing: Comply with referenced quality standard for sanding, filling countersunk fasteners, sealing concealed surfaces, and similar preparations for finishing architectural woodwork, as applicable to each unit of work.
1. Backpriming: Apply one coat of sealer or primer, compatible with finish coats, to concealed surfaces of woodwork. Apply two coats to back of paneling and to end-grain surfaces. Concealed surfaces of plastic-laminate-clad woodwork do not require backpriming when surfaced with plastic laminate or thermoset decorative panels. If referencing WI standards and retaining Laboratory grade for casework, insert special finishes required.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition woodwork to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas.

- B. Before installing architectural woodwork, examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required, including removal of packing and backpriming.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Grade: Install woodwork to comply with requirements for the same grade specified in Part 2 for fabrication of type of woodwork involved.
- B. Assemble woodwork and complete fabrication at Project site to comply with requirements for fabrication in Part 2, to extent that it was not completed in the shop.
- C. Install woodwork level, plumb, true, and straight. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and plumb (including tops) to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches.
- D. Scribe and cut woodwork to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
- E. Fire-Retardant-Treated Wood: Handle, store, and install fire-retardant-treated wood to comply with chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions, including those for adhesives used to install woodwork.
- F. Anchor woodwork to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing as required for complete installation. Use fine finishing nails or finishing screws for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with woodwork and matching final finish if transparent finish is indicated.
- G. Standing and Running Trim: Install with minimum number of joints possible, using full-length pieces (from maximum length of lumber available) to greatest extent possible. Do not use pieces less than 36 inches long, except where shorter single-length pieces are necessary. Scarf running joints and stagger in adjacent and related members.
  - 1. Fill gaps, if any, between top of base and wall with plastic wood filler, sand smooth, and finish same as wood base if finished.
  - 2. Install standing and running trim with no more variation from a straight line than 1/8 inch in 96 inches.
- H. Cabinets: Install without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings properly and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.
  - 1. Install cabinets with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.
- I. Touch up finishing work specified in this Section after installation of woodwork. Fill nail holes with matching filler where exposed.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repair damaged and defective woodwork, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects; where not possible to repair, replace woodwork. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- B. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware.
- C. Clean woodwork on exposed and semiexposed surfaces. Touch up shop-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

END OF SECTION 064023

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 071900 – WATER REPELLENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes clear water-repellent coatings for the following vertical and nontraffic horizontal surfaces:
  - 1. All brick face masonry.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 3 Sections for concrete work including floor sealers and curing agents.
  - 2. Division 4 Sections for brick and concrete unit masonry.
  - 3. Division 4 Section "Clay, Masonry Restoration and Cleaning" for brick and ceramic tile restoration and cleaning.
  - 4. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants.
  - 5. Division 9 Section "Painting" for paints and coatings.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide water repellents with the following properties based on testing manufacturer's standard products, according to test methods indicated, applied to substrates simulating Project conditions using same materials and application methods to be used for Project.
  - 1. Absorption: Minimum 90 percent reduction of absorption after 24 hours in comparison of treated and untreated specimens.
    - a. Brick: ASTM C 67.
    - b. Stone: ASTM C 97.
    - c. Concrete Unit Masonry: ASTM C 140.
    - d. Hardened Concrete: ASTM C 642.
  - 2. Water-Vapor Transmission: Maximum 10 percent reduction in rate of vapor transmission in comparison of treated and untreated specimens, per ASTM E 96.
  - 3. Water Penetration and Leakage through Masonry: Maximum 90 percent reduction in leakage rate in comparison of treated and untreated specimens, per ASTM E 514.
  - 4. Durability: Maximum 5 percent loss of water repellency after 2500 hours of weathering in comparison to specimens before weathering, per ASTM G 53.

5. Permeability: Minimum 80 percent breathable in comparison of treated and untreated specimens, per ASTM D 1653.
6. Chloride-Ion Intrusion in Concrete: Transportation Research Board, National Research Council's NCHRP Report 244, Series II tests.
  - a. Reduction of Water Absorption: 80 percent.
  - b. Reduction in Chloride Content: 80 percent.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include manufacturer's specifications, surface preparation and application instructions, recommendations for water repellents for each surface to be treated, and protection and cleaning instructions. Include data substantiating that materials are recommended by manufacturer for applications indicated and comply with requirements.
- B. Certification by water repellent manufacturer that products supplied comply with local regulations controlling use of VOCs.
- C. Material Test Reports: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance of water repellents with requirements indicated.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable rules of pollution-control regulatory agency having jurisdiction in Project locale regarding VOCs and use of hydrocarbon solvents.
- B. Field Samples: Architect will select one representative surface for each substrate to receive water repellents. Apply water repellent to each substrate, with either partial or full coverage as directed. Comply with application requirements of this Section.
  1. Obtain Architect's approval of field samples before applying water repellents.
  2. Maintain field samples during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.



## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Weather and Substrate Conditions: Do not proceed with application of water repellent under any of the following conditions, except with written instruction of manufacturer:
1. Ambient temperature is less than 40 deg F.
  2. Concrete surfaces and mortar have cured for less than 28 days.
  3. Rain or temperatures below 40 deg F are predicted within 24 hours.
  4. Application is earlier than 24 hours after surfaces have been wet.
  5. Substrate is frozen or surface temperature is less than 40 deg F.
  6. Windy condition exists that may cause water repellent to be blown onto vegetation or surfaces not intended to be coated.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. General Warranty: The special warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive the Owner of other rights the Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by the Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. Special Warranty: Submit a written warranty, executed by the applicator and water repellent manufacturer, covering materials and labor, agreeing to repair or replace materials that fail to provide water repellency within the specified warranty period. Warranty does not include deterioration or failure of coating due to unusual weather phenomena, failure of prepared and treated substrate, formation of new joints and cracks in excess of 1/16 inch wide, fire, vandalism, or abuse by maintenance equipment.
1. Warranty Period: 5 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Approved Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products from one of the manufacturer's listed below:
1. Pecora Corporation
  2. Diedrich Technologies, Inc.
  3. Euclid Chemical Company (The).
  4. ProSoCo, Inc.
  5. Hydrozo, a division of ChemRex.

## 2.2 WATER REPELLENTS

### A. Brick Face Masonry

1. Siloxanes: Penetrating water repellent. Alkylalkoxysiloxanes that are oligomeric with alcohol, ethanol, mineral spirits, water, or other proprietary solvent carrier, and with 3.3 lb/gal. or less of VOCs.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate of substances that might interfere with penetration or performance of water repellents. Test for moisture content, according to repellent manufacturer's written instructions, to ensure surface is sufficiently dry.
- B. Test for pH level, according to water repellent manufacturer's written instructions, to ensure chemical bond to silicate minerals.
- C. Protect adjoining work, including sealant bond surfaces, from spillage or blow-over of water repellent. Cover adjoining and nearby surfaces of aluminum and glass if there is the possibility of water repellent being deposited on surfaces. Cover live plants and grass.
- D. Coordination with Sealants: Do not apply water repellent until sealants for joints adjacent to surfaces receiving water-repellent treatment have been installed and cured.
  1. Water-repellent work may precede sealant application only if sealant adhesion and compatibility have been tested and verified using substrate, water repellent, and sealant materials identical to those used in the work.
- E. Test Application: Before performing water-repellent work, including bulk purchase and delivery of products, prepare a small application in an unobtrusive location and in a manner approved by Architect to demonstrate the final effect (visual, physical, and chemical) of planned application. Proceed with work only after Architect approves test application or as otherwise directed.
  1. Revisions of planned application, if any, as requested by Architect, will be by Change Order if they constitute a departure from requirements of Contract Documents at the time of contracting.

### 3.2 APPLICATION

- A. Apply a heavy-saturation spray coating of water repellent on surfaces indicated for treatment using low-pressure spray equipment. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for using airless spraying procedure, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Apply a second saturation spray coating, repeating first application. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for limitations on drying time between coats and after rainstorm wetting of surfaces between coats. Consult manufacturer's technical representative if written instructions are not applicable to Project conditions.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Contractor to provide services of a factory-authorized technical service representative to inspect and approve the substrate before application and to instruct the applicator on the product and application method to be used.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Protective Coverings: Remove protective coverings from adjacent surfaces and other protected areas.
- B. Immediately clean water repellent from adjoining surfaces and surfaces soiled or damaged by water-repellent application as work progresses. Repair damage caused by water-repellent application. Comply with manufacturer's written cleaning instructions.

END OF SECTION 071900

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 072100 - THERMAL INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Rigid insulation (below grade, foundation)
- 2. Rigid insulation (exterior walls- non masonry)
- 3. Fiberglass batt insulation.
- 4. Weather Barrier

- B. Related Sections:

- 1. Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry Assemblies" for insulation installed in cavity walls.
- 2. Division 7 Section "Composite Sheet Waterproofing" for insulated drainage panels installed with waterproofing.
- 3. Division 7 Sections "Thermoplastic Polyolefin (TPO) Roofing" and "Modified Bituminous Protected Membrane Roofing" for insulation specified as part of roofing construction.
- 4. Division 7 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for insulation installed as part of a fire-resistive joint system.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for each product.
- B. Research/Evaluation Reports: For foam-plastic insulation, from ICC-ES.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration due to moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- B. Protect foam-plastic board insulation as follows:
  - 1. Do not expose to sunlight except to necessary extent for period of installation and concealment.
  - 2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic board materials to Project site before installation time.
  - 3. Quickly complete installation and concealment of foam-plastic board insulation in each area of construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD INSULATION

- A. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, of type and minimum compressive strength indicated below, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84. Thickness as indicated on drawings.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. DiversiFoam Products.
    - b. Dow Chemical Company (The).
      - 1) Styrofoam SM for use below grade (Basis of Design)
      - 2) Styrofoam WALLMATE for use inside the building at exterior walls (Basis of Design).
      - 3) Styrofoam Brand Z-MATE for use with Z-furring (Basis of Design).
    - c. Owens Corning.

### 2.2 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET INSULATION

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. CertainTeed Corporation.
  2. Guardian Building Products, Inc.
  3. Johns Manville.
  4. Knauf Insulation.
  5. Owens Corning.
- B. Recycled Content: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 20 percent.
- C. Reinforced-Foil-Faced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type III (reflective faced), Class A (faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier), faced with foil scrim, foil-scrim kraft, or foil-scrim polyethylene.

## 2.3 WEATHER BARRIER

- A. Spun-bonded weather-resistant barrier which permits moisture vapor to escape through the barrier while remaining resistant to water penetration ASTM D-882, ASTM E-96, ASTM D-882, AATCC 127.
1. Tyvek CommercialWrap, Dupont
  2. WallShield, A. Proctor Group

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to insulation or that interfere with insulation attachment.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications indicated.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.
- C. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- D. Provide sizes to fit applications indicated and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units to produce thickness indicated unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF BELOW-GRADE INSULATION

- A. On vertical surfaces, set insulation units using manufacturer's recommended adhesive or loosely laid according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. If not otherwise indicated, extend insulation a minimum of 24 inches below exterior grade line.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION FOR FRAMED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Apply insulation units to substrates by method indicated, complying with manufacturer's written instructions. If no specific method is indicated, bond units to substrate with adhesive or use mechanical anchorage to provide permanent placement and support of units.
- B. Glass-Fiber or Mineral-Wool Blanket Insulation: Install in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:
  - 1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill the cavities, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
  - 2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
  - 3. Maintain 3-inch clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures not rated for or protected from contact with insulation.
- C. Miscellaneous Voids: Install insulation in miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where required to prevent gaps in insulation using the following materials:
  - 1. Loose-Fill Insulation: Compact to approximately 40 percent of normal maximum volume equaling a density of approximately 2.5 lb/cu. ft.
  - 2. Spray Polyurethane Insulation: Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION 072100



## SECTION 072500 - WEATHER BARRIERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Building paper.
  - 2. Building wrap.
  - 3. Flexible flashing.
- B. Related Requirements: Division 6 Section "Sheathing" for glass mat exterior gypsum board substrates.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For building wrap, include data on air and water-vapor permeance based on testing according to referenced standards.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER

- A. Building Paper: ASTM D 226, Type 1 (No. 15 asphalt-saturated organic felt), unperforated, or water-vapor-permeable, asphalt-saturated kraft building paper that complies with ICC-ES AC38, Grade D.
- B. Building Wrap: ASTM E 1677, Type I air barrier; with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, when tested according to ASTM E 84; UV stabilized; and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide DuPont "Tyvek CommercialWrap" or comparable products by one of the following:
    - a. Dow Building Solutions; Dow Chemical Company (The).
    - b. GreenGuard Commercial Building Wrap; Pactiv Building Products.
    - c. Raven Industries, Inc.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: Not less than 75 perms per ASTM E 96, Desiccant Method (Procedure A).
  3. Air Permeance: Not more than 0.004 cfm/sq. ft. at 0.3-inch wg when tested according to ASTM E 2178.
  4. Allowable UV Exposure Time: Not less than three months.
  5. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.
- C. Building-Wrap Tape: Pressure-sensitive plastic tape recommended or manufactured by building-wrap manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in building wrap.

## 2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Flexible Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, butyl rubber or rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density polyethylene film, aluminum foil, or spun-bonded polyolefin to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.030 inch.
- B. Primer for Flexible Flashing: Product recommended by manufacturer of flexible flashing for substrate.
- C. Nails and Staples: ASTM F 1667.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER INSTALLATION

- A. Cover exposed exterior surface of sheathing with water-resistive barrier securely fastened to framing immediately after sheathing is installed.
- B. Cover sheathing with water-resistive barrier as follows:
1. Cut back barrier 1/2 inch on each side of the break in supporting members at expansion- or control-joint locations.
  2. Apply barrier to cover vertical flashing with a minimum 4-inch overlap unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Building Paper: Apply horizontally with a 2-inch overlap and a 6-inch end lap; fasten to sheathing with galvanized staples or roofing nails.
- D. Building Wrap: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Seal seams, edges, fasteners, and penetrations with tape.
  2. Extend into jambs of openings and seal corners with tape.

### 3.2 FLEXIBLE FLASHING INSTALLATION

A. Apply flexible flashing where indicated to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Prime substrates as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
2. Lap seams and junctures with other materials at least 4 inches except that at flashing flanges of other construction, laps need not exceed flange width.
3. Lap flashing over water-resistive barrier at bottom and sides of openings.
4. Lap water-resistive barrier over flashing at heads of openings.
5. After flashing has been applied, roll surfaces with a hard rubber or metal roller to ensure that flashing is completely adhered to substrates.

END OF SECTION 072500

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 074113 – STANDING SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Factory-formed and field-assembled, standing-seam metal roof panels and accessories.
  - 2. Snow Guards.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry" for wood blocking.
  - 2. Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for gutters and downspouts, soffits, fascia, flashings and other sheet metal work not part of metal roof panel assemblies.
  - 3. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for field-applied sealants not otherwise specified in this Section.
  - 4. Division 7 Section "EPDM Single Ply Membrane Roofing" for roof insulation.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Metal Roof Panel Assembly: Metal roof panels, attachment system components, miscellaneous metal framing, thermal insulation, and accessories necessary for a complete weathertight roofing system.
- B. Solar Flux: Direct and diffuse radiation from the sun received at ground level over the solar spectrum, expressed in watts per square meter.
- C. Solar Reflectance: Fraction of solar flux reflected by a surface, expressed as a percent or within the range of 0.00 and 1.00.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Provide factory formed, pre-finished, field seamed, concealed clip, structural standing seam metal roof panel assemblies that comply with performance requirements specified as determined by testing manufacturers' standard assemblies to comply with specified requirements under installed conditions. System to conform to ASTM Grade A and ASTM A525.
- B. Air Infiltration: No air infiltration at 20.0 psf. pressure differential when tested according to ASTM E 1680.

- C. Water Penetration: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 1646 at static pressure differential of 20.0 psf.
- D. Wind-Uplift Resistance: Provide metal roof panel assemblies that comply with ASTM E330 for wind-uplift resistance class indicated.
  - 1. Construction Method: Class UL-90 rating.
- E. Engineering Responsibility: Roofing contractor shall be responsible to engineer the metal panel roof system, including clip spacing to conform to local jurisdictional code requirements.
  - 1. Roof shall be designed to meet PA UCC (IBC 2009) requirements.
- F. Structural Performance: Provide metal roof panel assemblies capable of withstanding the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E 1592:
  - 1. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on the following minimum design wind pressures:
    - a. Uniform pressure as indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Deflection Limits: Engineer metal roof panel assemblies to withstand design loads with vertical deflections no greater than 1/180 of the span.
- G. Thermal Movements: Provide metal roof panel assemblies that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
  - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of metal roof panel and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation layouts of metal roof panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details. Distinguish between factory- and field-assembled work.
  - 1. Accessories: Include details of the following items, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches:
    - a. Flashing and trim.
    - b. Snow Guards.
  - 2. For installed products indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

- C. Coordination Drawings: Roof plans drawn to scale and coordinating penetrations and roof-mounted items. Show the following:
  - 1. Roof panels and attachments.
  - 2. Purlins and rafters.
  - 3. Roof-mounted items including roof hatches, equipment supports, pipe supports and penetrations, and lighting fixtures.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of metal roof panel indicated with factory-applied color finishes.
  - 1. Include similar Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.
- E. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.
  - 1. Metal Roof Panels: 12 inches long by actual panel width. Include fasteners, clips, closures, and other metal roof panel accessories.
  - 2. Trim and Closures: 12 inches long. Include fasteners and other exposed accessories.
  - 3. Accessories: 12-inch long samples for each type of accessory.
- F. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- G. Material Certificates: For thermal insulation and vapor retarders, signed by manufacturers.
- H. Field quality-control inspection reports.
- I. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for the following:
  - 1. Metal Roof Panels: Include reports for air infiltration, water penetration, thermal performance, solar reflectance, and structural performance.
  - 2. Insulation and Vapor Retarders: Include reports for thermal resistance, fire-test-response characteristics, water-vapor transmission, and water absorption.
- J. Maintenance Data: For metal roof panels to include in maintenance manuals.
- K. Warranties: Warranties specified in this Section.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer's Qualifications: The manufacturer shall have a minimum of ten (10) years experience in the production of the type of roofing herein specified, and shall be able to show experience with projects of similar size and complexity.
- B. Installer Qualifications: The installer shall have a minimum of five (5) years experience installing the type of roofing herein specified, on projects of similar size and complexity. An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.

1. Installer's responsibilities include fabricating and installing metal roof panel assemblies and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility.
  2. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of data for metal roof panels, including Shop Drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in assemblies similar to those indicated for this Project.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
- D. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of metal roof panels through one source from a single manufacturer.
- E. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of metal roof panels and are based on the specific system indicated.
1. Do not modify intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by the Professional, except with Professional's approval. If modifications are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to the Professional for review.
- F. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide metal roof panels identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Combustion Characteristics: ASTM E 136.
  2. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another testing and inspecting agency.
  3. Metal roof panels shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
- G. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Provide insulated metal roof panels having insulation core material with the following surface-burning characteristics as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84 by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:
1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site. Review methods and procedures related to metal roof panel assemblies including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Meet with Architect and Owner, metal roof panel Installer, metal roof panel manufacturer's representative, subcontractor(s), and installers whose work interfaces with or affects metal roof panels including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
  2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  3. Review methods and procedures related to metal roof panel installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
  4. Examine decking conditions for compliance with requirements, including flatness and attachment to structural members.



5. Review flashings, special roof details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that will affect metal roof panels.
6. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance, certificates, and testing and inspecting if applicable.
7. Review temporary protection requirements for metal roof panel assembly during and after installation.
8. Review roof observation and repair procedures after metal roof panel installation.
9. Document proceedings, including corrective measures and actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, sheets, metal roof panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal roof panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect metal roof panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack metal roof panels on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal roof panels to ensure dryness. Do not store metal roof panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
- D. Protect strippable protective covering on metal roof panels from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of metal roof panel installation.

#### 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal roof panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.
- B. Field Measurements: Verify locations of roof framing and roof opening dimensions by field measurements before metal roof panel fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
  1. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, either establish framing and opening dimensions and proceed with fabricating metal roof panels without field measurements, or allow for field-trimming of panels. Coordinate roof construction to ensure that actual building dimensions, locations of structural members, and openings correspond to established dimensions.

#### 1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.

- B. Coordinate metal panel roof assemblies with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, and installation of insulated deck panels, parapets, walls, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

#### 1.10 WARRANTY

##### A. Contractor's Warranty:

1. The General Contractor shall take, or cause to have taken, any and all corrective measures necessary to keep the roofing system free of all defects, to the satisfaction of the Owner, and to maintain the roofing system in a watertight condition. The Contractor shall have the responsibility for said corrective measures for two (2) years after the date of Final Inspection. The Contractor shall be responsible for the removal and replacement of the roofing system, if in the judgment of the Owner, removal and replacement is necessary to keep the roofing system free of all defects or to maintain the roofing system in a watertight condition. The Contractor shall also repair, or remove and replace, if the Owner deems it to be necessary, any part of the building, including the interior, damaged as a result of leaks in the roofing system. The interior of the building includes, but is not limited to, the furnishings and fixtures. There shall be no limit to the Contractor's liability for fulfilling the aforementioned responsibilities.
  - a. Final Inspection shall include a statement, supplied by the Contractor and signed by an authorized representative of the roofing manufacturer, attesting to the fact that the roofing installation and finished condition is acceptable for warranty by that manufacturer.
2. Exclusions: the Contractor shall not be responsible for repairs to, or replacement of roofing system, if repair or replacement is necessary due to natural disaster, such as lightning, flood, tornado or earthquake.
3. Notification: The Owner will notify the Contractor, as soon as reasonably possible, after it has knowledge of defects in the roofing system. Should the Contractor fail to promptly take corrective measures, the Owner may undertake corrective measures. The contractor shall be responsible for any and all expenses incurred by the Owner in undertaking of corrective measures shall in no way relieve the Contractor of any of the aforementioned responsibilities.

##### B. Manufacturer's Warranty:

1. The General Contractor shall provide the Owner with a twenty (20) year warranty, furnished by the manufacturer, which shall warrant that the said manufacturer will repair any leaks in the roofing system, not to exceed the original cost of the install roof over the life of the warranty, installed by any applicator authorized by said manufacturer.
2. Leaks from the following causes shall be covered by the manufacturer's warranty:
  - a. Defects in the roofing system material.
  - b. Workmanship of the authorized applicator.
3. The following exclusions are permitted in the manufacturer's warranty:

- a. Natural disasters such as lightning, hail, floods, tornadoes or earthquakes.
  - b. Damage from traffic or storage of materials on the roof.
  - c. Structural failure of roof deck, parapet or coping.
  - d. Infiltration of moisture in, through or around walls, coping or building structure.
  - e. Movement or deterioration of metal counterflashing or other metal components adjacent to the roof.
  - f. Damage to the building (other than roofing and insulation) or its components adjacent to the roof.
4. The warranty shall provide that in the event a leak should occur within the warranty period, and if such leak is within the coverage of the warranty, the warrantor will, at no expense to the Owner, make or have made, all necessary repairs to put the roof membrane, base flashing and roof insulation in a dry and watertight condition, using the same materials and specifications as the original application. There will be no limit to the warrantor's liability for making such repairs over the period of the warranty.
  5. The warranty shall provide that if, upon proper notification, the warrantor fails to promptly repair the roof, the Owner may make temporary repairs to avoid damage to the facility. Such action shall not be considered a breach of the provisions of the warranty.
  6. The Owner shall be permitted to make alterations, additions and repairs to the roof, within the written approved guidelines of the warrantor without jeopardizing the unexpired portion of the warranty's original term.
  7. Metal roofs and exposed fasteners shall be warranted against rust. Also, on metal roofs, the manufacturer, upon completion, inspection and written acceptance of the roof installation, shall furnish a warranty covering paint finish against cracking, checking, blistering, peeling, flaking and chipping for a period of twenty (20) years.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:

### 2.2 STANDING SEAM METAL ROOF PANEL MATERIALS

- A. Roof Panel Materials (choose from 1 or 2)
  1. 0.032" thick, 3105-H14 or equivalent (20 ksi yield strength) aluminum alloy conforming ASTM B 209.
  2. 24 ga., Grade 40/50 (40/50 ksi yield strength) structural steel with AZ50 (0.50 oz./ft.2) aluminum zinc alloy coating, both conforming to ASTM A792.
  3. Exposed Finishes: Apply the following coil coating, as specified or indicated on Drawings.

- a. Factory-applied Kynar 500/Hylar 5000 three (3) coat system conforming to the following:
  - 1) Metal preparation: all metal shall have the surfaces carefully prepared for painting on a continuous process coil coating line by alkali cleaning, hot water rinsing, application of chemical conversion coating, cold water rinsing, sealing with an acid rinse, and thorough drying.
  - 2) Prime Coating: A base coat of epoxy paint, specifically formulated to interact with the top-coat, shall be applied to the prepared surfaces by roll coating to a dry film thickness of 0.20 +/- 0.05 mils. The prime coat shall be oven-cured to application of finish coat.
  - 3) Exterior Coating: A Kynar 500/Hylar 5000 finish coating shall be applied over the primer by roll coating to a dry film thickness of 0.80 +/- 0.05 mils with 0.50 mils clear coat for a total dry film thickness of 1.50 +/- 0.10. This finish coating shall be oven-cured.
  - 4) Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil. The washcoat shall be oven cured.
- b. Texture: Panels to be smooth.
- c. Color: Manufacturer's premium metallic color to match Professional's sample. Basis of Design: Fabral Mica Color, "Bright Silver S66".

B. Panel Sealants:

- 1. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.
- 2. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920; elastomeric polyurethane, polysulfide, or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal roof panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal roof panel manufacturer.
- 3. Exposed sealant shall be one-part polyurethane joint sealant. Coordinate color with roof panels.
- 4. Shall not contain oil, asbestos or asphalt.
- 5. Factory applied sealant shall be applied in the seam and designed for metal to metal concealed joints.

## 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Fasteners: Self-tapping screws, bolts, nuts, self-locking rivets and bolts, end-welded studs, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal roof panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating.

1. Concealed UL-rated clips: 18-gage stainless steel UL 90 rated clip, 3-1/2 inches long, double fastener type.
  2. Nailable substrate fasteners: A-point fastener, pancake head Phillips drive screws for plywood or OSB non-corrosive base material, length as required to penetrate through nail base and one inch into structural wood or metal deck, comply with UL requirements.
- B. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, SSPC-Paint 12, compounded for 15-mil dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.
- C. Provide color-matched touch-up paint for roof panels.

## 2.4 METAL ROOF PANELS

- A. General: Provide factory-formed metal roof panels designed to be field assembled by lapping and interconnecting raised side edges of adjacent panels with joint type indicated and mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips in side laps. Include clips, cleats, pressure plates, and accessories required for weathertight installation.
- B. Standing Seam Metal Roof Panels: Formed with integral ribs at panel edges and flat pan between ribs; designed for sequential installation by mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips located under one side of panels and lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels.
1. Manufacturers/Basis of Design: Provide Stand 'N Seam (aluminum with intermediate flutes) metal standing seam roofing system as manufactured by Fabral Metal Wall and Roof Systems, or one of the following systems/manufacturers:
    - a. SRS-3 Panel by CENTRIA Architectural Systems.
    - b. ZipRib (2-1/2") by Merchant and Evans, Inc.
    - c. Or equal as approved by Professional.
  2. Clips: Floating to accommodate thermal movement
    - a. Provide an embossed profile on the top surface of the plate, raising the bottom surface of the panel above the substrate to allow for underside ventilation, and embossed outstanding legs to prevent distortion due to wind uplift.
  3. Panel Coverage: 16".
  4. Panel Height: 2.5 inches.
  5. Seam Type: Double lock (180 degrees), mechanically seamed.
  6. Panel Lengths: Panel lengths on all roof runs SHALL BE CONTINUOUS. Splicing is NOT ACCEPTABLE in continuous spans of roof.

## 2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Roof Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete metal roof panel assembly including trim, copings, fasciae, corner units, ridge closures, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets,

fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal roof panels, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and ridges, fabricated of same metal as metal roof panels. Provide venting closures where indicated.
  2. Clips: Minimum 0.0625-inch-thick, stainless-steel panel clips designed to withstand negative-load requirements.
  3. Cleats: Mechanically seamed cleats formed from minimum 0.0250-inch-thick, stainless-steel or nylon-coated aluminum sheet.
  4. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
  5. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch- thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal roof panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
- B. Flashing and Trim:
1. All flashing and trim shall be of same material, finish and color as the roof panels. Gauges and fabrication to be in accordance with standard SMACNA procedure and details in order to avoid oil-canning.
  2. Provide flashing and trim as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance.
  3. Locations include, but are not limited to, eaves, rakes, corners, bases, framed openings, ridges, fascia, and fillers.
  4. Fabricate soffits, gutters and downspouts in the same material, finish and color as the roof panels. Gauges and fabrication to be in accordance with standard SMACNA procedure and details in order to avoid oil-canning.
- C. Sealant:
1. Factory applied sealant shall be applied in the seam and designed for metal to metal concealed joints.
  2. Field applied panel end sealant shall be mastic tape sealant.
  3. Exposed sealant shall be one-part polyurethane joint sealant. Coordinate color with roof panels.
  4. Sealants shall not contain oil, asbestos or asphalt.
- D. Snow Guards: Prefabricated, noncorrosive units designed to be installed without penetrating metal roof panels, and complete with predrilled holes, clamps, or hooks for anchoring.
1. Seam-Mounted, Bar-Type Snow Guards: Aluminum rods or bars held in place by stainless-steel clamps attached to vertical ribs of standing-seam metal roof panels utilizing the E-Rail or S-Rail snow Retention System as manufactured by the Berger or a product meeting these requirements or equal. Snow guards shall match the finish and color of the metal roof and shall be provided at all standing seam metal roofs and spaced as recommended by the snow guard manufacturer for each system.

## 2.6 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: 30 to 40 mils (0.76 to 1.0 mm) thick minimum, consisting of slip-resisting, polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
1. Thermal Stability: Stable after testing at 240 deg F (116 deg C); ASTM D 1970.
  2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Passes after testing at minus 20 deg F (29 deg C); ASTM D 1970.
  3. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc., Div. of Carlisle Companies Inc.; CCW WIP 300HT.
    - b. Grace Construction Products; a unit of Grace, W. R. & Co.; Ultra.
    - c. Henry Company; Blueskin PE200 HT.
    - d. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC; MetShield.
    - e. Owens Corning; WeatherLock Metal High Temperature Underlayment.
- B. Felts: ASTM D 226, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felts.  
Slip Sheet: Manufacturer's recommended slip sheet, of type required for application.

## 2.7 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate and finish metal roof panels and accessories at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel. Panel lengths shall be continuous, with no splices in between high and low points of roof span.
- C. Where indicated, fabricate metal roof panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a tight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, in a manner that will minimize noise from movements within panel assembly.
- D. Sheet Metal Accessories: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations that apply to the design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of items indicated.
1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
  2. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
  3. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion but movable joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant.

4. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
5. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.
  - a. Size: As recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

## 2.8 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal roof panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of work.
  1. Examine primary and secondary roof framing to verify that rafters, purlins, angles, channels, and other structural panel support members and anchorages have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal roof panel manufacturer.
  2. Examine solid roof sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal roof panel manufacturer.
  3. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal roof panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal roof panels before metal roof panel installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances harmful to insulation, including removing projections capable of interfering with insulation attachment.



### 3.3 METAL ROOF PANEL INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Provide metal roof panels of full length from eave to ridge, unless otherwise indicated or restricted by shipping limitations. Anchor metal roof panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
  - 1. Field cutting of metal roof panels by torch is not permitted.
  - 2. Install panels in directions indicated on drawings.
  - 3. Rigidly fasten eave end of metal roof panels and allow ridge end free movement due to thermal expansion and contraction. Predrill panels.
  - 4. Provide metal closures at peaks, rake edges, rake walls, and each side of ridge and hip caps.
  - 5. Flash and seal metal roof panels with weather closures at eaves, rakes, and at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws.
  - 6. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
  - 7. Install ridge and hip caps as metal roof panel work proceeds.
  - 8. Lap metal flashing over metal roof panels to allow moisture to run over and off the material.
- B. Fasteners:
  - 1. Steel Roof Panels: Use stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior and galvanized steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
- C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating, by applying rubberized-asphalt underlayment to each contact surface, or by other permanent separation as recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.
- D. Joint Sealers: Install gaskets, joint fillers, and sealants where indicated and where required for weatherproof performance of metal roof panel assemblies. Provide types of gaskets, fillers, and sealants indicated or, if not indicated, types recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.
  - 1. Seal metal roof panel end laps with double beads of tape or sealant, full width of panel. Seal side joints where recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.
  - 2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

### 3.4 TWO PIECE METAL FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Saw cut a continuous reglet into the concrete wall surface 8" above the roof surface, unless indicated otherwise, and following uniformly the slope of the metal roof for the full length of the metal roof termination.
- B. Flash the metal roof up to the reglet with prefinished metal flashing.
- C. Mechanically fasten a continuous cleat for attachment of prefinished counter flashing for the full length of the reglet.

- D. Install continuous prefinished metal counter flashing hemmed to continuous cleat and secured into reglet. Caulk counter flashing to concrete wall.
  - 1. Provide continuous reglet and two piece metal flashing detail at all locations where metal roofing terminates at a vertical wall plane.

### 3.5 FIELD-ASSEMBLED METAL ROOF PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Fasten metal roof panels to supports with concealed clips at each standing-seam joint at location, spacing, and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer.
  - 1. Install clips to supports with self-tapping fasteners.
  - 2. Install pressure plates at locations indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
  - 3. The seams of the roofing system shall be no less than 16 inches on center and shall have a built-in clearance cavity in the profile to conceal the anchorage system and allow for unrestricted thermal movement.
  - 4. Seamed Joint: Panels shall be seamed by a mechanical seaming machine to form a locked weathertight seam.
  - 5. Panels shall incorporate a factory applied sealant to seams.
- B. Crickets: Install sheet metal crickets to shed water out of the dormer roof overhangs where the soffit meets the metal roof at all dormers.

### 3.6 ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
  - 1. Install components required for a complete metal roof panel assembly including trim, copings, ridge closures, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items.
- B. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
  - 1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof and weather-resistant performance.
  - 2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped or bayonet-type expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

- C. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal roof panel units within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Contractor shall engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect completed metal roof panel installation, including accessories. Report results in writing.
- B. Remove and replace applications of metal roof panels where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- C. Additional inspections, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

### 3.8 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal roof panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal roof panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. Replace metal roof panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 074113

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 074213 - METAL WALL PANELS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Exposed fastener, lap seam, corrugated perforated metal wall panels at exterior signage wall in front of the building.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 5 Section "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for support framing, including girts, studs, and bracing.
  - 2. Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing and other sheet metal work that is not part of metal wall panel assemblies.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Metal wall panel assemblies shall comply with performance requirements without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- B. Structural Performance: Provide metal wall panel assemblies capable of withstanding the effects the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E 1592:
  - 1. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on the following minimum design wind pressures:
    - a. Uniform pressure of 20 lbf/sq. ft, acting inward or outward.
    - b. Uniform pressure as indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Deflection Limits: Metal wall panel assemblies shall withstand wind loads with horizontal deflections no greater than 1/180 of the span.
- C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of wall panel and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation layouts of metal wall panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details. Distinguish between factory, shop and field-assembled work.
  1. Accessories: Include details of the following items, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches:
    - a. Flashing and trim.
    - b. Anchorage systems.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of metal wall panel indicated with factory-applied color finishes.
  1. Include similar Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.
  2. Include manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each sealant exposed to view.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.
  1. Metal Wall Panels: 12 inches long by actual panel width. Include fasteners, closures, and other metal wall panel accessories.
  2. Trim and Closures: 12 inches long. Include fasteners and other exposed accessories.
  3. Accessories: 12-inch-long Samples for each type of accessory.
- E. Coordination Drawings: Exterior elevations drawn to scale and coordinating penetrations and wall-mounted items. Show the following:
  1. Wall panel and attachments.
  2. Wall-mounted items including doors, windows, louvers, and lighting fixtures.
  3. New and existing framing, as understood by Manufacturer/Installer.
- F. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- G. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for each product.
- H. Maintenance Data: For metal wall panels to include in maintenance manuals.
- I. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of metal wall panel from single source from single manufacturer.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, sheets, metal wall panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal wall panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect metal wall panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack metal wall panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal wall panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal wall panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
- D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal wall panel for full installation period.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal wall panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.
- B. Field Measurements: Verify locations of structural members and wall opening dimensions by field measurements before metal wall panel fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

## 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate metal wall panel assemblies with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, and construction of studs, walls, and other adjoining work to provide a leak proof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal wall panel assemblies that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
    - b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.
  2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal wall panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  2. Finish Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PANEL MATERIALS

- A. Basis of Design: Wall panel materials and finishes are based on the Morin Corporation; a Kingspan Group company "Exposed BR-28" available materials and finishes referenced below:
1. 0.050" thick aluminum alloy conforming ASTM B 209.
  2. Exposed Finishes: Apply the following coil coating, as specified or indicated on Drawings.
    - a. Factory-applied and baked on Fluoropon Classic PVDF-Kynar 500 premium fluoropolymer coating formulated of 70% Kynar 500 proprietary resin. It is a three (3) coat system conforming to the following:
      - 1) Metal preparation: all metal shall have the surfaces carefully prepared for painting on a continuous process coil coating line by alkali cleaning, hot water rinsing, application of chemical conversion coating, cold water rinsing, sealing with an acid rinse, and thorough drying.
      - 2) Prime Coating: A base coat of epoxy paint, specifically formulated to interact with the top-coat, shall be applied to the prepared surfaces by roll coating to a dry film thickness of 0.20 mils. The prime coat shall be oven-cured to application of finish coat.
      - 3) Exterior Color Coating: A Kynar 500 finish coating shall be applied over the primer by roll coating to a dry film thickness of 0.8 mils with a 0.5 mils clear coat. This finish coating shall be oven-cured.



- 4) Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil. The washcoat shall be oven cured.

b. Texture: Panels to be smooth.

c. Color: Wall panels to be manufacturer's premium metallic color "bright silver".

B. Panel Sealants:

1. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.
2. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920; elastomeric polyurethane, polysulfide, or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal roof panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal roof panel manufacturer.
3. Exposed sealant shall be one-part polyurethane joint sealant. Coordinate color with roof panels.
4. Shall not contain oil, asbestos or asphalt.
5. Factory applied sealant shall be applied in the seam and designed for metal to metal concealed joints.

C. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel for work not exposed to view: ASTM A 792/A 792M, **Class AZ50 coating designation, Grade 40**, or to suit project conditions with 55 percent aluminum not less than 0.0396 inch thick.

D. Galvanized Steel Sheet (for work not exposed to view): ASTM A 526, G 90, commercial quality, or ASTM A 527, G 90, lock-forming quality, hot dip galvanized steel sheet with 0.20 percent copper, mill phosphatized where indicated for painting; not less than 0.0396 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.2 MISCELLANEOUS METAL FRAMING

A. Miscellaneous Metal Framing, General: ASTM C 645, cold-formed metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A 653, G40 hot-dip galvanized or coating with equivalent corrosion resistance unless otherwise indicated.

B. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels:

1. Nominal Thickness: As required to meet performance requirements.
2. As indicated.

C. Z-Shaped Furring: With slotted or non-slotted web, face flange of 1-1/4 inches, wall panel attachment flange of 7/8 inch, and depth required to fit insulation thickness indicated.

1. Nominal Thickness: As required to meet performance requirements.

- D. Fasteners for Miscellaneous Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten miscellaneous metal framing members to substrates.

## 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws, bolts, nuts, self-locking rivets and bolts, end-welded studs, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads. Where required, provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal wall panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM, PVC, or neoprene sealing washers.

## 2.4 EXPOSED FASTENER, LAP SEAM, CORRUGATED PERFORATED METAL WALL PANELS

- A. General: Provide factory-formed metal wall panels designed to be field assembled by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners in side laps. Include accessories required for weather tight installation.
- B. Exposed fastener, lap seam, perforated metal wall panels for exterior corrugated metal panel system formed with alternating corrugated ribs.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Morin Corporation; a Kingspan Group company "Exposed BR-28" corrugated perforated metal wall panel or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. CENTRIA Architectural Systems.
    - b. Fabral.
    - c. Or equal as approved by Architect.
  - 2. Material: See Paragraph 2.1.A.
  - 3. Perforated Panel Option: 1/8" hole, 7/32" spacing (30% open).

## 2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Wall Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete metal wall panel assembly including trim, copings, fascias, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal wall panels, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and rakes, fabricated of same material, gauge, finish and color as metal wall panels.
  - 2. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
  - 3. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch-thick, flexible closure strips; cut or

pre-molded to match metal wall panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.

- B. Flashing and Trim: Formed from same material, gauge, finish and color as metal wall panels. Provide flashing and trim as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, bases, drips, sills, jambs, corners, end walls, framed openings, rakes, fasciae, parapet caps, reveals, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal wall panels.

## 2.6 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate and finish metal wall panels and accessories at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. Fabricate metal wall panels in a manner that eliminates condensation on interior side of panel and with joints between panels designed to form weather tight seals.
- C. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.
- D. Fabricate metal wall panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a tight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that will minimize noise from movements within panel assembly.
- E. Sheet Metal Accessories: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to the design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
  - 1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
  - 2. Sealed Joints: Form non-expansion but movable joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant to comply with SMACNA standards.
  - 3. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
  - 4. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.
    - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal wall panel manufacturer for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

## 2.7 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal wall panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of work.
  - 1. Examine wall and framing to verify that girts, angles, channels, studs, and other structural panel support members and anchorage have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
  - 2. Examine wall substrate to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
  - 3. Verify that weather-resistant sheathing paper has been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
  - 4. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal wall panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal wall panels before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Miscellaneous Framing: Install subgirts, base angles, sills, furring, and other miscellaneous wall panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C 754 and metal wall panel manufacturer's written recommendations.
  - 1. Wall Framing: As required to comply with requirements for assemblies indicated or as detailed.

### 3.3 METAL WALL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install metal wall panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated on Drawings. Install panels perpendicular to girts and subgirts unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal wall panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
1. Commence metal wall panel installation and install minimum of 300 sq. ft. in presence of factory-authorized representative.
  2. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal wall panels.
  3. Flash and seal metal wall panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until weather barrier and flashings that will be concealed by metal wall panels are installed.
  4. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
  5. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
  6. Install flashing and trim as metal wall panel work proceeds.
  7. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
  8. Apply elastomeric sealant continuously between metal base channel (sill angle) and concrete and elsewhere as indicated or, if not indicated, as necessary for waterproofing.
  9. Align bottom of metal wall panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
  10. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe and conduit penetrating exterior walls.
- B. Fasteners:
1. Steel Wall Panels: Use stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use galvanized steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
- C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.
- D. Joint Sealers: Install gaskets, joint fillers, and sealants where indicated and where required for weather tight performance of metal wall panel assemblies. Provide types of gaskets, fillers, and sealants indicated or, if not indicated, types recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.
1. Seal metal wall panel end laps with double beads of tape or sealant, full width of panel. Seal side joints where recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.
  2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
- E. Lap-Seam Metal Wall Panels: Fasten metal wall panels to supports with fasteners at each lapped joint at location and spacing recommended by manufacturer.
1. Lap ribbed or fluted sheets one full rib corrugation. Apply panels and associated items for neat and weather tight enclosure. Avoid "panel creep" or application not true to line.
  2. Provide metal-backed washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal wall panels.

3. Locate and space exposed fasteners in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment. Use proper tools to obtain controlled uniform compression for positive seal without rupture of washer.
4. Install screw fasteners with power tools having controlled torque adjusted to compress washer tightly without damage to washer, screw threads, or panels. Install screws in predrilled holes.
5. Provide sealant tape at lapped joints of metal wall panels and between panels and protruding equipment, vents, and accessories.
6. Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant tape to weather-side surface of fastenings on end laps; on side laps of nesting-type panels; on side laps of corrugated nesting-type, ribbed, or fluted panels; and elsewhere as needed to make panels weather tight.
7. At panel splices, nest panels with minimum 6-inch end lap, sealed with butyl-rubber sealant and fastened together by interlocking clamping plates.

### 3.4 ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weather tight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
  1. Install components required for a complete metal wall panel assembly including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items.
- B. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
  1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof and weather-resistant performance.
  2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal wall panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal wall panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.

- B. After metal wall panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.
- C. Replace metal wall panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 074213

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



## SECTION 074293 - METAL SOFFIT PANELS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Flush-profile, concealed fastener, metal soffit panels.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 5 Section "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for support framing, including girts, studs, and bracing.
  - 2. Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing and other sheet metal work that is not part of metal soffit panel assemblies.

#### 1.3 DEFINITION

- A. Metal Soffit Panel Assembly: Metal soffit panels, attachment system components, miscellaneous metal framing, thermal insulation, and accessories necessary for a complete weathertight soffit system.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Metal soffit panel assemblies shall comply with performance requirements without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- B. Air Infiltration: Air leakage through assembly of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. of soffit area when tested according to ASTM E 283 at the following test-pressure difference:
  - 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 1.57 lbf/sq. ft.
- C. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 331 at the following test-pressure difference:
  - 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft.

- D. Water Penetration under Dynamic Pressure: No evidence of water leakage when tested according to AAMA 501.1 under dynamic pressure equal to 20 percent of inward-acting, wind-load design pressure of not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. and not more than 12 lbf/sq. ft.
  - 1. Water Leakage: As defined according to AAMA 501.1.
- E. Structural Performance: Provide metal soffit panel assemblies capable of withstanding the effects the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E 1592:
  - 1. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on the following minimum design wind pressures:
    - a. Uniform pressure of 20 lbf/sq. ft, acting inward or outward.
    - b. Uniform pressure as indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Deflection Limits: Metal soffit panel assemblies shall withstand wind loads with horizontal deflections no greater than 1/180 of the span.
- F. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
  - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of soffit panel and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation layouts of metal soffit panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details. Distinguish between factory-, shop- and field-assembled work.
  - 1. Accessories: Include details of the following items, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches:
    - a. Flashing and trim.
    - b. Anchorage systems.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of metal soffit panel indicated with factory-applied color finishes.
  - 1. Include similar Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.
  - 2. Include manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each sealant exposed to view.

- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.
  - 1. Metal Soffit Panels: 12 inches long by actual panel width. Include fasteners, closures, and other metal soffit panel accessories.
  - 2. Trim and Closures: 12 inches long. Include fasteners and other exposed accessories.
  - 3. Accessories: 12-inch-long Samples for each type of accessory.
- E. Coordination Drawings: Exterior elevations drawn to scale and coordinating penetrations and soffit-mounted items. Show the following:
  - 1. Soffit panels and attachments.
  - 2. Wall-mounted items including doors, windows, louvers, and lighting fixtures.
  - 3. New and existing framing, as understood by Manufacturer/Installer.
- F. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- G. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for each product.
- H. Maintenance Data: For metal soffit panels to include in maintenance manuals.
- I. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of metal soffit panel from single source from single manufacturer.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, sheets, metal soffit panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal soffit panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect metal soffit panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack metal soffit panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal soffit panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal soffit panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.

- D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal soffit panel for period of metal soffit panel installation.

## 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal soffit panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.
- B. Field Measurements: Verify locations of structural members and soffit opening dimensions by field measurements before metal soffit panel fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

## 1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate metal soffit panel assemblies with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, and construction of studs, walls, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

## 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal soffit panel assemblies that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
    - b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal soffit panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PANEL MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Sheet: For all work exposed to view provide alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated and with not less than the strength and durability of alloy and temper designated below:
  - 1. Anodized Finish: Apply the following coil-anodized finish:
    - a. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
- B. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel for work not exposed to view: ASTM A 792/A 792M, **Class AZ50 coating designation, Grade 40**, or to suit project conditions with 55 percent aluminum not less than 0.0396 inch thick.
- C. Galvanized Steel Sheet (for work not exposed to view): ASTM A 526, G 90, commercial quality, or ASTM A 527, G 90, lock-forming quality, hot dip galvanized steel sheet with 0.20 percent copper, mill phosphatized where indicated for painting; not less than 0.0396 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Panel Sealants:
  - 1. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.
  - 2. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920; elastomeric polyurethane, polysulfide, or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal soffit panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal soffit panel manufacturer.
  - 3. Butyl-Rubber-Based, Solvent-Release Sealant: ASTM C 1311.

### 2.2 FIELD-INSTALLED THERMAL INSULATION

- A. Refer to Division 7 Section "Building Insulation."

### 2.3 Nailer Board

- A. Refer to Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry."

### 2.4 Vapor Retarder

- A. Refer to Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry."

## 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS METAL FRAMING

- A. Miscellaneous Metal Framing, General: ASTM C 645, cold-formed metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A 653, G40 hot-dip galvanized or coating with equivalent corrosion resistance unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels:
  - 1. Nominal Thickness: As required to meet performance requirements.
  - 2. As indicated.
- C. Z-Shaped Furring: With slotted or nonslotted web, face flange of 1-1/4 inches, soffit attachment flange of 7/8 inch, and depth required to fit insulation thickness indicated.
  - 1. Nominal Thickness: As required to meet performance requirements.
- D. Fasteners for Miscellaneous Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten miscellaneous metal framing members to substrates.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws, bolts, nuts, self-locking rivets and bolts, end-welded studs, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads. Where required, provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal soffit panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM, PVC, or neoprene sealing washers.

## 2.7 CONCEALED-FASTENER, LAP-SEAM METAL SOFFIT PANELS

- A. General: Provide factory-formed metal soffit panels designed to be field assembled by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners in side laps. Include accessories required for weather tight installation.
- B. Flush-Profile, Concealed-Fastener Metal Soffit Panels: Formed with vertical panel edges and flat pan between panel edges; with flush joint between panels.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Fabral “Décor-Flush” or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. AEP-Span – “Flush Panel”.
    - b. Alcoa Architectural Products (USA).
    - c. ATAS International, Inc.
    - d. Berridge Manufacturing Company.
    - e. MBCI; Div. of NCI Building Systems.
    - f. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, L.L.C.
    - g. Petersen Aluminum Corporation.

2. Material: Formed from 0.032-inch-thick, aluminum; in continuous lengths. Finish soffit panels as per Paragraph 2.1.A.
3. Panel Coverage: Non-perforated 12" wide panels formed with vertical panel edges and two intermediate stiffening ribs at center of panel, symmetrically spaced between panel edges; with flush joint between panels. The stiffening ribs shall have the same appearance as the panel edge joints to look like 4" wide strips.

## 2.8 ACCESSORIES

- A. Soffit Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete metal soffit panel assembly including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal soffit panels, unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and rakes, fabricated of same metal as metal soffit panels.
  2. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
  3. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch-thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal soffit panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
- B. Flashing and Trim: Formed from 0.018-inch minimum thickness, zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet prepainted with coil coating. Provide flashing and trim as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, bases, drips, sills, jambs, corners, end walls, framed openings, rakes, fasciae, parapet caps, soffits, reveals, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal soffit panels.

## 2.9 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate and finish metal soffit panels and accessories at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. Fabricate metal soffit panels in a manner that eliminates condensation on interior side of panel and with joints between panels designed to form weather tight seals.
- C. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.
- D. Fabricate metal soffit panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a tight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that will minimize noise from movements within panel assembly.

- E. Sheet Metal Accessories: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to the design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
  - 1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
  - 2. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion but movable joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant to comply with SMACNA standards.
  - 3. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
  - 4. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended by metal soffit panel manufacturer.
    - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal soffit panel manufacturer for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

## 2.10 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal soffit panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of work.
  - 1. Examine soffit framing to verify that girts, angles, channels, studs, and other structural panel support members and anchorage have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal soffit panel manufacturer.



2. Examine soffit sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal soffit panel manufacturer.
  3. Verify that weather-resistant sheathing paper has been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
  4. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal soffit panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal soffit panels before metal soffit panel installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Miscellaneous Framing: Install subgirts, base angles, sills, furring, and other miscellaneous soffit panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C 754 and metal soffit panel manufacturer's written recommendations.
1. Soffit Framing: As required to comply with requirements for assemblies indicated or as detailed.

### 3.3 THERMAL INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Board Insulation: Extend insulation in thickness indicated to cover entire soffit. Comply with installation requirements in Division 7 Section "Building Insulation."
1. Erect insulation horizontally and hold in place with Z-shaped furring members spaced 24 inches o.c. Attach furring members to substrate with screws spaced 24 inches o.c.
  2. Retain insulation in place by metal clips and straps or integral pockets within panels, spaced at intervals according to insulation manufacturer's instructions. Maintain cavity width between insulation and metal liner panel of dimension indicated.

### 3.4 METAL SOFFIT PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install metal soffit panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated on Drawings. Install panels perpendicular to girts and subgirts unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal soffit panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
1. Commence metal soffit panel installation and install minimum of 300 sq. ft. in presence of factory-authorized representative.
  2. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal soffit panels.
  3. Flash and seal metal soffit panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until weather barrier and flashings that will be concealed by metal soffit panels are installed.
  4. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.

5. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
6. Install flashing and trim as metal soffit panel work proceeds.
7. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
8. Apply elastomeric sealant continuously between metal base channel (sill angle) and concrete and elsewhere as indicated or, if not indicated, as necessary for waterproofing.
9. Align bottom of metal soffit panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
10. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe and conduit penetrating exterior soffits.

B. Fasteners:

1. Steel Soffit Panels: Use stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use galvanized steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.

C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended by metal soffit panel manufacturer.

D. Joint Sealers: Install gaskets, joint fillers, and sealants where indicated and where required for weather tight performance of metal soffit panel assemblies. Provide types of gaskets, fillers, and sealants indicated or, if not indicated, types recommended by metal soffit panel manufacturer.

1. Seal metal soffit panel end laps with double beads of tape or sealant, full width of panel. Seal side joints where recommended by metal soffit panel manufacturer.
2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

E. Lap-Seam Metal Soffit Panels: Fasten metal soffit panels to supports with fasteners at each lapped joint at location and spacing recommended by manufacturer.

1. Lap ribbed or fluted sheets one full rib corrugation. Apply panels and associated items for neat and weather tight enclosure. Avoid "panel creep" or application not true to line.
2. Provide metal-backed washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal soffit panels.
3. Locate and space exposed fasteners in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment. Use proper tools to obtain controlled uniform compression for positive seal without rupture of washer.
4. Install screw fasteners with power tools having controlled torque adjusted to compress washer tightly without damage to washer, screw threads, or panels. Install screws in predrilled holes.
5. Provide sealant tape at lapped joints of metal soffit panels and between panels and protruding equipment, vents, and accessories.
6. Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant tape to weather-side surface of fastenings on end laps; on side laps of nesting-type panels; on side laps of corrugated nesting-type, ribbed, or fluted panels; and elsewhere as needed to make panels weather tight.

7. At panel splices, nest panels with minimum 6-inch end lap, sealed with butyl-rubber sealant and fastened together by interlocking clamping plates.

### 3.5 ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weather tight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
  1. Install components required for a complete metal soffit panel assembly including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items.
- B. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
  1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof and weather-resistant performance.
  2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

### 3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal soffit panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal soffit panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal soffit panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. After metal soffit panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.
- C. Replace metal soffit panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 074293

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 074646 - FIBER-CEMENT SIDING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes fiber-cement siding.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, grounds, nailers, and blocking.
  - 2. Section 062013 "Exterior Finish Carpentry" for exterior cellular PVC and foam-plastic trim.
  - 3. Section 072500 "Weather Barriers" for weather-resistive barriers.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate siding installation with flashings and other adjoining construction to ensure proper sequencing.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For fiber-cement siding including related accessories.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type, color, texture, and pattern required.
  - 1. 24-inch wide-by-36-inch high Sample panel of siding assembled on plywood backing.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of fiber-cement siding.
- B. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for fiber-cement siding.
- C. Research/Evaluation Reports: For each type of fiber-cement siding required, from ICC-ES.
- D. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

## 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of product, including related accessories, to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Furnish full lengths of fiber-cement siding including related accessories, in a quantity equal to 2 percent of amount installed.

## 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
  - 1. Build mockup of typical wall area as shown on Drawings.
  - 2. Build mockups for fiber-cement siding including accessories.
    - a. Size: 48 inches long by 60 inches high.
    - b. Include outside corner on one end of mockup and inside corner on other end.
  - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

## 1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with labels intact until time of use.
- B. Store materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.

## 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including cracking and deforming.
    - b. Deterioration of materials beyond normal weathering.
  - 2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain products, including related accessories, from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Available Manufacturers:
  - 1. Basis of Design: James Hardie Inc., "HardiePlank Statement Collection", Lap Siding
  - 2. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturer's specified:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.
    - b. GAF Materials Corp.
    - c. Cemlank, Inc.
    - d. MaxiTile, Inc.

### 2.2 FIBER-CEMENT SIDING

- A. General: ASTM C 1186, Type A, Grade II, fiber-cement board, noncombustible when tested according to ASTM E 136; with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84.
- B. Labeling: Provide fiber-cement siding that is tested and labeled according to ASTM C 1186 by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Nominal Thickness: Not less than **5/16 inch**.
- D. Horizontal Pattern: Boards **8-1/4 to 8-1/2 inches** plain style.
  - 1. Exposure: 7 inch.
  - 2. Texture: Smooth.
- E. Factory Priming: Manufacturer's standard acrylic primer.

- F. Factory Final Coating: Pre-finished two coat system (ColorPlus Technology) and developed by cement board manufacturer. Includes all trim components. Color as selected from manufacturer's full range of colors.
  - 1. Warranty: 15 year limited warranty.

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Siding Accessories, General: Provide starter strips, edge trim, outside and inside corner caps, and other items as recommended by siding manufacturer for building configuration.
  - 1. Provide accessories matching color and texture of adjacent siding unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Decorative Accessories: Provide the following fiber-cement decorative accessories as indicated:
  - 1. Moldings and trim.
  - 2. Manufacturer's standard 5/4" nominal (1" actual thickness) pre-finished smooth trim in same color and finish as siding.
- C. Sealants: Provide sealants to match cement board manufacturer's standard colors.
  - 1. Basis of Design: OSI (800-624-7767)- Sealants match HardiePlank standard colors.
- D. Flashing: Provide aluminum flashing complying with Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" at window and door heads and where indicated.
  - 1. Finish for Aluminum Flashing: Factory-prime coating.
- E. Fasteners:
  - 1. For fastening to wood, use siding nails of sufficient length to penetrate a minimum of **1 inch** into substrate.
  - 2. For fastening to metal, use ribbed bugle-head screws of sufficient length to penetrate a minimum of **1/4 inch**, or three screw-threads, into substrate.
  - 3. For fastening fiber cement, use hot-dip galvanized fasteners.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of fiber-cement siding and related accessories.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.



### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.
  - 1. Do not install damaged components.
  - 2. Install fasteners no more than **16 inches** o.c. into each stud backer.
- B. Install joint sealants as specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" and to produce a weathertight installation.
- C. Use siding manufacturer's touch-up paint for all exposed edges, nail holes, etc. in accordance with manufacturer's requirements to maintain warranty.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove damaged, improperly installed, or otherwise defective materials and replace with new materials complying with specified requirements.
- B. Clean finished surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions and maintain in a clean condition during construction.

END OF SECTION 074646

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 075420 - POLYVINYL-CHLORIDE (PVC) ROOFING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Adhered PVC membrane roofing system.
  - 2. Roof insulation.
- B. Section includes the installation of acoustical roof deck rib insulation strips furnished under Division 5 Section "Steel Deck."
- C. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
  - 2. Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for metal roof penetration flashings, flashings, and counterflashings.
  - 3. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants, joint fillers, and joint preparation.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definition of terms related to roofing work in this Section.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Installed membrane roofing and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Membrane roofing and base flashings shall remain watertight.
- B. Material Compatibility: Provide roofing materials that are compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by membrane roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

- C. Roofing System Design: Provide membrane roofing system that is identical to systems that have been successfully tested by a qualified testing and inspecting agency to resist uplift pressure calculated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. Refer to the wind design load criteria noted on the Structural Drawings. Engineer and provide a roof system that will conform to these criteria and provide the manufacturer's standard 55 mph wind speed warranty.
- D. FM Approvals Listing: Provide membrane roofing, base flashings, and component materials that comply with requirements in FM Approvals 4450 and FM Approvals 4470 as part of a membrane roofing system, and that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Approvals markings.
  - 1. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-60.
  - 2. Hail Resistance: MH.
- E. Energy Performance: Provide roofing system that is listed on the DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low-slope roof products.
- F. Energy Performance: Provide roofing system with initial solar reflectance not less than 0.87 and emissivity not less than 0.90 when tested according to CRRC-1.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roofing system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Base flashings and membrane terminations.
  - 2. Tapered insulation, including slopes.
  - 3. Roof plan showing orientation of steel roof deck and orientation of membrane roofing and fastening spacings.
  - 4. Insulation fastening patterns for corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations.
- C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:
  - 1. Sheet roofing, of color specified, including T-shaped side and end lap seam.
  - 2. Roof insulation.
  - 3. Walkway pads or rolls.
  - 4. Metal termination bars.
  - 5. Battens.
  - 6. Six insulation fasteners of each type, length, and finish.
  - 7. Six roof cover fasteners of each type, length, and finish.
- D. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and manufacturer.

- E. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by roofing manufacturer certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
  - 1. Submit evidence of compliance with performance requirements.
- F. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for components of membrane roofing system.
- G. Research/Evaluation Reports: For components of membrane roofing system, from the ICC-ES.
- H. Field quality-control reports.
- I. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.
- J. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is FM Approvals approved for membrane roofing system identical to that used for this Project.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by membrane roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain components including roof insulation and fasteners for membrane roofing system from same manufacturer as membrane roofing or approved by membrane roofing manufacturer.
- D. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108, Class A for application and roof slopes indicated, as determined by testing identical membrane roofing materials by a qualified testing agency. Materials shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- E. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide fire-resistance-rated roof assemblies identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- F. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's representative, deck Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
  - 2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 3. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.

4. Examine deck substrate conditions and finishes for compliance with requirements, including flatness and fastening.
5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that will affect roofing system.
7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
- B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
  1. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
- C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- D. Handle and store roofing materials and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

#### 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

#### 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard or customized form, without monetary limitation, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of membrane roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  1. Special warranty includes membrane roofing, base flashings, roof insulation, fasteners, roofing accessories, and other components of membrane roofing system.
  2. Warranty Period: 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.

- B. Special Project Warranty: Submit roofing Installer's warranty, on warranty form at end of this Section, signed by Installer, covering the Work of this Section, including all components of membrane roofing system such as membrane roofing, base flashing, roof insulation, fasteners, and walkway products, for the following warranty period:

1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PVC MEMBRANE ROOFING

- A. PVC Sheet: ASTM D 4434, Type III, fabric reinforced and fabric backed.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Sika Sarnafil (Basis of Design).
  - b. Duro-Last Roofing, Inc.
  - c. Carlisle SynTec, Incorporated.
  - d. Flex Membranes International, Inc.
  - e. GAF Materials Corporation.
  - f. Johns Manville.
  - g. Mule-Hide Products Co., Inc.
  - h. Stevens Roofing Systems.
  - i. Versico Incorporated.
2. Thickness: minimum 60 mils.
3. Exposed Face Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

### 2.2 AUXILIARY MEMBRANE ROOFING MATERIALS

- A. General: Auxiliary membrane roofing materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use, and compatible with membrane roofing.
1. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Adhesives and sealants that are not on the exterior side of weather barrier shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
    - a. Plastic Foam Adhesives: 50 g/L.
    - b. Gypsum Board and Panel Adhesives: 50 g/L.
    - c. Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
    - d. Fiberglass Adhesives: 80 g/L.
    - e. Contact Adhesive: 80 g/L.

- f. Other Adhesives: 250 g/L.
  - g. PVC Welding Compounds: 510 g/L.
  - h. Adhesive Primer for Plastic: 650 g/L
  - i. Single-Ply Roof Membrane Sealants: 450 g/L.
  - j. Nonmembrane Roof Sealants: 300 g/L.
  - k. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
  - l. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
- B. Sheet Flashing: Manufacturer's standard sheet flashing of same material, type, reinforcement, thickness, and color as PVC sheet membrane.
- C. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard.
- D. Slip Sheet: Manufacturer's standard, of thickness required for application.
- E. Cover Board: Manufacturer's standard ½" HD board. Installed over rigid roof insulation. Provide for alternates GC-4 and GC-5 where photovoltaic solar panels are to be installed.
- F. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled stainless-steel or aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch thick; with anchors.
- G. Metal Battens: Manufacturer's standard, aluminum-zinc-alloy-coated or zinc-coated steel sheet, approximately 1 inch wide by 0.05 inch thick, pre-punched.
- H. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening membrane to substrate, and acceptable to membrane roofing system manufacturer.
- I. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, T-joint covers, lap sealants, termination reglets, and other accessories.

## 2.3 ROOF INSULATION

- A. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by PVC membrane roofing manufacturer, selected from manufacturer's standard sizes suitable for application, of thicknesses indicated and that produce FM Approvals-approved roof insulation.
- B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
- C. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards fabricated to slope of 1/4 inch per 12 inches unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Provide preformed saddles, crickets, tapered edge strips, and other insulation shapes where indicated for sloping to drain. Fabricate to slopes indicated.



## 2.4 INSULATION ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Furnish roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with membrane roofing.
- B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- C. Bead-Applied Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended bead-applied, low-rise, one- or multicomponent urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to another insulation layer.

## 2.5 WALKWAYS

- A. Flexible Walkways: Factory-formed, nonporous, heavy-duty, slip-resisting, surface-textured walkway pads, approximately 3/16 inch thick, and acceptable to membrane roofing system manufacturer.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with the following requirements and other conditions affecting performance of roofing system:
  - 1. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place and curbs are set and braced and that roof drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
  - 2. Verify that wood blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
  - 3. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck complies with requirements in Division 5 Section "Steel Deck."
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
- B. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.

- C. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.
- D. Install acoustical roof deck rib insulation strips, specified in Division 5 Section "Steel Deck," according to acoustical roof deck manufacturer's written instructions, immediately before installation of overlying construction and to remain dry.

### 3.3 INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate installing membrane roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at the end of the workday.
- B. Comply with membrane roofing system and insulation manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
- C. Install tapered insulation under area of roofing to conform to slopes indicated.
- D. Install insulation under area of roofing to achieve required thickness. Where overall insulation thickness is 2.7 inches or greater, install two or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered from joints of previous layer a minimum of 6 inches in each direction.
- E. Trim surface of insulation where necessary at roof drains so completed surface is flush and does not restrict flow of water.
- F. Install insulation with long joints of insulation in a continuous straight line with end joints staggered between rows, abutting edges and ends between boards. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with insulation.
  - 1. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
- G. Mechanically Fastened and Adhered Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and secure first layer of insulation to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
  - 1. Fasten first layer of insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
  - 2. Fasten first layer of insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
  - 3. Set each subsequent layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

### 3.4 ADHERED MEMBRANE ROOFING INSTALLATION

- A. Adhere membrane roofing over area to receive roofing and install according to membrane roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Install sheet according to ASTM D 5036.
- B. Start installation of membrane roofing in presence of membrane roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
- C. Accurately align membrane roofing and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
- D. Bonding Adhesive: Apply to substrate and underside of membrane roofing at rate required by manufacturer and allow to partially dry before installing membrane roofing. Do not apply to splice area of membrane roofing.
- E. In addition to adhering, mechanically fasten membrane roofing securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.
- F. Apply membrane roofing with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
- G. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap membrane roofing, and hot-air weld side and end laps of membrane roofing and sheet flashings according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation.
  1. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of sheet membrane.
  2. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily and repair seam sample areas.
  3. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing that does not comply with requirements.
- H. Spread sealant bed over deck drain flange at roof drains and securely seal membrane roofing in place with clamping ring.
- I. Install membrane roofing and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing roofing to maintain weathertightness of transition and to not void warranty for existing membrane roofing system.

### 3.5 BASE FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories and adhere to substrates according to membrane roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate and allow to partially dry. Do not apply to seam area of flashing.
- C. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing.
- D. Clean seam areas, overlap, and firmly roll sheet flashings into the adhesive. Hot-air weld side and end laps to ensure a watertight seam installation.

- E. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings and mechanically anchor to substrate through termination bars.

### 3.6 WALKWAY INSTALLATION

- A. Flexible Walkways: Install walkway products in locations indicated. Heat weld to substrate or adhere walkway products to substrate with compatible adhesive according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.7 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect membrane roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction will not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Architect and Owner.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove membrane roofing system that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates; and repair or reinstall membrane roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.
- C. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

### 3.8 ROOFING INSTALLER'S WARRANTY

- A. WHEREAS <Insert name> of <Insert address>, herein called the "Roofing Installer," has performed roofing and associated work ("work") on the following project:
  - 1. Owner: Washington County Board of Commissioners.
  - 2. Address: 100 West Washington Street, Room 1101, Hagerstown, MD 21740.
  - 3. Building Name/Type: Washington County Public Safety Training Center.
  - 4. Address: 9238 Sharpsburg Pike, Hagerstown, MD 21740.
  - 5. Area of Work: <Insert information>.
  - 6. Acceptance Date: <Insert date>.
  - 7. Warranty Period: <Insert time>.
  - 8. Expiration Date: <Insert date>.
- B. AND WHEREAS Roofing Installer has contracted (either directly with Owner or indirectly as a subcontractor) to warrant said work against leaks and faulty or defective materials and workmanship for designated Warranty Period,
- C. NOW THEREFORE Roofing Installer hereby warrants, subject to terms and conditions herein set forth, that during Warranty Period he will, at his own cost and expense, make or cause to be made such repairs to or replacements of said work as are necessary to correct faulty and defective work and as are necessary to maintain said work in a watertight condition.

D. This Warranty is made subject to the following terms and conditions:

1. Specifically excluded from this Warranty are damages to work and other parts of the building, and to building contents, caused by:
  - a. Lightning;
  - b. Peak gust wind speed exceeding **<Insert wind speed>**;
  - c. Fire;
  - d. Failure of roofing system substrate, including cracking, settlement, excessive deflection, deterioration, and decomposition;
  - e. Faulty construction of parapet walls, copings, chimneys, skylights, vents, equipment supports, and other edge conditions and penetrations of the work;
  - f. Vapor condensation on bottom of roofing; and
  - g. Activity on roofing by others, including construction contractors, maintenance personnel, other persons, and animals, whether authorized or unauthorized by Owner.
2. When work has been damaged by any of foregoing causes, Warranty shall be null and void until such damage has been repaired by Roofing Installer and until cost and expense thereof have been paid by Owner or by another responsible party so designated.
3. Roofing Installer is responsible for damage to work covered by this Warranty but is not liable for consequential damages to building or building contents resulting from leaks or faults or defects of work.
4. During Warranty Period, if Owner allows alteration of work by anyone other than Roofing Installer, including cutting, patching, and maintenance in connection with penetrations, attachment of other work, and positioning of anything on roof, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said alterations, but only to the extent said alterations affect work covered by this Warranty. If Owner engages Roofing Installer to perform said alterations, Warranty shall not become null and void unless Roofing Installer, before starting said work, shall have notified Owner in writing, showing reasonable cause for claim, that said alterations would likely damage or deteriorate work, thereby reasonably justifying a limitation or termination of this Warranty.
5. During Warranty Period, if original use of roof is changed and it becomes used for, but was not originally specified for, a promenade, work deck, spray-cooled surface, flooded basin, or other use or service more severe than originally specified, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said change, but only to the extent said change affects work covered by this Warranty.
6. Owner shall promptly notify Roofing Installer of observed, known, or suspected leaks, defects, or deterioration and shall afford reasonable opportunity for Roofing Installer to inspect work and to examine evidence of such leaks, defects, or deterioration.
7. This Warranty is recognized to be the only warranty of Roofing Installer on said work and shall not operate to restrict or cut off Owner from other remedies and resources lawfully available to Owner in cases of roofing failure. Specifically, this Warranty shall not operate to relieve Roofing Installer of responsibility for performance of original work according to requirements of the Contract Documents, regardless of whether Contract was a contract directly with Owner or a subcontract with Owner's General Contractor.

E. IN WITNESS THEREOF, this instrument has been duly executed this **<Insert day>** day of **<Insert month>**, **<Insert year>**.

1. Authorized Signature: **<Insert signature>**.
2. Name: **<Insert name>**.
3. Title: **<Insert title>**.

END OF SECTION 075420

## SECTION 076200 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Formed wall flashing and trim.
  - 2. Manufactured through-wall flashing.
  - 3. Manufactured reglets with counterflashing.
  - 4. Scuppers and downspouts.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
  - 2. Division 7 Sections "TPO Roofing" and "Hot-Applied Built-Up Asphalt Roofing" for installation of sheet metal flashing and trim integral with roofing.
  - 3. Division 7 Sections "Metal Wall Panels" and "Composite Wall Panels" for sheet metal flashing and trim integral with metal wall panels.
  - 4. Division 7 Section "Roof Accessories" for manufactured roof accessory units, such as roof hatches.
  - 5. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants".

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim layout and seams with sizes and locations of penetrations to be flashed, and joints and seams in adjacent materials.
- B. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim installation with adjoining roofing and wall materials, joints, and seams to provide leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review construction schedule. Verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.

2. Review special roof details, wall details, and condition of other construction that affect sheet metal flashing and trim.
3. Review requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
4. Review sheet metal flashing observation and repair procedures after flashing installation.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

### A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each manufactured product and accessory.

### B. Shop Drawings: For sheet metal flashing and trim.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Detail fabrication and installation layouts, expansion-joint locations, and keyed details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled work.
3. Include identification of material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.
4. Include details for forming, including profiles, shapes, seams, and dimensions.
5. Include details for joining, supporting, and securing, including layout and spacing of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments. Include pattern of seams.
6. Include details of termination points and assemblies.
7. Include details of expansion joints and expansion-joint covers, including showing direction of expansion and contraction from fixed points.
8. Include details of edge conditions, including counterflashings as applicable.
9. Include details of special conditions.
10. Include details of connections to adjoining work.
11. Detail formed flashing and trim at scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.

### C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sheet metal and accessory indicated with factory-applied finishes.

### D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish.

1. Sheet Metal Flashing: 12 inches long by actual width of unit, including finished seam and in required profile. Include fasteners, cleats, clips, closures, and other attachments.
2. Trim, Metal Closures, Expansion Joints, Joint Intersections, and Miscellaneous Fabrications: 12 inches long and in required profile. Include fasteners and other exposed accessories.
3. Unit-Type Accessories and Miscellaneous Materials: Full-size Sample.
4. Anodized Aluminum Samples: Samples to show full range to be expected for each color required.



## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of coping and roof edge flashing that is SPRI ES-1 tested and FM Approvals approved.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

## 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For sheet metal flashing and trim, and its accessories, to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim similar to that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
  - 1. Build mockup of typical flashing details, approximately 10 feet long, including supporting construction cleats, seams, attachments, underlayment, and accessories.
  - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

## 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
- B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

## 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.
- B. Sheet Metal Standard for Flashing and Trim: Comply with NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual" and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" requirements for dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. FM Approvals Listing: Manufacture and install copings and roof edge flashings that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" and approved for windstorm classification, Class 1-90. Identify materials with name of fabricator and design approved by FM Approvals.
- D. Recycled Content of Steel-Sheet Flashing and Trim: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 20 percent.
- E. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

### 2.2 SHEET METALS

- A. General: Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.

- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper as required to suit forming operations and performance required; with smooth, flat surface.
  - 1. Clear Anodic Finish, Coil Coated: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker. For all flashing, copings, fascia and other trim except where used in conjunction with the metal wall panels specified in Division 7 Section "Metal Wall Panels."
  - 2. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:

## 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and as recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item.
  - 1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
    - a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide metal-backed EPDM or PVC sealing washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal.
    - b. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
  - 2. Fasteners for aluminum sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
- C. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.
- D. Epoxy Seam Sealer: Two-part, noncorrosive, aluminum seam-cementing compound, recommended by aluminum manufacturer for exterior nonmoving joints, including riveted joints.
- E. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion according to ASTM D 1187.
- F. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

## 2.4 MANUFACTURED SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

- A. Through-Wall, Ribbed, Sheet Metal Flashing: Manufacture through-wall sheet metal flashing for embedment in masonry, with ribs at 3-inch intervals along length of flashing to provide integral mortar bond. Where indicated on the drawings, manufacture through-wall flashing

with snaplock receiver on exterior face to receive counterflashing or with interlocking counterflashing on exterior face, of same metal as flashing.

- B. Reglets: Units of type, material, and profile required, formed to provide secure interlocking of separate reglet and counterflashing pieces, and compatible with flashing indicated with factory-mitered and -welded corners and junctions and where indicated on the drawings, with interlocking counterflashing on exterior face, of same metal as reglet.
  - 1. Masonry Type: Provide with offset top flange for embedment in masonry mortar joint.
  - 2. Accessories:
    - a. Flexible-Flashing Retainer: Provide resilient plastic or rubber accessory to secure flexible flashing in reglet where clearance does not permit use of standard metal counterflashing or where Drawings show reglet without metal counterflashing.

## 2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details shown and recommendations in cited sheet metal standard that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item required. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in shop to greatest extent possible.
  - 1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
  - 2. Obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
  - 3. Form sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks; true to line, levels, and slopes; and with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
  - 4. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Do not use exposed fasteners on faces exposed to view.
- B. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to a tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Form metal for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.
  - 1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
  - 2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Sealant Joints: Where movable, nonexpansion-type joints are required, form metal to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant according to cited sheet metal standard.
- E. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.

- F. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints where necessary for strength.
- G. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

## 2.6 ROOF-DRAINAGE SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Gutters: Match profile indicated on drawings, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes, and other special pieces as required. Fabricate in continuous lengths/sections. Provide gutter guard protection from leaves, etc. in same finish as gutter.
  - 1. Hanger Style: Brackets and straps as indicated on drawings.
  - 2. Fabricate from the following materials:
    - a. Aluminum: 0.040 inch thick.
    - b. Color to match roof.
- B. Downspouts: Fabricate rectangular downspouts to dimensions indicated, complete with mitered elbows. Furnish with metal hangers at top and bottom of downspout from same material as downspouts and anchors. Provide intermediate hanger if span is over 10'. Shop fabricate elbows.
  - 1. Hanger Style: Brackets.
  - 2. Fabricate from the following materials:
    - a. Aluminum: 0.032 inch thick.
    - b. Color to match gutter and roof.
- C. Downspout Shoes: See specification section 055001.

## 2.7 LOW-SLOPE ROOF SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Roof-to-Wall Transition: Fabricate from the following materials: Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners.
  - 1. Aluminum: 0.050 inch thick.
- B. Base Flashing: Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners. Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Aluminum: 0.040 inch thick.
- C. Counterflashing: Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners. Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Aluminum: 0.032 inch thick.

D. Flashing Receivers: Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Aluminum: 0.032 inch thick.

## 2.8 WALL SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Through-Wall Flashing: Fabricate continuous flashings in minimum 96-inch-long, but not exceeding 12-foot-long, sections, under copings, and at shelf angles. Fabricate discontinuous lintel, sill, and similar flashings to extend 6 inches beyond each side of wall openings; and form with 2-inch-high, end dams. Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch thick.

B. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Fabricate head, sill and similar flashings to extend 4 inches beyond wall openings. Form head and sill flashing with 2-inch-high, end dams. Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Aluminum: 0.032 inch thick.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, substrate, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify compliance with requirements for installation tolerances of substrates.
2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
3. Verify that air- or water-resistant barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. General: Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.

1. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line, levels, and slopes. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder, welds, and sealant.

2. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before fabricating sheet metal.
  3. Space cleats not more than 12 inches apart. Attach each cleat with at least two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.
  4. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim with limited oil canning, and free of buckling and tool marks.
  5. Torch cutting of sheet metal flashing and trim is not permitted.
  6. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other, or where metal contacts pressure-treated wood or other corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action or corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by sheet metal manufacturer or cited sheet metal standard.
1. Coat concealed side of uncoated-aluminum and stainless-steel sheet metal flashing and trim with bituminous coating where flashing and trim contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
  2. Underlayment: Where installing sheet metal flashing and trim directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install underlayment and cover with slip sheet.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at maximum of 10 feet with no joints within 24 inches of corner or intersection.
- D. Fasteners: Use fastener sizes that penetrate substrate not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.
- E. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible in exposed work and locate to minimize possibility of leakage. Cover and seal fasteners and anchors as required for a tight installation.
- F. Seal joints as required for watertight construction.
1. Use sealant-filled joints unless otherwise indicated. Embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch into sealant. Form joints to completely conceal sealant. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures. Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 deg F.
  2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- G. Rivets: Rivet joints in uncoated aluminum where necessary for strength.

### 3.3 ROOF-DRAINAGE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal roof-drainage items to produce complete roof-drainage system according to cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof-drainage system.
- B. Downspouts: Join sections with 1-1/2-inch telescoping joints.
  - 1. Provide hangers with fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely to walls. Locate hangers at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches o.c.
  - 2. Connect downspouts to underground drainage system.
- C. Parapet Scuppers: Continuously support scupper, set to correct elevation, and seal flanges to interior wall face, over cants or tapered edge strips, and under roofing membrane.
  - 1. Anchor scupper closure trim flange to exterior wall and seal with elastomeric sealant to scupper.
  - 2. Loosely lock front edge of scupper with conductor head.
  - 3. Seal with elastomeric sealant exterior wall scupper flanges into back of conductor head.
- D. Conductor Heads: Anchor securely to wall, with elevation of conductor head rim at minimum of 1 inch below scupper discharge.

### 3.4 ROOF FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements, sheet metal manufacturer's written installation instructions, and cited sheet metal standard. Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line, levels, and slopes. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight and weather resistant.
- B. Counterflashing: Coordinate installation of counterflashing with installation of base flashing. Insert counterflashing in reglets or receivers and fit tightly to base flashing. Extend counterflashing 4 inches over base flashing. Lap counterflashing joints minimum of 4 inches and bed with sealant.

### 3.5 WALL FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal wall flashing to intercept and exclude penetrating moisture according to cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of wall flashing with installation of wall-opening components such as windows, doors, and louvers.
- B. Through-Wall Flashing: Installation of through-wall flashing is specified in Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry."
- C. Reglets: Installation of reglets is specified in Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry."



### 3.6 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
- B. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerances specified in MCA's "Guide Specification for Residential Metal Roofing."

### 3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder.
- C. Clean off excess sealants.
- D. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of sheet metal flashing and trim installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces as recommended by sheet metal flashing and trim manufacturer. Maintain sheet metal flashing and trim in clean condition during construction.
- E. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 076200

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 077200 - ROOF ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Roof hatches.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Roof accessories shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of roof accessory indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roof accessories. Include plans, elevations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Indicate dimensions, loadings, and special conditions. Distinguish between plant- and field-assembled work.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Roof plans, drawn to scale, and coordinating penetrations and roof-mounted items. Show the following:
  - 1. Size and location of roof accessories specified in this Section.
  - 2. Method of attaching roof accessories to roof or building structure.
  - 3. Other roof-mounted items including mechanical and electrical equipment, ductwork, piping, and conduit.
  - 4. Required clearances.
  - 5. Confirmation that the contractor has field-verified the sizes of existing roof hatches being replaced.

- B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For roof accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of roof accessories with roofing membrane and base flashing and interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leakproof, weathertight, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 ROOF HATCH

- A. Roof Hatches: Fabricate roof hatches with insulated double-wall lids and insulated double-wall curb frame with integral deck mounting flange and lid frame counterflashing. Fabricate with welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints. Provide continuous weathertight perimeter gasketing and equip with corrosion-resistant or hot-dip galvanized hardware.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Bilco Company (Basis of Design)- Type S model.
    - b. Babcock-Davis
    - c. J. L. Industries, Inc.
    - d. Wasco Products, Inc.
  - 2. Loads: Fabricate roof hatches to withstand 40-lbf/sq. ft. external and 20-lbf/sq. ft. internal loads.
  - 3. Type and Size: Single-leaf lid, 30 by 36 inches
  - 4. Cover and Frame Material: 11 gauge aluminum, fully insulated.
  - 5. Cover: Breakformed, hollow metal design with 1" concealed fiberglass insulation, 3" beaded, overlapping flange, fully welded at corners, and internally reinforced.
  - 6. Interior Lid Liner: Manufacturer's standard metal liner of same material and finish as outer cover.
  - 7. Curb: 12" in height with integral capflashing, 1" fiberboard insulation, fully welded at corners, and 3-1/2" mounting flange with 7/16" holes provided for securing frame to the roof deck.
  - 8. Gasket: Extruded EPDM rubber gasket permanently adhered to cover.
  - 9. Hinges: Heavy-duty pintle hinges with 3/8" type 316 stainless steel hinge pins.
  - 10. Latch: Slam latch with interior and exterior turn handles and padlock hasps.
  - 11. Lift Assistance: Compression spring operators enclosed in telescopic tubes. Automatic hold-open arm with grip handle release.

12. Finish: Aluminum: Mill Finish.
13. Hardware: Engineered composite compression spring tubes. Steel compression springs with electrocoated acrylic finish. Type 316 Stainless Steel hinges. All other hardware to be zinc plated/chromate sealed.
14. Ladder Safety Post: Manufacturer's standard ladder safety post. Post to lock in place on full extension. Provide release mechanism to return post to closed position.
  - a. Height: 42 inches above finished roof deck.
  - b. Material and Finish: Steel tube, galvanized.
  - c. Diameter: Pipe with 1-5/8-inch OD tube.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- C. Verify dimensions of roof openings for roof accessories.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install roof accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  1. Install roof accessories level, plumb, true to line and elevation, and without warping, jogs in alignment, excessive oil canning, buckling, or tool marks.
  2. Anchor roof accessories securely in place so they are capable of resisting indicated loads.
  3. Use fasteners, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete installation of roof accessories and fit them to substrates.
  4. Install roof accessories to resist exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, or loosening of fasteners and seals.
- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
  1. Coat concealed side of uncoated aluminum roof accessories with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
  2. Underlayment: Where installing roof accessories directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of felt underlayment and cover with a slip sheet, or install a course of polyethylene sheet.

3. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof accessories for waterproof performance.

C. Roof-Hatch Installation:

1. Install roof hatch so top surface of hatch curb is level.
2. Verify that roof hatch operates properly. Clean, lubricate, and adjust operating mechanism and hardware.

### 3.3 REPAIR AND CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Clean off excess sealants.
- C. Replace roof accessories that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 077200

## SECTION 078413 - PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Penetrations in fire-resistance-rated walls.
  - 2. Penetrations in horizontal assemblies.
  - 3. Openings around structural members which penetrate rated floors or walls.

- B. Related Sections:

- 1. Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for construction of openings in concrete slabs and walls.
  - 2. Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry Assemblies" for construction of openings in masonry walls.
  - 3. Section 078413 specifying duct and piping penetrations.
  - 4. Division 26 Section specifying cable and conduit penetrations.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Firestopping: Material or combination of materials used to retain integrity of fire-rated construction by maintaining an effective barrier against the spread of flame, smoke, water and hot gases through penetrations in fire-rated wall and floor assemblies.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Product Schedule: For each penetration firestopping system. Include location and design designation of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
  - 1. Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing and inspecting agency's illustration for a particular penetration firestopping condition, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by penetration firestopping manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fire-resistance-rated assembly.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating penetration firestopping has been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written recommendations.
- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for penetration firestopping.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A firm experienced in installing penetration firestopping similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful performance. Qualifications include having the necessary experience, staff, and training to install manufacturer's products per specified requirements. Manufacturer's willingness to sell its penetration firestopping products to Contractor or to Installer engaged by Contractor does not in itself confer qualification on buyer.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Penetration firestopping shall comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Penetration firestopping tests are performed by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Penetration firestopping is identical to those tested per testing standard referenced in "Penetration Firestopping" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
    - a. Penetration firestopping products bear classification marking of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
    - b. Classification markings on penetration firestopping correspond to designations listed by UL in its "Fire Resistance Directory."
- C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install penetration firestopping when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by penetration firestopping manufacturers or when substrates are wet because of rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
- B. Install and cure penetration firestopping per manufacturer's written instructions using natural means of ventilations or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.



## 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that penetration firestopping is installed according to specified requirements.
- B. Coordinate sizing of sleeves, openings, core-drilled holes, or cut openings to accommodate penetration firestopping.
- C. Notify Owner's testing agency at least seven days in advance of penetration firestopping installations; confirm dates and times on day preceding each series of installations.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Johns Manville.
  - 2. Nelson Firestop Products.
  - 3. Specified Technologies Inc.
  - 4. 3M Fire Protection Products.
  - 5. Tremco, Inc.; Tremco Fire Protection Systems Group.
  - 6. USG Corporation.

### 2.2 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

- A. Provide penetration firestopping that is produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of construction penetrated. Penetration firestopping systems shall be compatible with one another, with the substrates forming openings, and with penetrating items if any.
- B. Penetrations in Fire-Resistance-Rated Walls: Provide penetration firestopping with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg (2.49 Pa).
  - 1. Fire-resistance-rated walls include fire walls, fire-barrier walls, smoke-barrier walls, and fire partitions.
  - 2. F-Rating: Not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
- C. Penetrations in Horizontal Assemblies: Provide penetration firestopping with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg (2.49 Pa).
  - 1. Horizontal assemblies include floors and floor/ceiling assemblies.

2. F-Rating: At least 1 hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
  3. T-Rating: At least 1 hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated except for floor penetrations within the cavity of a wall.
- D. W-Rating: Provide penetration firestopping showing no evidence of water leakage when tested according to UL 1479.
- E. Exposed Penetration Firestopping: Provide products with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, as determined per ASTM E 84.
- F. VOC Content: Penetration firestopping sealants and sealant primers shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
1. Sealants: 250 g/L.
  2. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
  3. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
- G. Accessories: Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that are needed to install fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only those components specified by penetration firestopping manufacturer and approved by qualified testing and inspecting agency for firestopping indicated.
1. Permanent forming/damming/backing materials, including the following:
    - a. Slag-wool-fiber or rock-wool-fiber insulation.
    - b. Sealants used in combination with other forming/damming/backing materials to prevent leakage of fill materials in liquid state.
    - c. Fire-rated form board.
    - d. Fillers for sealants.
  2. Temporary forming materials.
  3. Substrate primers.
  4. Collars.
  5. Steel sleeves.

## 2.3 FILL MATERIALS

- A. Cast-in-Place Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled devices for use in cast-in-place concrete floors and consisting of an outer metallic sleeve lined with an intumescent strip, a radial extended flange attached to one end of the sleeve for fastening to concrete formwork, and a neoprene gasket.
- B. Latex Sealants: Single-component latex formulations that do not re-emulsify after cure during exposure to moisture.

- C. Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled collars formed from galvanized steel and lined with intumescent material sized to fit specific diameter of penetrant.
- D. Intumescent Composite Sheets: Rigid panels consisting of aluminum-foil-faced elastomeric sheet bonded to galvanized-steel sheet.
- E. Intumescent Putties: Nonhardening dielectric, water-resistant putties containing no solvents, inorganic fibers, or silicone compounds.
- F. Intumescent Wrap Strips: Single-component intumescent elastomeric sheets with aluminum foil on one side.
- G. Mortars: Prepackaged dry mixes consisting of a blend of inorganic binders, hydraulic cement, fillers, and lightweight aggregate formulated for mixing with water at Project site to form a nonshrinking, homogeneous mortar.
- H. Pillows/Bags: Reusable heat-expanding pillows/bags consisting of glass-fiber cloth cases filled with a combination of mineral-fiber, water-insoluble expansion agents, and fire-retardant additives. Where exposed, cover openings with steel-reinforcing wire mesh to protect pillows/bags from being easily removed.
- I. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.
- J. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below:
  - 1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces, and nonsag formulation for openings in vertical and sloped surfaces, unless indicated firestopping limits use of nonsag grade for both opening conditions.

## 2.4 MIXING

- A. For those products requiring mixing before application, comply with penetration firestopping manufacturer's written instructions for accurate proportioning of materials, water (if required), type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other items or procedures needed to produce products of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning: Clean out openings immediately before installing penetration firestopping to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and with the following requirements:
  - 1. Remove from surfaces of opening substrates and from penetrating items foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of penetration firestopping.
  - 2. Clean opening substrates and penetrating items to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with penetration firestopping. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
  - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
- B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended in writing by manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape to prevent penetration firestopping from contacting adjoining surfaces that will remain exposed on completion of the Work and that would otherwise be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods used to remove stains. Remove tape as soon as possible without disturbing firestopping's seal with substrates.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install penetration firestopping to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications indicated.
- B. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.
  - 1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of firestopping.
- C. Install fill materials for firestopping by proven techniques to produce the following results:
  - 1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories, and penetrating items as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
  - 2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
  - 3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify penetration firestopping with preprinted metal or plastic labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces adjacent to and within 6 inches of firestopping edge so labels will be visible to anyone seeking to remove penetrating items or firestopping. Use mechanical fasteners or self-adhering-type labels with adhesives capable of permanently bonding labels to surfaces on which labels are placed. Include the following information on labels:
  - 1. The words "Warning - Penetration Firestopping - Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
  - 2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
  - 3. Designation of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
  - 4. Date of installation.
  - 5. Manufacturer's name.
  - 6. Installer's name.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Where deficiencies are found or penetration firestopping is damaged or removed because of testing, repair or replace penetration firestopping to comply with requirements.
- C. Proceed with enclosing penetration firestopping with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

### 3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to openings as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by penetration firestopping manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure that penetration firestopping is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, immediately cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated penetration firestopping and install new materials to produce systems complying with specified requirements.

### 3.7 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING SCHEDULE

- A. Where UL-classified systems are indicated, they refer to system numbers in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" under product Category XHEZ.
- B. Firestopping with No Penetrating Items FS-1:
  - 1. UL-Classified Systems: W-J-0003.
  - 2. Type of Fill Materials:

- a. Latex Sealant
- b. Silicone Sealant
- c. Intumescent Putty
- d. Mortar

C. Firestopping for Metallic Pipes, Conduit, or Tubing FS-2:

- 1. Available UL-Classified Systems: C-AJ-1044, C-AJ-1066 or W-L-1001 (depending on sizes and number of pipes); W-L-5001 (at penetrations through drywall partitions).
- 2. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:
  - a. Packing Material: polyethylene backer rod or tightly packed mineral wool batts.
  - b. Fill material: Intumescent caulk.

D. Firestopping for Nonmetallic Pipe, Conduit, or Tubing FS-3:

- 1. UL-Classified Systems: W-J-2013.
- 2. Packing Material: Polyethylene backer rod or tightly packed mineral wool batts.
- 3. Type of Fill Materials: Intumescent caulk.

E. Firestopping for Electric Cables FS-4:

- 1. UL-Classified Systems: W-L-1228.
- 2. Packing Material: Polyethylene backer rod or tightly packed mineral wool batts
- 3. Type of Fill Materials: Intumescent caulk.

F. Firestopping for Cable Trays with Electric Cables FS-5:

- 1. UL-Classified Systems: C-AJ-8016
- 2. Type of Fill Materials: Mineral wool and mortar.

G. Firestopping for Insulated Pipes FS-6:

- 1. Available UL-Classified Systems: C-AJ-5001 or C-AJ-5002 (depending on the thickness of the pipe insulation); W-L-5001 (at penetrations through drywall penetrations).
- 2. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:
  - a. Packing Material: Polyethylene backer rod or tightly packed mineral wool batts
  - b. Fill material: Intumescent caulk

H. Firestopping for Miscellaneous Electrical Penetrants FS-7:

- 1. UL-Classified Systems: C-AJ-8014 or C-AJ-8015.
- 2. Type of Fill Materials:
  - a. Latex sealant.
  - b. Mortar
  - c. Intumescent wrap strips
  - d. Firestop device

e. Intumescent composite sheet

I. Firestopping for Miscellaneous Mechanical Penetrants FS-8:

1. UL-Classified Systems: C-AJ-7016; W-L-7008 (at penetrations through drywall partitions).
2. Type of Fill Materials:
  - a. Packing Material: Polyethylene backer rod or tightly packed mineral wool batts
  - b. Fill material: Intumescent caulk.

END OF SECTION 078413

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



## SECTION 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes:

1. Exterior sealants.
2. Exterior EIFS sealants.
3. Exterior and interior traffic sealants.
4. Interior sealants.
5. Interior food contact sealants.
6. Interior sanitary sealants.
7. Exterior and interior water immersed sealants.
8. Metal lap joint sealants.
9. Threshold and sheet metal bedding sealants.
10. Joint accessories.
11. Security sealants.

- B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry" for masonry control and expansion joint fillers and gaskets.
2. Division 7 Section "Through Penetration Firestop System" for building joint-sealant systems.
3. Division 8 Section "Glazing" for glazing sealants.
4. Division 9 Section "Gypsum Board Assemblies" for sealing perimeter joints of gypsum board partitions to reduce sound transmission.
5. Division 9 Section "Acoustical Panel Ceilings" for sealing edge moldings at perimeters of acoustical ceilings.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawing:

1. Submit a Sealant Schedule, and related details, indicating specific installation and interface between sealants and building materials for each type of joint sealant and joint backing material used in this specification. Use SAME reference designations as

indicated in this Specification for preparation of the Joint Sealant Schedule in Part 3.6. Submittals are subject to the requirements of Division 1 Specification Section "Submittals."

B. Product Data:

1. For each joint-sealant product indicated.

C. Samples:

1. Submit standard cured color samples and charts for each sealant type illustrating full range of standard and custom colors.

D. Manufacturer's Certificate:

1. Signed by manufacturers of joint sealants certifying that products furnished comply with requirements and are suitable for the use indicated.
2. For manufacturer's products that include the phrase, "but are not limited to the following," the Contractor shall be responsible to provide certification that the submittal product complies with the specified product. This certification is subject to the requirements of Division 1 Specification Section "Submittals," Part 1, Definitions.

E. Qualifications Data:

1. For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified. Provide SWRI (Sealant, Waterproofing and Restoration Institute) Validation Certificate.

F. Compatibility and Adhesion from sealant manufacturer indicating the following:

1. Building materials forming joint and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
2. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
3. Preconstruction Compatibility and Adhesion Field Test for each sealant and building material.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data:

1. Submit recommended inspection intervals.
2. Submit instructions for repairing and replacing failed sealed joints.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project. Provide SWRI (Sealant, Waterproofing and Restoration Institute) Validation Certificate.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each kind of joint sealant from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Mockups: Install sealant in mockups of assemblies specified in other Sections that are indicated to receive joint sealants specified in this Section. Use materials and installation methods specified in this Section.
- D. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials to Project site in original unopened containers or bundles with labels indicating manufacturer, product name and designation, color, expiration date, pot life, curing time and mixing instructions for multicomponent materials.
- B. Store and handle materials in compliance with manufacturer's written instructions to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, high or low temperatures, contaminants or other causes.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
  - 1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer.
  - 2. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
  - 3. When joint substrates are wet.
- B. Joint-Width Conditions: Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
- C. Joint-Substrate Conditions: Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants until contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion are removed from joint substrates.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. General Warranty: Special warranties specified in this Article shall not deprive Owner of other rights Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in

addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.

- B. Special Installer's Warranty: Written warranty, signed by Installer agreeing to repair or replace elastomeric joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special warranties specified in this Article exclude deterioration or failure of elastomeric joint sealants from the following:
  - 1. Movement of the structure resulting in stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression caused by structural settlement or errors attributable to design or construction.
  - 2. Disintegration of joint substrates from natural causes exceeding design specifications.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience for the following sealant types:
  - 1. Multi-component sealants cure by chemical reaction. Cure times are predictable depending on atmospheric temperature. Silicone sealant cure is not affected by temperature, however, frost and moisture at bond line will impair adhesion.
  - 2. Single component sealants cure by reaction with moisture. Cure times will vary depending on atmospheric humidity and temperature.
  - 3. Fast cure (FC) sealants provide lesser cure times than corresponding standard cure products. Longer cure times will permit more accumulation of dust and other air-borne contamination on surface of sealant, potentially causing apparent color change.
  - 4. Sealant Types are M – Multi-Component and S – Single Component.
  - 5. Sealant Grades are P – Pourable or Self-Leveling used for horizontal traffic joints and NS – Non-Sag or Gunnable used for vertical and non-traffic joints.
  - 6. Sealant Classes are 25, 50, and 100/50 (extension/compression) representing movement capability in percent of joint width. Joint movement is based on the relative percentage of installed width. Design to a minimum of 4 times anticipated movement to accommodate design tolerances and expected movement based on coefficient of thermal expansion.
  - 7. Sealant Uses are T – Traffic, NT – Non-Traffic, I – Immersion, M – Mortar, A – Aluminum, and O – Other. Use O includes color anodized aluminum, metals other than aluminum, painted surfaces, brick, stone, tile, and wood for example.
  - 8. Immersion rated sealant applications require primer.

- B. VOC Content of Interior Sealants: Sealants and sealant primers used inside the weatherproofing system shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
  - 1. Architectural Sealants: 250 g/L.
  - 2. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
  - 3. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
- C. Stain-Test-Response Characteristics: Where sealants are specified to be nonstaining to porous substrates, provide products that have undergone testing according to ASTM C 1248 and have not stained porous joint substrates indicated for Project.
- D. Suitability for Contact with Food: Where sealants are indicated for joints that will come in repeated contact with food; provide products that comply with 21 CFR 177.2600.
- E. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of standard and custom colors.

## 2.2 URETHANE SEALANT TYPES – For exterior or interior use.

- A. **U1** - Multi-Component, Non-Sag, Urethane: ASTM C920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 50; Uses NT. Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Pecora Corporation; Dynatrol II.
  - 2. Polymeric Systems, Inc.; PSI-270.
  - 3. Tremco, Inc.; Dymeric 240 FC.
- B. **U2** - Multi-Component, Traffic-Grade Urethane: ASTM C920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 50; Uses T, Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Polymeric Systems, Inc.; PSI-270
  - 2. Tremco, Inc.; Dymeric 240 FC.
- C. **U3** - Single-Component, Non-Sag Urethane: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Uses NT. Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Sika Corporation, Construction Products Division; Sikaflex-15LM.
  - 2. Tremco, Inc.; Dymonic FC
- D. **U4** - Single-Component, Non-Sag Urethane: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses NT. Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Pecora Corporation; Dynatrol I-XL.
  - 2. Sika Corporation, Construction Products Division; Sikaflex-1a.

3. Tremco, Inc.; Dymonic or Fulkem 116.
- E. **U5** - Single-Component, Pourable, Traffic-Grade Urethane: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T. Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Pecora Corporation; Urexpan NR-201.
  2. Tremco, Inc.; Vulkem 45SSL.
  3. Sika Corporation, Construction Products Division; Sikaflex-1CSL.
- F. **U6** - Immersible, Single Component, Pourable, Traffic-Grade Urethane: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and I. Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Sika Corporation, Construction Products Division; Sikaflex-1CSL.
  2. Tremco, Inc.; Vulkem 45 SSL.
- G. **U7** - Immersible, Multicomponent, Pourable, Traffic-Grade, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C920. Type M, Grade P, Class 25, for Use T and I. Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. LymTal International, Inc.; Iso-Flex 880GB.
  2. May National Associates, Inc.; Bondaflex PUR 2 SL.
  3. Tremco, Inc.; Vulkem 245
- 2.3 SILICONE SEALANT TYPES – For exterior or interior use.
- A. **S1** - Single-Component, Non-Staining, Non-Sag, Neutral-Curing Silicone: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Uses NT. Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Dow Corning Corporation; 756SMS, 791, 795 or 995.
  2. Tremco, Inc.; Spectrem 3.
  3. Pecora Corporation; 864, 895 or 898.
- B. **S2** - Single Component, Non-Sag, Neutral-Curing Silicone: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Uses NT. Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Dow Corning Corporation; 790
  2. Pecora Corporation; 301NS, 311NS.
  3. Tremco, Inc.; Spectrem 1.
- C. **S3** - Single Component, Non-Sag, Neutral-Curing Silicone: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Uses NT. Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Dow Corning Corporation; 791, 795 or 995.

2. Pecora Corporation; 864, 895 or 898.
  3. Tremco, Inc.; Spectrem 2, Proglaze SSG.
- D. **S-4** - Single Component, Field-Tintable, Non-Sag, Neutral-Curing Silicone: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Uses NT. Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
- a. Pecora Corporation; 890 FTS.
  - b. Tremco, Inc.; Spectrem 4TS.
- E. **S5** - Mildew-resistant, Single Component, Acid-Curing Silicone: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, uses NT. Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. BASF Building Systems; Omniplus
  2. Dow Corning Corporation; 786 Mildew Resistant.
  3. Tremco, Inc.; Tremsil 200 Sanitary.
- 2.4 LATEX SEALANT TYPES – For Interior Use Only
- A. **L1** – Acrylic Latex or Siliconized Acrylic Latex, ASTM C834, Type OP, Grade NF. Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. BASF Building Systems; Sonolac.
  2. Pecora Corporation; AC-20+.
  3. Tremco, Inc.; Tremflex 834.
- B. **L2** - Acoustical Joint Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints: ASTM C1311 Manufacturer's standard Non-sag, paintable, no staining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E90. Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Tremco, Inc.; Acoustical Sealant.
  2. Pecora Corporation; AC-20 FTR, AIS-919.
  3. USG Corporation; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.
- 2.5 SOLVENT-RELEASE-CURING-JOINT SEALANTS:
- A. **B1** - Butyl-Rubber-Based Joint Sealant: ASTM C 1311. Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following.
1. Tremco, Inc.; Tremco Butyl Sealant.
  2. Bostik, Inc.; Chem-Calk 300.

3. Pecora Corporation; BC-158.

## 2.6 PREFORMED JOINT SEALANTS – For exterior or interior applications per manufacturer's standards.

- A. **PF1** - Preformed Silicone Joint Sealants: Manufacturer's standard sealant consisting of procured low-modulus silicone extrusion, in sizes to fit joint widths indicated, combined with a neutral-curing silicone sealant for bonding extrusions to substrates. Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Dow Corning Corporation; 123 Silicone Seal
2. Pecora Corporation; Sil-Span
3. Tremco, Inc.; Simple Seal.

- B. **PF2** - Preformed Foam Joint Sealant: Manufacturer's standard preformed, precompressed, open-cell foam sealant manufactured from urethane foam with minimum density of 10 lb/cu.ft. (160 kg/cu.m) and impregnated with a nondrying, water-repellent agent. Factory produce in precompressed sizes in roll or stick form to fit joint widths indicated; coated on one side with a pressure-sensitive adhesive and covered with protective wrapping. Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Tremco, Inc.; illbruk illmod 600.
2. EMSEAL Joint Systems, Ltd.; Emseal 25V.
3. School International, Inc.; Sealtite, Sealtite 50N.

## 2.7 JOINT SEALANT BACKING

- A. General: Provide sealant backings of material that are nonstaining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASATM C 1330, of type indicated below and size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance, paired to the sealant type. List the type on the Sealant Schedule.

1. **Type C:** Closed-cell material with a surface skin.
2. **Type O:** Open-cell material.
  - a. Bostik, Inc.
  - b. Pecora Corporation
  - c. Tremco, Inc.



## 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant back materials, free of oil residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

## 2.9 EXISTING WORK

- A. Mechanically remove existing sealant.
- B. Clean joint surfaces of residual sealant and other contaminants capable of affecting sealant bond to joint surface.
- C. Allow joint surfaces to dry before installing new sealants.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
  - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
  - 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining from

above cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint surfaces include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Concrete.
  - b. Masonry.
  - c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
  - d. Exterior insulation and finish systems.
3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
  4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous surfaces include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Metal.
    - b. Glass.
    - c. Porcelain enamel.
    - d. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install sealant backings of type indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
  2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
  3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.

- E. Install sealants using proven techniques to comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
  2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
  3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
  2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
  3. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C 1193, unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Provide flush joint profile where indicated per Figure 8B in ASTM C1193.
  5. Provide recessed joint configuration of recess depth and at locations indicated per Figure 8C in ASTM C 1193.
    - a. Use masking tape to protect surfaces adjacent to recessed tooled joints.
- G. Installation of Preformed Silicone-Sealant System: Comply with the following requirements:
1. Apply masking tape to each side of joint, outside of area to be covered by sealant system.
  2. Apply silicone sealant to each side of joint to produce a bead of size complying with preformed silicone-sealant system manufacturer's written instructions and covering a bonding area of not less than 3/8 inch (10 mm). Hold edge of sealant bead ¼ inch (6 mm) inside masking tape.
  3. Within 10 minutes of sealant application, press silicone extrusion into sealant to wet extrusion and substrate. Use a roller to apply consistent pressure and ensure uniform contact between sealant and both extrusion and substrate.
  4. Complete installation of sealant system in horizontal joints before installing in vertical joints. Lap vertical joints over horizontal joints. At ends of joints, cut silicone extrusion with a razor knife.
- H. Installation of Preformed Foam Sealants: Install each length of sealant immediately after removing protective wrapping. Do not pull or stretch material. Produce seal continuity at ends, turns, and intersections of joints. For applications at low ambient temperatures, apply heat to sealant in compliance with sealant manufacturer's written instructions.
- I. Acoustical Sealant Installation: At sound-rated assemblies and elsewhere as indicated, seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C 919 and with manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

### 3.6 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

Sealant types should be selected from the available listed products in Part 2 of this specification section. These sealants shall be indicated on the submittal schedule, using the same reference designation as indicated in Part 1.3.A. of this specification section.

#### A. Exterior or Interior Sealant Joints

##### 1. Applications:

- a. Control and expansion joints in cast-in-place concrete.
- b. Joints between [architectural] [structural] precast concrete units.
- c. Control and expansion joints in unit masonry.
- d. Control and expansion joints in stone masonry.
- e. Butt joints between metal panels.
- f. Joints between different materials listed above.
- g. Perimeter joints between materials listed above and frames of doors, windows, storefronts, louvers and similar openings.
- h. Control and expansion joints in soffits and overhead surfaces.

- 2. Other exterior joints in vertical surfaces and non-traffic horizontal surfaces for which no other sealant is specified

#### B. Interior Food Contact Sealant Joints.

##### 1. Applications:

- a. Joints in kitchen counter tops and work surfaces.
- b. Joints between food service equipment and surrounding construction.
- c. Other interior joints where incidental food contact may occur.

#### C. Interior Sanitary Sealant Joints.

1. Applications:

- a. Joints in toilet room and bathroom counter tops.
- b. Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjacent materials.
- c. Joints between locker room lockers and adjacent materials.
- d. Joints between food service equipment and surrounding construction.
- e. Other interior joints in wet areas where needed to limit mold and mildew growth.

D. Immersed Sealant Joints.

1. Applications:

- a. Joints in fountains and water features.
- b. Joints in swimming pools.
- c. Joints in vertical and horizontal surfaces of other potable water storage structures.

E. Metal Lap and Bedding Sealant Joints.

1. Applications:

- a. Concealed lap and hook joints in sheet metal flashing and trim.
- b. Bedding joints under metal thresholds and saddles.
- c. Bedding joints between sheet metal flashing and other materials.

F. Preformed Joint Sealants:

1. Applications:

- a. Control and expansion joints in cast-in-place concrete.
- b. Joints between [architectural] [structural] precast concrete units.
- c. Control and expansion joints in unit masonry.
- d. Control and expansion joints in stone masonry.
- e. Butt joints between metal panels.
- f. Joints between different materials listed above.
- g. Perimeter joints between materials listed above and frames of doors, windows, storefronts, louvers and similar openings.
- h. Control and expansion joints in soffits and overhead surfaces.
- i. Other exterior joints in vertical surfaces and non-traffic horizontal surfaces for which no other sealant is specified.
- j. Joints between EIFS and other materials.
- k.

END OF SECTION 079200

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 081113 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes hollow metal doors and frames.
- B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
  - 1. Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry" for building anchors into and grouting frames in masonry construction.
  - 2. Division 8 Section "Flush Wood Doors" for solid-core wood doors installed in steel frames.
  - 3. Division 8 Section "Door Hardware" for door hardware and weatherstripping.
  - 4. Division 8 Section "Glazing" for glass in steel doors and sidelights.
  - 5. Division 9 Section "Gypsum Board Assemblies" for spot grouting frames in gypsum board partitions.
  - 6. Division 9 Section "Painting" for field painting primed doors and frames.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, hardware reinforcements, profiles, anchors, fire-resistance rating, and finishes.
- B. Door hardware supplier is to furnish templates, template reference number and/or physical hardware to the steel door and frame supplier in order to prepare the doors and frames to receive the finish hardware items.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include the following:
  - 1. Elevations of each door design.
  - 2. Details of doors, including vertical and horizontal edge details and metal thicknesses.
  - 3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
  - 4. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
  - 5. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
  - 6. Details of accessories.
  - 7. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.
  - 8. Details of conduit and preparations for power, signal, and control systems.

D. Samples for Verification:

1. Samples are only required by request of the architect and for manufactures that are not current members of the Steel Door Institute.

E. Informational Submittals:

1. LEED Documentation: Submit manufacturer's environmental documentation and applicable sustainability program credits that are available to contribute towards a LEED rated project certification.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver hollow metal work palletized, wrapped, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project site storage. Do not use non-vented plastic.
- B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.
- C. Store hollow metal work under cover at Project site. Place in stacks of five units maximum in a vertical position with heads up, spaced by blocking, on minimum 4-inch high wood blocking. Do not store in a manner that traps excess humidity.
  1. Provide minimum 1/4-inch space between each stacked door to permit air circulation. Door and frames to be stacked in a vertical upright position.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before fabrication.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for hollow metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- B. Warranty includes installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.



## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. CECO Door Products.
  - 2. Curries Company.
  - 3. Steelcraft.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
- B. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; with minimum G60 (Z180) or A60 (ZF180) metallic coating.
- C. Frame Anchors: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; with minimum G60 (Z180) or A60 (ZF180) metallic coating.

### 2.3 STANDARD HOLLOW METAL DOORS

- A. General: Provide 1-3/4 inch doors of design indicated, not less than thickness indicated; fabricated with smooth surfaces, without visible joints or seams on exposed faces unless otherwise indicated. Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8.
- B. Exterior Doors: Face sheets fabricated of commercial quality hot-dipped zinc coated steel that complies with ASTM A 653/A 653M, Coating Designation A60. Provide doors complying with requirements indicated below by referencing ANSI/SDI A250.8 for level and model and ANSI/SDI A250.4 for physical performance level:
  - 1. Design: Flush panel or as indicated on drawings.
  - 2. Core Construction: Manufacturer's standard kraft-paper honeycomb, polystyrene, polyurethane, mineral core, or vertical steel-stiffener core.
    - a. Standard Vertical Steel-Stiffener Core: Minimum 22 gauge steel-stiffeners at 6 inches on-center construction attached by spot welds spaced not more than 5" on centers. Spaces between stiffeners filled with fiberglass insulation (minimum density 0.8#/cubic ft.).
    - b. Fire Door Core: As required to provide fire-protection and temperature-rise ratings indicated.
  - 3. Level/Model: Level 3 and Physical Performance Level A (Extra Heavy Duty), Minimum 16 gauge (0.053-inch - 1.3-mm) thick steel, Model 2.

4. Vertical Edges: Vertical edges to have the face sheets joined by a continuous weld extending the full height of the door. Welds are to be ground, filled and dressed smooth. Beveled Lock Edge, 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3 mm in 50 mm).
  5. Top and Bottom Edges: Reinforce tops and bottoms of doors with a continuous steel channel not less than 16 gauge, extending the full width of the door and welded to the face sheet. Doors with an inverted top channel to include a steel closure channel, screw attached, with the web of the channel flush with the face sheets of the door. Plastic or composite channel fillers are not acceptable.
  6. Hinge Reinforcement: Minimum 7 gauge (3/16") plate 1-1/4" x 9" or minimum 14 gauge continuous channel with pierced holes, drilled and tapped.
  7. Hardware Reinforcements: Fabricate according to ANSI/SDI A250.6 with reinforcing plates from same material as door face sheets.
- C. Interior Doors: Face sheets fabricated of commercial quality cold rolled steel that complies with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M. Provide doors complying with requirements indicated below by referencing ANSI/SDI A250.8 for level and model and ANSI/SDI A250.4 for physical performance level:
1. Design: Flush panel or as indicated on drawings.
  2. Core Construction: Manufacturer's standard kraft-paper honeycomb, or one-piece polystyrene core, securely bonded to both faces.
    - a. Fire Door Core: As required to provide fire-protection and temperature-rise ratings indicated.
  3. Level/Model: Level 2 and Physical Performance Level B (Heavy Duty), Minimum 18 gauge (0.042-inch - 1.0-mm) thick steel, Model 2.
  4. Vertical Edges: Vertical edges to have the face sheets joined by a continuous weld extending the full height of the door. Welds are to be ground, filled and dressed smooth. Beveled Lock Edge, 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3 mm in 50 mm).
  5. Top and Bottom Edges: Reinforce tops and bottoms of doors with a continuous steel channel not less than 16 gauge, extending the full width of the door and welded to the face sheet. Doors with an inverted top channel to include a steel closure channel, screw attached, with the web of the channel flush with the face sheets of the door. Plastic or composite channel fillers are not acceptable.
  6. Hinge Reinforcement: Minimum 7 gauge (3/16") plate 1-1/4" x 9" or minimum 14 gauge continuous channel with pierced holes, drilled and tapped.
  7. Hardware Reinforcements: Fabricate according to ANSI/SDI A250.6 with reinforcing plates from same material as door face sheets.
- D. Manufacturers Basis of Design:
1. Curries Company (CU): 707 Series.
  2. Curries Company (CU) - Steel-Stiffened: 747 Series.

## 2.4 STANDARD HOLLOW METAL FRAMES

- A. General: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8 and with details indicated for type and profile.

- B. Exterior Masonry Frames: Fabricated of hot-dipped zinc coated steel that complies with ASTM A 653/A 653M, Coating Designation A60.
1. Fabricate frames with mitered or coped corners.
  2. Fabricate frames, with the exception of knock down types, with "closed and tight" miter seams continuously welded on face, finished smooth with no visible seam unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Frames for Level 3 Steel Doors (up to 48 inches in width): Minimum 14 gauge (0.067-inch -1.7-mm) thick steel sheet.
  4. Manufacturers Basis of Design:
    - a. Curries Company (CU) - M Series.
- C. Interior Frames: Fabricated from cold-rolled steel sheet that complies with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
1. Fabricate frames with mitered or coped corners.
  2. Fabricate frames, with the exception of slip-on drywall types, with "closed and tight" miter seams continuously welded on face, finished smooth with no visible seam unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Frames for Level 2 Steel Doors: Minimum 16 gauge (0.053-inch -1.3-mm) thick steel sheet.
  4. Frames for Wood Doors: Minimum 16 gauge (0.053-inch-1.3-mm-) thick steel sheet.
  5. Frames for Borrowed Lights: Minimum 16 gauge (0.053-inch-1.3-mm-) thick steel sheet.
  6. Manufacturers Basis of Design:
    - a. Curries Company (CU) – M Series.
- D. Fire rated frames: Fabricate frames in accordance with NFPA 80, listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated.
- E. Hardware Reinforcement: Fabricate according to ANSI/SDI A250.6 Table 4 with reinforcement plates from same material as frames.

## 2.5 FRAME ANCHORS

- A. Jamb Anchors:
1. Masonry Type: Adjustable strap-and-stirrup or T-shaped anchors to suit frame size, formed from A60 metallic coated material, not less than 0.042 inch thick, with corrugated or perforated straps not less than 2 inches wide by 10 inches long; or wire anchors not less than 0.177 inch thick.
  2. Stud Wall Type: Designed to engage stud and not less than 0.042 inch thick.
- B. Floor Anchors: Floor anchors to be provided at each jamb, formed from A60 metallic coated material, not less than 0.042 inches thick.
- C. Mortar Guards: Formed from same material as frames, not less than 0.016 inches thick.

## 2.6 HOLLOW METAL PANELS

- A. Provide hollow metal panels of same materials, construction, and finish as specified for adjoining hollow metal work.

## 2.7 LOUVERS

- A. Metal Louvers: Door manufacturer's standard metal louvers unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Blade Type: Vision proof inverted V or inverted Y.
  - 2. Metal and Finish: Galvanized steel, 0.040 inch thick, factory primed for paint finish with baked enamel or powder coated finish. Match pre-finished door paint color where applicable.
- B. Louvers for Fire Rated Doors: Metal louvers with fusible link and closing device, listed and labeled for use in doors with fire protection rating of 1-1/2 hours and less.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide door manufacturers standard louver to meet rating indicated.
  - 2. Metal and Finish: Galvanized steel, 0.040 inch thick, factory primed for paint finish with baked enamel or powder coated finish. Match pre-finished door paint color where applicable.

## 2.8 LIGHT OPENINGS AND GLAZING

- A. Stops and Moldings: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with butted or mitered hairline joints at fabricators shop. Fixed and removable stops to allow multiple glazed lites each to be removed independently. Coordinate frame rabbet widths between fixed and removable stops with the type of glazing and installation indicated.
- B. Moldings for Glazed Lites in Doors and Loose Stops for Glazed Lites in Frames: Minimum 20 gauge thick, fabricated from same material as door face sheet in which they are installed.
- C. Fixed Frame Moldings: Formed integral with hollow metal frames, a minimum of 5/8 inch (16 mm) high unless otherwise indicated. Provide fixed frame moldings and stops on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames
- D. Preformed Metal Frames for Light Openings: Manufacturer's standard frame formed of 0.048-inch-thick, cold rolled steel sheet; with baked enamel or powder coated finish; and approved for use in doors of fire protection rating indicated. Match pre-finished door paint color where applicable.
- E. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing" and with the hollow metal door manufacturer's written instructions.

## 2.9 ACCESSORIES

- A. Mullions and Transom Bars: Join to adjacent members by welding or rigid mechanical anchors.
- B. Grout Guards: Formed from same material as frames, not less than 0.016 inches thick.

## 2.10 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate hollow metal work to be rigid and free of defects, warp, or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles, with minimum radius for thickness of metal. Where practical, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. When shipping limitations so dictate, frames for large openings are to be fabricated in sections for splicing or splining in the field by others.
- B. Tolerances: Fabricate hollow metal work to tolerances indicated in ANSI/SDI A250.8.
- C. Hollow Metal Doors:
  - 1. Exterior Doors: Provide optional weep-hole openings in bottom of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape where specified.
  - 2. Glazed Lites: Factory cut openings in doors with applied trim or kits to fit. Factory install glazing where indicated.
  - 3. Louvers: Factory cut openings in door and install louvers into prepared openings where indicated.
  - 4. Astragals: Provide overlapping astragals as noted in door hardware sets in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware" on one leaf of pairs of doors where required by NFPA 80 for fire-performance rating or where indicated. Extend minimum 3/4 inch beyond edge of door on which astragal is mounted.
  - 5. Continuous Hinge Reinforcement: Provide welded continuous 12 gauge strap for continuous hinges specified in hardware sets in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".
- D. Hollow Metal Frames:
  - 1. Shipping Limitations: Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of same thickness metal as frames.
  - 2. Welded Frames: Weld flush face joints continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make smooth, flush, and invisible. Welded frames are to be provided with two steel spreaders temporarily attached to the bottom of both jambs to serve as a brace during shipping and handling. Spreader bars are for bracing only and are not to be used to size the frame opening.
  - 3. Sidelight and Transom Bar Frames: Provide closed tubular members with no visible face seams or joints, fabricated from same material as door frame. Fasten members at crossings and to jambs by butt welding.
  - 4. Equal Rabbet Frames: Provide frames with equal rabbet dimensions unless glazing and removable stops require wider dimensions on glass side of frame.
  - 5. High Frequency Hinge Reinforcement: Provide high frequency hinge reinforcements at door openings 48-inches and wider with mortise butt type hinges at top hinge locations.

6. Continuous Hinge Reinforcement: Provide welded continuous 12 gauge straps for continuous hinges specified in hardware sets in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".
7. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated for removable stops, provide security screws at exterior locations.
8. Mortar Guards: Provide guard boxes at back of hardware mortises in frames at all hinges and strike preps regardless of grouting requirements.
9. Electrical Knock Out Boxes: Factory weld 18 gauge electrical knock out boxes to frame for electrical hardware preps; including but not limited to, electric through wire transfer hardware, electrical raceways and wiring harnesses, door position switches, electric strikes, magnetic locks, and jamb mounted card readers as specified in hardware sets in Division 08 Sections "Door Hardware" and "Access Control Hardware".
  - a. Provide electrical knock out boxes with a dual 1/2-inch and 3/4-inch knockouts.
  - b. Conduit to be coordinated and installed in the field (Division 26) from middle hinge box and strike box to door position box.
  - c. Electrical knock out boxes to comply with NFPA requirements and fit electrical door hardware as specified in hardware sets in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".
  - d. Electrical knock out boxes for continuous hinges should be located in the center of the vertical dimension on the hinge jamb.
10. Floor Anchors: Weld anchors to bottom of jambs and mullions with at least four spot welds per anchor.
11. Jamb Anchors: Provide number and spacing of anchors as follows:
  - a. Masonry Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches o.c. and as follows:
    - 1) Two anchors per jamb up to 60 inches high.
    - 2) Three anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches high.
    - 3) Four anchors per jamb from 90 to 120 inches high.
    - 4) Four anchors per jamb plus 1 additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches or fraction thereof above 120 inches high.
  - b. Stud Wall Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches o.c. and as follows:
    - 1) Three anchors per jamb up to 60 inches high.
    - 2) Four anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches high.
    - 3) Five anchors per jamb from 90 to 96 inches high.
    - 4) Five anchors per jamb plus 1 additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches or fraction thereof above 96 inches high.
    - 5) Two anchors per head for frames above 42 inches wide and mounted in metal stud partitions.
12. Door Silencers: Except on weatherstripped or gasketed doors, drill stops to receive door silencers. Silencers to be supplied by frame manufacturer regardless if specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".

13. Bituminous Coating: Where frames are fully grouted with an approved Portland Cement based grout or mortar, coat inside of frame throat with a water based bituminous or asphaltic emulsion coating to a minimum thickness of 3 mils DFT, tested in accordance with UL 10C and applied to the frame under a 3rd party independent follow-up service procedure.
- E. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow metal work to receive template mortised hardware; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping according to the Door Hardware Schedule and templates furnished as specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware."
  1. Locate hardware as indicated, or if not indicated, according to ANSI/SDI A250.8.
  2. Reinforce doors and frames to receive non-template, mortised and surface mounted door hardware.
  3. Comply with applicable requirements in ANSI/SDI A250.6 and ANSI/DHI A115 Series specifications for preparation of hollow metal work for hardware.
  4. Coordinate locations of conduit and wiring boxes for electrical connections with Division 26 Sections.

## 2.11 STEEL FINISHES

- A. Prime Finishes: Doors and frames to be cleaned, and chemically treated to insure maximum finish paint adhesion. Surfaces of the door and frame exposed to view to receive a factory applied coat of rust inhibiting shop primer.
  1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead and chromate free primer complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10 acceptance criteria; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; and compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings.
- B. Factory Pre-Finishes: Factory apply electrostatic paint finish to doors and frames in accordance with ANSI A250.3 test procedure acceptance criteria for steel doors and frames with factory applied finished coatings.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. General Contractor to verify the accuracy of dimensions given to the steel door and frame manufacturer for existing openings or existing frames (strike height, hinge spacing, hinge back set, etc.).
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove welded in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
- B. Prior to installation, adjust and securely brace welded hollow metal frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumbness.
- C. Tolerances shall comply with SDI-117 "Manufacturing Tolerances Standard Steel Doors and Frames."
- D. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive non-template, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install hollow metal work plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place; comply with Drawings and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Hollow Metal Frames: Install hollow metal frames of size and profile indicated. Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.11 and NFPA 80 at fire rated openings.
  - 1. Set frames accurately in position, plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete and frames properly set and secured, remove temporary braces, leaving surfaces smooth and undamaged. Shim as necessary to comply with installation tolerances.
  - 2. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor, and secure with post-installed expansion anchors.
  - 3. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with mortar.
  - 4. Grout Requirements: Do not grout head of frames unless reinforcing has been installed in head of frame. Do not grout vertical or horizontal closed mullion members.
- C. Hollow Metal Doors: Fit hollow metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below. Shim as necessary.
  - 1. Non-Fire-Rated Standard Steel Doors:
    - a. Jambs and Head: 1/8 inch plus or minus 1/16 inch.
    - b. Between Edges of Pairs of Doors: 1/8 inch plus or minus 1/16 inch.
    - c. Between Bottom of Door and Top of Threshold: Maximum 3/8 inch.
    - d. Between Bottom of Door and Top of Finish Floor (No Threshold): Maximum 3/4 inch.
  - 2. Fire-Rated Doors: Install doors with clearances according to NFPA 80.



- D. Field Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing" and with hollow metal manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Final Adjustments: Check and readjust operating hardware items immediately before final inspection. Leave work in complete and proper operating condition. Remove and replace defective work, including hollow metal work that is warped, bowed, or otherwise unacceptable.
- B. Remove grout and other bonding material from hollow metal work immediately after installation.
- C. Prime-Coat and Painted Finish Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat, or painted finishes, and apply touchup of compatible air drying, rust-inhibitive primer, zinc rich primer (exterior and galvanized openings) or finish paint.

END OF SECTION 081113

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 082110 - FLUSH WOOD DOORS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Solid-core doors with wood-veneer faces.
  - 2. Factory finishing flush wood doors.
  - 3. Factory fitting flush wood doors to frames and factory machining for hardware.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 8 Section "Door Hardware" for hardware requirements.
  - 2. Division 8 Section "Glazing" for glass view panels in flush wood doors.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of door. Include details of core and edge construction and trim for openings. Include factory-finishing specifications.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each kind of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; location and extent of hardware blocking; and other pertinent data.
  - 1. Indicate dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
  - 2. Indicate dimensions and locations of cutouts.
  - 3. Indicate doors to be factory finished and finish requirements.
  - 4. Indicate fire ratings for fire doors.
- C. Door Schedule: Use **SAME** reference designations indicated on Drawings in preparing schedule for doors and frames.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: Color charts consisting of actual materials in small sections for the following:
  - 1. Faces of Factory-Finished Doors: Show the full range of colors available for stained finishes.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain flush wood doors through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Quality Standard: Comply with WDMA Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards Illustrated.
  - 1. Provide WDMA Quality Certification Labels or a WDMA letter of licensing for Project indicating that doors comply with requirements of grades specified.
  - 2. When requested, provide evidence that the installer has successful experience completing projects of similar scope and with products as specified herein.
- C. Fire-Rated Wood Doors: Doors complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 252.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Package doors individually in plastic bags.
- C. Mark each door on top and bottom rail with opening number used on Shop Drawings.

#### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and will maintain temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

#### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by manufacturer, Installer, and Contractor, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that are defective in materials or workmanship, have warped (bow, cup, or twist), or show telegraphing of core construction in face veneers exceeding 0.01 inch in a 3-inch span.
  - 1. Warranty shall also include installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.
  - 2. Warranty shall be in effect during the following period of time from date of Substantial Completion:
    - a. Solid-Core Interior Doors: Life of installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, only the following manufacturers' products may be incorporated into the Work:
  - 1. Flush Wood Doors:
    - a. Masonite Architectural – Aspiro Series (Basis of Design)
    - b. Lambton
    - c. VT Industries/Eggers
    - d. Oshkosh
- B. Manufacturers other than those listed above will not be accepted – no substitutions will be allowed.

### 2.2 DOOR CONSTRUCTION, GENERAL

- A. Doors for Transparent Finish:
  - 1. Grade: Premium, with Grade A faces.
  - 2. Species and Cut: White Maple, plain sliced.
  - 3. Veneer flitch match: Book match, running match.
  - 4. Pair Match: Provide for doors hung in same opening or separated only by mullions.
  - 5. Stiles: Same species as faces or a compatible species.
  - 6. Barber poled veneer will not be allowed. Doors with this will have to be replaced.

### 2.3 SOLID-CORE DOORS

- A. Particleboard Cores: Comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade LD-2, 32 lb. density.
  - 2. Blocking: Provide solid wood blocking in particleboard-core doors for installation of hardware.
- B. Interior Veneer-Faced Doors:
  - 1. Core: Particleboard.
  - 2. Construction: Five plies with stiles and rails bonded to core, then entire unit abrasive planed and then veneered or laminated in a one-step hot press method.
- C. Fire-Rated Doors:
  - 1. Construction: Construction and core specified above for type of face indicated or manufacturer's standard mineral-core construction as needed to provide fire rating indicated.

2. Blocking: For mineral-core doors, provide composite blocking with improved screw-holding capability approved for use in doors of fire ratings indicated for installation of hardware.
  - a. Doors with exit devices provide top rail, bottom rail and 5 x 10 right and left lock blocks.
3. Edge Construction: At hinge stiles, provide manufacturer's standard laminated-edge construction with improved screw-holding capability and split resistance and with outer stile matching face veneer.
4. Pairs: Furnish formed-steel edges and astragals with intumescent seals for pairs of fire-rated doors, unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Finish steel edges and astragals with baked enamel.
5. Pairs with Surface Mounted Panic Devices: Provide fire-rated pairs with fire-retardant stiles matching face veneer that are labeled and listed for kinds of applications indicated without formed-steel edges and astragals. Provide stiles with concealed intumescent seals.
6. Intumescent Seals For Fire Rated Doors: Category "A" doors with concealed intumescent.

## 2.4 LIGHT FRAMES

### A. Wood Beads for Light Openings in Wood Doors:

1. Wood Species: Same species as door faces.
2. Profile: Flush rectangular beads.
3. At 20-minute, fire-rated, wood-core doors, provide wood beads and metal glazing clips approved for such use.

### B. Wood-Veneered Beads for Light Openings in Fire Doors: Manufacturer's standard wood-veneered noncombustible beads matching veneer species of door faces and approved for use in doors of fire rating indicated. Include concealed metal glazing clips where required for opening size and fire rating indicated.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

### A. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated, with the following uniform clearances and bevels, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting. Comply with requirements in NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.

- B. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, DHI A115-W series standards, and hardware templates.
  - 1. Coordinate measurements of hardware mortises in metal frames to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.
  - 2. Metal Astragals: Premachine astragals and formed-steel edges for hardware for pairs of fire-rated doors.
- C. Openings: Cut and trim openings through doors to comply with applicable requirements of referenced standards for kind(s) of door(s) required.
  - 1. Light Openings: Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.

## 2.6 FACTORY FINISHING

- A. General: Comply with WDMA Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards Illustrated for factory finishing.
- B. Finish doors at factory.
- C. Transparent Finish:
  - 1. Grade: Premium.
  - 2. Finish: WDMA System TR-6 catalyzed polyurethane, or UV cured polyurethane.
  - 3. Staining: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
  - 4. Effect: Open-grain finish.
  - 5. Sheen: Satin.
  - 6. Match color of existing doors to remain.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine doors and installed door frames before hanging doors.
  - 1. Verify that frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with level heads and plumb jambs.
  - 2. Reject doors with defects and replace at no cost to Owner. "Barber poled" veneer will not be accepted by the Owner and will be considered a defect.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Hardware: For installation, see Division 8 Section "Door Hardware."
- B. Manufacturer's Written Instructions: Install doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, referenced quality standard, and as indicated.
  - 1. Install fire-rated doors in corresponding fire-rated frames according to NFPA 80.
- C. Factory-Fitted Doors: Align in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.
- D. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Operation: Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.
- B. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

END OF SECTION 082110



## SECTION 084113 - ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Exterior and interior storefront framing.
  - 2. Exterior and interior manual-swing entrance doors.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 08 Section "Glazing"
  - 2. Division 08 Section "Fire Rated Glazing"
  - 3. Division 08 Section "Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls"
  - 4. Division 08 Section "Door Hardware"

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts. Include plans, elevations, sections, full-size details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Include details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the assembly to the exterior.
  - 2. Include full-size isometric details of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, showing the following:

- a. Joinery, including concealed welds.
  - b. Anchorage.
  - c. Expansion provisions.
  - d. Glazing.
  - e. Flashing and drainage.
- 3. Show connection to and continuity with adjacent thermal, weather, air, and vapor barriers.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
- E. Entrance Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under supervision of supplier, detailing fabrication and assembly of entrance door hardware, as well as procedures and diagrams. Coordinate final entrance door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of entrance door hardware. Refer to Division 8 Section "Door Hardware"
- F. Delegated-Design Submittal: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Energy Performance Certificates: For glazed aluminum curtain walls, accessories, and components from manufacturer.
  - 1. Basis for Certification: NFRC-certified energy performance values for each glazed aluminum curtain wall.
- C. Product Test Reports: For glazed aluminum curtain walls, for tests performed by [a qualified testing agency].
- D. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.
  - 1. Do not change intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If changes are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
    - b. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
    - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
    - d. Water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas.
    - e. Failure of operating components.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## 1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS / SITE CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual measurements/openings by field measurements before fabrication; show recorded measurements on shop drawings. Coordinate field measurements, fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid construction delays.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts.
- B. General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by testing of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts representing those indicated for this

Project without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.

1. Aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts shall withstand movements of supporting structure including, but not limited to, story drift, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
2. Failure also includes the following:
  - a. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
  - b. Glass breakage.
  - c. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
  - d. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
  - e. Failure of operating units.

C. Structural Loads:

1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.

D. Air Infiltration: Completed storefront systems shall have 0.06 CFM/FT<sup>2</sup> (1.10 m<sup>3</sup>/h·m<sup>2</sup>) maximum allowable infiltration when tested in accordance with ASTM E 283 at differential static pressure of 6.24 PSF (299 Pa).

E. Water Infiltration: No uncontrolled water when tested in accordance with ASTM E 331 at test pressure differential of: 10 PSF (479 Pa) (or when required, field tested in accordance with AAMA 503). Fastener Heads must be seated and sealed against Sill Flashing on any fasteners that penetrate through the Sill Flashing.

F. Deflection: Maximum allowable deflection in any member when tested in accordance with ASTM E 330 with allowable stress in accordance with AA Specifications for Aluminum Structures.

1. Without Horizontals: L/175 maximum.
2. With Horizontals: L/175 or L/240 + 1/4" (6.4mm) for spans greater than 13'-6" (4.1m) but less than 40'-0" (12.2m).

G. Energy Performance: Certify and label energy performance according to NFRC as follows:

1. Thermal Movement: Provide for thermal movement caused by 0 degrees F. low range and 120 degrees F. high range ambient temperatures, without causing buckling stresses on glass, joint seal failure, undue stress on structural elements, damaging loads on fasteners, reduction of performance, or detrimental effects.
2. Thermal Performance: When tested in accordance with AAMA 507, AAMA 1503 and NFRC 100:
  - a. Condensation Resistance Factor (CRF<sub>f</sub>): A minimum of 60.
  - b. Thermal Transmittance -Factor: 0.45 BTU/HR/FT<sup>2</sup>/°F or less.

- H. Noise Reduction: Test according to ASTM E 90, with ratings determined by ASTM E 1332, as follows.

1. Outdoor-Indoor Transmission Class: Minimum 30.

## 2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. EFCO Corporation.
  2. Kawneer North America.
  3. Oldcastle, Inc.
  4. Wausau Window and Wall Systems.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain all components of curtain wall system, including framing venting windows, entrances and accessories, from single manufacturer.
- C. Basis-of-Design: YKK AP “YES 45 TU Center Set” for insulated glazing and “YES 45 FS” for interior monolithic glazing”.
- D. Exterior Storefront System Description: Center set, exterior flush glazed; jambs and vertical mullions continuous; head, sill, intermediate horizontal attached by shear block attachment.
1. Thermal Barrier: Provide continuous thermal barrier by means of a poured and debridged pocket consisting of a two-part, chemically curing high density polyurethane which is bonded to the aluminum. Systems employing non-structural thermal barriers are not acceptable.
- E. Interior Storefront System Description: Center rabbet, exterior flush glazed; jambs and vertical mullions continuous; head, sill, intermediate horizontal attached by shear block attachment.

## 2.3 FRAMING

- A. Exterior Framing Members: Manufacturer's extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
1. Construction: Shear Block, Thermally broken.
  2. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
  3. Glazing Plane: Exterior
  4. Face Dimension: 2"
  5. Depth: 4 ½".
  6. Finish: Clear anodic finish.
  7. Glazing: 1-inch insulated glass.
- B. Interior Framing Members: Manufacturer's extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.

1. Glazing System: Shear Block
  2. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
  3. Glazing Plane: Center
  4. Face Dimension: 1 ¾"
  5. Depth: 4 ½".
  6. Finish: Clear anodic finish.
  7. Glazing: 1/4-inch tempered monolithic glass.
- C. Backer Plates: Manufacturer's standard, continuous backer plates for framing members, if not integral, where framing abuts adjacent construction.
- D. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- E. Materials:
1. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
    - a. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209. 5005-H14 Aluminum Alloy, 0.050" minimum thickness.
    - b. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221, 6063-T5 Aluminum Alloy.
    - c. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429/B 429M.
    - d. Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308/B 308M.
  2. Steel Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM, and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.
    - a. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
    - b. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
    - c. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.

## 2.4 ENTRANCE DOOR SYSTEMS

- A. Entrance Doors: Manufacturer's standard glazed entrance doors for manual-swing operation. Exterior Doors Basis of Design: YKK AP "50XT", Interior Doors Basis of Design: YKK AP "50D".
1. Door Construction: Extruded-aluminum tubular rail and stile members. Mechanically fasten corners with reinforcing brackets that are deeply penetrated and fillet welded or that incorporate concealed tie rods.
    - a. Exterior doors to receive 1" insulated glazing units.
    - b. Interior doors to receive ¼" glazing units.
    - c. Exterior Door Thermal Construction: High-performance and thermally broken plastic connectors separate aluminum members exposed to the exterior from members exposed to the interior.

2. Door Design:
  - a. Wide Stile: 5 inch side rails, 6-1/2 inch top and intermediate rail, and minimum 10 inch bottom rail.
  - b. Door Thickness: 2-3/8 inch thick for exterior doors and 1-3/4 inch for interior doors.
  - c. Provide door stiles of adequate width and depth to accommodate specified door hardware and devices.
3. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Square, snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and preformed gaskets.
  - a. Provide nonremovable glazing stops on outside of door.
4. Double Doors
  - a. Accommodate removable center lockable mullion for double doors. Refer to Division 08 Section Door Hardware.

## 2.5 ENTRANCE DOOR HARDWARE

- A. Entrance Door Hardware: As specified in Division 8 Section "Hardware".

## 2.6 GLAZING

- A. Glazing: As specified in Section 088000 "Glazing."

## 2.7 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners: Zinc plated steel concealed fasteners; Hardened aluminum alloys or AISI 300 series stainless steel exposed fasteners, countersunk, finish to match aluminum color.
- B. Anchors: Three-way adjustable anchors with minimum adjustment of 1 inch that accommodate fabrication and installation tolerances in material and finish compatible with adjoining materials and recommended by manufacturer.
  1. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 153/A 153M requirements.
- C. Sealant: System sealants selected by installer are to be permanently elastic, non-shrinking, non-migrating type recommended by sealant manufacturer for joint size, movement, and compatibility.
- D. Glazing: Setting blocks, edge blocks, and spacers in accordance with ASTM C 864, shore durometer hardness as recommended by manufacturer; Glazing gaskets in accordance with ASTM C 864.

- E. Concealed Flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials and end dams.
  - 1. 0.050 Aluminum Sill Flashing End Dams must have 3 point attachment.
- F. Sill flashing: Extruded aluminum sill flashing in size and dimensions noted on drawings. Finish to match aluminum curtain wall system.
- G. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos, formulated for 30-mil thickness per coat.

## 2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
- C. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
  - 1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
  - 2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
  - 3. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
  - 4. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
  - 5. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from exterior.
  - 6. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
- D. Fabricate components to resist water penetration as follows:
  - 1. Internal guttering system or other means to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within glazed aluminum curtain wall to exterior.
- E. Curtain-Wall Framing: Fabricate components for assembly using shear-block system.
- F. Factory-Assembled Frame Units:
  - 1. Construct joints only at intersection of aluminum members with hairline joints and sealed
  - 2. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
  - 3. Prepare surfaces that are in contact structural sealant according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to ensure compatibility and adhesion.
  - 4. Preparation includes, but is not limited to, cleaning and priming surfaces.
  - 5. Seal joints watertight in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
  - 6. Install glazing to comply with requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."



- G. Storefront Framing: Fabricate components for assembly using shear-block system.
- H. Entrance Door Frames: Reinforce as required to support loads imposed by door operation and for installing entrance door hardware.
  - 1. At exterior doors, provide compression weather stripping at fixed stops.
  - 2. At exterior double doors provide removable, lockable center mullion.
  - 3. At interior doors, provide silencers at stops to prevent metal-to-metal contact. Install three silencers on strike jamb of single-door frames and two silencers on head of frames for pairs of doors.
- I. Entrance Doors: Reinforce doors as required for installing entrance door hardware.
  - 1. At pairs of exterior doors, provide sliding-type weather stripping retained in adjustable strip and mortised into door edge.
  - 2. At exterior doors, provide weather sweeps applied to door bottoms.
- J. Entrance Door Hardware Installation: Factory install entrance door hardware to the greatest extent possible. Cut, drill, and tap for factory-installed entrance door hardware in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations before applying finishes.

## 2.9 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Anodized Finishing: Prepare aluminum surfaces for specified finish; apply shop finish in accordance with the following:
  - 1. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
    - a. Exposed Surfaces shall be free of scratches and other serious blemishes.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare surfaces that are in contact with structural sealant according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to ensure compatibility and adhesion. Preparation includes, but is not limited to, cleaning and priming surfaces.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

#### A. General:

1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Do not install damaged components.
3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
4. Shim and brace aluminum system before anchoring to structure.
5. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
6. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.
7. Seal perimeter and other joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.
8. Provide sill flashing at exterior storefront systems. Extend extruded flashing continuous with splice joints; set in continuous beads of sealant.

#### B. Metal Protection:

1. Where aluminum is in contact with dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with materials recommended by manufacturer for this purpose or by installing nonconductive spacers.
2. Where aluminum is in contact with concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.

#### C. Set continuous sill members and flashing in full sealant bed as specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" to produce weathertight installation.

#### D. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.

#### E. Install operable units level and plumb, securely anchored, and without distortion. Adjust weather-stripping contact and hardware movement to produce proper operation.

#### F. Install glazing as specified in Section 088000 "Glazing."

#### G. Install components to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within glazed aluminum curtain wall to exterior.

1. Verify curtain wall system allows water entering system to be collected in gutters and wept to the exterior. Verify weep holes are open, and metal joints are sealed in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

#### H. Install perimeter weatherseal sealant according to Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" and according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to produce weatherproof joints. Install joint filler behind sealant as recommended by sealant manufacturer.

#### I. Entrance Doors: Install doors to produce smooth operation and tight fit at contact points.

1. Exterior Doors: Install to produce weathertight enclosure and tight fit at weather stripping.

2. Entrance Door Hardware: Install non-factory installed entrance door hardware according to entrance door hardware manufacturers' written instructions using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.

### 3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Erection Tolerances: Install aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts to comply with the following maximum tolerances:
  1. Plumb: 1/8 inch in 10 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
  2. Level: 1/8 inch in 20 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
  3. Alignment:
    - a. Where surfaces abut in line or are separated by reveal or protruding element up to 1/2 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch.
    - b. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element from 1/2 to 1 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/8 inch.
    - c. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element of 1 inch wide or more, limit offset from true alignment to 1/4 inch.
  4. Location: Limit variation from plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet; 1/2 inch over total length.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjusting: Adjust operating items as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Cleaning: The General Contractor shall clean installed products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions prior to Owner's acceptance, and remove construction debris from project site. Legally dispose of debris.
- C. Protection: The General Contractor shall protect installed product's finish surfaces from damage during construction.

END OF SECTION 084113

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 084413 - GLAZED ALUMINUM CURTAIN WALLS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes glazed aluminum curtain walls and accessories.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 08 Section "Glazing"
  - 2. Division 08 Section "Aluminum Framed Entrances and Storefront"

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Sustainable Design Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data: For sealants, indicating VOC content.
  - 2. Laboratory Test Reports: For sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
- B. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- C. Shop Drawings: For glazed aluminum curtain walls. Include plans, elevations, sections, full-size details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Include details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the assembly to the exterior.
  - 2. Include full-size isometric details of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of glazed aluminum curtain walls, showing the following:
    - a. Joinery, including concealed welds.

- b. Anchorage.
  - c. Expansion provisions.
  - d. Glazing.
  - e. Flashing and drainage.
- 3. Show connection to and continuity with adjacent thermal, weather, air, and vapor barriers.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
- E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For glazed aluminum curtain walls, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Energy Performance Certificates: For glazed aluminum curtain walls, accessories, and components from manufacturer.
  - 1. Basis for Certification: NFRC-certified energy performance values for each glazed aluminum curtain wall.
- C. Product Test Reports: For glazed aluminum curtain walls, for tests performed by [a qualified testing agency.
- D. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For glazed aluminum curtain walls to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.
  - 1. Do not change intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If changes are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Assembly Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of glazed aluminum curtain wall that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
    - b. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
    - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
    - d. Water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas.
    - e. Failure of operating components.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## 1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS / SITE CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual measurements/openings by field measurements before fabrication; show recorded measurements on shop drawings. Coordinate field measurements, fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid construction delays.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design glazed aluminum curtain walls.
- B. General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by testing of glazed aluminum curtain walls representing those indicated for this Project without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
  - 1. Glazed aluminum curtain walls shall withstand movements of supporting structure including, but not limited to, story drift, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
    - a. Design system to accommodate movement of primary structure, including a structural deflection of 0.75-inch up and down.
  - 2. Failure also includes the following:
    - a. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
    - b. Glass breakage.
    - c. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
    - d. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
    - e. Failure of operating units.

C. Structural Loads:

1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Structural Drawings.
2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.

D. Deflection of Framing Members: At design wind pressure, as follows:

1. Deflection: Maximum allowable deflection in any member when tested in accordance with ASTM E 330 with allowable stress in accordance with AA Specifications for Aluminum Structures.
  - a. For spans up to 13'-6" : L/175 maximum.
  - b. For spans greater than 13'-6" but less than 40'-0": L/175 or L/240 + 1/4".
2. Cantilever Deflection: Where framing members overhang an anchor point, as follows:
  - a. Perpendicular to Plane of Wall: No greater than 1/240 of clear span plus 1/4-inch for spans greater than 11 feet 8-1/4 inches or 1/175 times span, for spans less than 11 feet 8-1/4 inches.

E. Air Infiltration: Test according to ASTM E 283 for infiltration as follows:

1. Air Infiltration: Completed curtain wall systems shall have 0.06 CFM/FT<sup>2</sup> (1.10 m<sup>3</sup>/h·m<sup>2</sup>) maximum allowable infiltration when tested in accordance with ASTM E 283 at differential static pressure of 6.24 PSF (299 Pa).

F. Water Infiltration: Test according to ASTM E 331 as follows:

1. No uncontrolled water on indoor face of any component when tested in accordance with ASTM E 331 at a static pressure of 15 PSF (718 Pa).
2. No uncontrolled water on indoor face of any component when tested in accordance with AAMA 501.1 at a dynamic pressure of 15 PSF (718 Pa).
3. Incidental Water Management: Head member shall be capable of directing condensation from the wall cavity above the curtain wall to the exterior of the system.

G. Energy Performance: Certify and label energy performance according to NFRC as follows:

1. Thermal Movement: Provide for thermal movement caused by 0 degrees F. low range and 120 degrees F. high range ambient temperatures, without causing buckling stresses on glass, joint seal failure, undue stress on structural elements, damaging loads on fasteners, reduction of performance, or detrimental effects.
2. Thermal Performance when tested in accordance with AAMA 1503 and AAMA 507:
  - a. Condensation Resistance Factor (CRF<sub>f</sub>): A minimum of 66.
  - b. Thermal Transmittance U Value: 0.46 BTU/HR/FT<sup>2</sup>/°F or less. Note: Performance based on lab testing and will vary by glass type; see actual test reports.

H. Noise Reduction: Test according to ASTM E 90, with ratings determined by ASTM E 1332, as follows:

1. Outdoor-Indoor Transmission Class: Minimum 30.



- I. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements resulting from ambient and surface temperature changes:
  - 1. Temperature Change: 0 deg F to 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
  - 2. Thermal Cycling: No buckling; stress on glass; sealant failure; excess stress on framing, anchors, and fasteners; or reduction of performance when tested according to AAMA 501.5.

## 2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. EFCO Corporation.
  - 2. Kawneer North America.
  - 3. Oldcastle, Inc.
  - 4. Wausau Window and Wall Systems.
  - 5. YKK AP
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain all components of curtain wall system, including framing venting windows, entrances and accessories, from single manufacturer.
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: YKK AP "YCW 750 OG Aluminum Curtain Wall System"

## 2.3 FRAMING

- A. Framing Members: Manufacturer's extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads. Framing system shall provide a flush glazed appearance on all sides with no protruding glass stops.
  - 1. Construction: Thermally broken.
  - 2. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
  - 3. Glazing Plane: Exterior.
  - 4. Face Dimension: 2 ½"
  - 5. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 6. Finish: Clear anodic finish.
- B. Pressure Caps: Manufacturer's standard aluminum components that mechanically retain glazing.
  - 1. Include snap-on aluminum trim that conceals fasteners.
- C. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- D. Materials:

1. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
  - a. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209.
  - b. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221, 6063-T5 and 6063-T6 Aluminum Alloys.
  - c. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429/B 429M.
  - d. Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308/B 308M.
2. Steel Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM, and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.
  - a. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
  - b. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
  - c. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.

## 2.4 ENTRANCES

- A. Entrances: Comply with Section 084113 "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts."

## 2.5 GLAZING

- A. Glazing: Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing."

## 2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners: Zinc plated steel concealed fasteners; Hardened aluminum alloys or AISI 300 series stainless steel exposed fasteners, countersunk, finish to match aluminum color.
- B. Anchors: Three-way adjustable anchors with minimum adjustment of 1 inch that accommodate fabrication and installation tolerances in material and finish compatible with adjoining materials and recommended by manufacturer.
  1. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 153/A 153M requirements.
- C. Sealant: System sealants selected by installer are to be permanently elastic, non-shrinking, non-migrating type recommended by sealant manufacturer for joint size, movement, and compatibility.
- D. Glazing: Setting blocks, edge blocks, and spacers in accordance with ASTM C 864, shore durometer hardness as recommended by manufacturer; Glazing gaskets in accordance with ASTM C 864.

- E. Concealed Flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials and end dams.
  - 1. 0.050 Aluminum Sill Flashing End Dams must have 3 point attachment.
- F. Sill flashing: Extruded aluminum sill flashing in size and dimensions noted on drawings. Finish to match aluminum curtain wall system.
- G. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos, formulated for 30-mil thickness per coat.

## 2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
- C. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
  - 1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
  - 2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
  - 3. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
  - 4. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
  - 5. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from exterior.
  - 6. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
- D. Fabricate components to resist water penetration as follows:
  - 1. Internal guttering system or other means to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within glazed aluminum curtain wall to exterior.
- E. Factory-Assembled Frame Units:
  - 1. Construct joints only at intersection of aluminum members with hairline joints and sealed
  - 2. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
  - 3. Prepare surfaces that are in contact structural sealant according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to ensure compatibility and adhesion.
  - 4. Preparation includes, but is not limited to, cleaning and priming surfaces.
  - 5. Seal joints watertight in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
  - 6. Install glazing to comply with requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."

## 2.8 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Anodized Finishing: Prepare aluminum surfaces for specified finish; apply shop finish in accordance with the following:
  - 1. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
    - a. Exposed Surfaces shall be free of scratches and other serious blemishes.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General:
  - 1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Do not install damaged components.
  - 3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
  - 4. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
  - 5. Shim and brace aluminum system before anchoring to structure.
  - 6. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.
  - 7. Where welding is required, weld components in concealed locations to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Protect glazing surfaces from welding.
- B. Metal Protection:
  - 1. Where aluminum is in contact with dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer, applying sealant or tape, or installing nonconductive spacers as recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.
  - 2. Where aluminum is in contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.
- C. Install components to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within glazed aluminum curtain wall to exterior.
  - 1. Verify curtain wall system allows water entering system to be collected in gutters and wept to the exterior. Verify weep holes are open, and metal joints are sealed in accordance with manufacturers installation instructions.

- D. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.
- E. Install operable units level and plumb, securely anchored, and without distortion. Adjust weather-stripping contact and hardware movement to produce proper operation.
- F. Install glazing as specified in Section 088000 "Glazing."
- G. Install perimeter weatherseal sealant according to Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" and according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to produce weatherproof joints. Install joint filler behind sealant as recommended by sealant manufacturer.

### 3.3 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Erection Tolerances: Install glazed aluminum curtain walls to comply with the following maximum tolerances:
  - 1. Plumb: 1/8 inch in 10 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
  - 2. Level: 1/8 inch in 20 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
  - 3. Alignment:
    - a. Where surfaces abut in line or are separated by reveal or protruding element up to 1/2 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch.
    - b. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element from 1/2 to 1 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/8 inch.
    - c. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element of 1 inch wide or more, limit offset from true alignment to 1/4 inch.
  - 4. Location: Limit variation from plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet; 1/2 inch over total length.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjusting: Adjust operating items as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Cleaning: The General Contractor shall clean installed products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions prior to Owner's acceptance, and remove construction debris from project site. Legally dispose of debris.
- C. Protection: The General Contractor shall protect installed product's finish surfaces from damage during construction.

END OF SECTION 084413

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 087100 - DOOR HARDWARE

### PART 1 GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Hardware for swinging Aluminum, Hollow Metal and Wood Door Openings.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 012513 – Product Substitution Procedures
2. Section 062000 – Finish Carpentry
3. Section 081113 – Hollow Metal Doors and Frames
4. Section 081416 – Flush Wood Doors
5. Section 084113 – Aluminum – Framed Entrances and Storefronts
6. Section 260519 – Low Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables

#### 1.2 REFERENCES

A. Use the following references to properly detail, schedule, furnish and install finish hardware items.

1. NFPA 80 – Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives (2007)
2. DHI Installation Guide for Doors and Hardware (1984)
3. DHI Sequence and Format for the Hardware Schedule (1996)
4. ANSI/BHMA A156.4 – Door Controls – Closers (2013)
5. ANSI/BHMA A156.2 – Bored and preassembled Locks and Latches (2011)
6. ANSI/BHMA A156.13 – Mortise Locks and Latches Series 1000 (2012)
7. ANSI/BHMA A156.18 – Materials and Finishes (2012)

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Schedule:

1. Provide submittals in accordance with 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.
2. Provide hardware schedule in vertical format on 8-1/2-inch by 11-inch paper or electronic format. Conform to DHI publication Sequence and Format for Hardware Schedule using Architect's door numbers and hardware set numbers.
3. Provide elevation drawings for openings with electrical hardware and access control devices with each hardware schedule. Include illustration of opening, operational description, electrified hardware components, legend, approximate mounting location and size of enclosures, size and quantity of conductors, facility name and date.

B. Product Data: Provide one set of manufacturer's catalog and technical data for each hardware item used, highlighting design, function, fasteners, accessories, and options to facilitate review with each hardware schedule submitted.

- C. Templates: Provide two sets of manufacturer's templating information for mortised and template hardware upon receipt of approved hardware schedule to the door and frame supplier(s). Include requirements for internal reinforcements required for surface mounted hardware.
- D. Wiring Diagrams:
  - 1. Three sets point-to-point diagrams specially developed for each opening that requires electrical hardware, with hardware delivery to jobsite. Reference elevation drawings submitted with hardware schedule using Architect's opening numbers.
  - 2. Three sets riser diagrams for openings requiring power supplies or access control. Include placement of power supplies, distance of wire runs from power supply, cable quantity and number and gauges of wires.
- E. Keying Schedule: Arrange meeting with Owner, Architect and finish hardware supplier to determine keying requirements immediately upon receipt of finish hardware schedule.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish operations and maintenance manual in accordance with Section 01 78 28 – Operations and Maintenance Data and as follows:
  - 1. Furnish one copy of manual at date of Substantial Completion in a 2-1/2-inch thick binder labeled with project information, date and name and contact information for the hardware supplier.
  - 2. Include in manual:
    - a. Copy of approved hardware schedule, including door numbers and locations. Highlight fire rated door to aid in annual fire door inspection.
    - b. Copy of approved keying schedule.
    - c. Catalog data for each product.
    - d. As-installed "wiring diagrams" for each opening connected to power.
    - e. Parts list for locksets, exit devices, and door closers.
    - f. Installation templates and instructions.
    - g. Warranty information.
    - h. Name, address, and phone number of local representatives for each manufacturer.

#### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Extra Materials:
  - 1. Screws and Fasteners: Fifty of each screw and fastener required for general maintenance of hinges, locks, closers, exit devices, and sealing systems.
  - 2. Deliver to Owner remaining finish hardware fasteners and special installation tools upon completion of Project.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE



- A. Supplier:
  - 1. Furnish hardware from recognized supplier who has warehousing facility within 100 miles of project location, and who has actively supplied hardware for similar projects in the vicinity for a minimum of five years.
  - 2. Supplier shall employ an Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC), as certified by Door and Hardware Institute, on staff full time to administer and supervise project.
- B. Installer: Install hardware using installers who have actively installed commercial door hardware for a minimum of five years, and are familiar with hardware installation of type required on this Project.
- C. Pre-Installation Meeting:
  - 1. Prior to installation of hardware, arrange for manufacturer's representatives of locksets, door closers, and exit devices to hold a jobsite meeting to instruct the installing personnel on the proper installation of their products.
  - 2. Send a letter of compliance, indicating when this meeting was held, and who was in attendance, to the Architect and Owner.
- D. Fire Rated Door Openings:
  - 1. Comply with NFPA 80.
  - 2. Furnish nationally recognized testing agency label or stamp on hardware for labeled openings.
  - 3. Only labeled locks or latches or fire exit hardware can be used on fire rated openings.
  - 4. Where UL requirements conflict with Drawings or Specifications, furnish hardware conforming to the UL requirements.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery:
  - 1. Jointly check in hardware, upon delivery to jobsite, against approved hardware schedule with hardware supplier. Record shortage or damage and replace or repair as necessary.
  - 2. Deliver hardware to be installed during fabrication of doors and frames, to manufacturer.
- B. Storage:
  - 1. Store hardware in a secure, dry, temperature controlled room on shelving to protect against loss, theft and damage.
  - 2. Store items too long for shelving on pallet, off the floor.
- C. Marking and Packaging:
  - 1. Deliver hardware to jobsite in manufacturer's original packaging marked to correspond with approved hardware schedule with Architect's door numbers and hardware sets.
  - 2. Mark all locksets, exit devices, cylinders, auxiliary hardware and key switches with keyset symbol.
  - 3. Replace any wet or damaged packaging with new.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Furnish warranties in accordance with Section 01 78 36 – Warranties. Extended or limited warranties shall be as follows:

1. Furnish minimum ten year factory warranty on door closers, against defects in material and workmanship, from date of substantial completion.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

#### A. The following manufacturers' were used in the hardware sets.

1. Butt Hinges	Stanley	ST
2. Continuous Hinges	Stanley	ST
3. Locks and Latchsets	Best	BE
4. Cylinders and Cores	Best	BE
5. Surface Closers	Dorma	DM
6. Exit Devices	Precision	PR
7. Overhead Stop/Holders	ABH	AB
8. Door Pulls	Trimco	TR
9. Flushbolts	Trimco	TR
10. Protection Plates	Trimco	TR
11. Wall/Floor Stops	Trimco	TR
12. Thresholds and Gasketing	National Guard	NA
13. Silencers	Trimco	TR

#### B. Submit requests for substitution in accordance with Section 01 25 13 Product Substitution requirements and as follows:

1. Provide catalog data with product information highlighted or bubbled to facilitate review. Product must meet or exceed level or design intended and/or function established by specified products.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

#### A. Screws and Fasteners:

1. Provide manufacturer's recommended fasteners of proper type, material and finish.
2. Provide self-tapping screws for sweeps and stop applied weatherstripping.
3. Utilize through-bolts for the attachment of door closers and exit devices on non-reinforced doors only. Finish: match door face.
4. Exposed screw heads: phillips type.

#### C. Hinges:

1. Type:
  - a. Five-knuckle, full mortise, ball bearing.
  - b. Furnish heavy weight hinges on heavy doors and doors expected to have high frequency use.
2. Quantity:
  - a. One pair of hinges for all doors up to 5 feet high. Furnish one additional hinge for every 2'-6" in height or fraction thereof.
  - b. Four hinges at dutch doors up to 7'-6" in height.
3. Size:
  - a. For 1-3/4-inch thick doors up to 3 feet wide: 4 1/2-inches high
  - b. For 1-3/4-inch thick doors over 3 feet wide: 5-inches high

- c. For all doors over 1-3/4-inches thick: 5-inches high
- d. Size in width shall minimally clear door trim.

4. Application:

- a. NRP (non-removable pin) at exterior doors and reverse bevel doors with locking hardware.
- b. Electric hinges: have sufficient number of concealed wires to accommodate electrical function of hardware. Furnish junction box and mortar shield.

5. Acceptable manufacturers and types:

Type	Stanley	Hager	Bommer
Standard Weight	FBB179	BB1279	BB5000
Heavy Weight	FBB168	BB1168	BB5004

D. Continuous Hinges:

- 1. Configuration appropriate for type, inset, and thickness of door. Coordinate with door manufacturer.
- 2. Meet UL fire label listing requirements at UL rated openings. Include fire pins as required by manufacturer.
- 3. Acceptable manufacturers and types:

Door Type	Stanley	ABH	Select
Aluminum	661HD	A110HD	SL11HD
Hollow Metal	662HD	A240HD	SL24HD

E. Door Bolts:

1. Flushbolts:

- a. Manual Flushbolts: Two for inactive leaf of locked pairs of doors at non-occupied rooms.
- b. Self-Latching Flushbolts: One pair for inactive leaf at pairs of doors where inactive leaf is not required for egress.
- c. Automatic Flushbolts: One pair at fire rated doors, and occupied rooms required for egress.
- d. Acceptable manufacturers and types:

Bolt/Door Type	Trimco	Burns	ABH
Manual	3917	590	1855
Automatic	3810	7842	1860

F. Locksets:

1. Mortise Locks:

- a. Conform to ANSI/BHMA A156.13, Series 1000 Operational Grade 1.
- b. Latchbolt with appropriate throw for fire rated doors and pairs of doors in accordance with manufacturers listing.
- c. Lock functions as specified in hardware schedule.
- d. Electrical functions as specified in hardware schedule, 24VDC.
- e. Lever design: 14H
- f. Backset: 2-3/4-inch
- g. Strike single door: ANSI 4-7/8-inch with proper lip length to minimally clear trim.
- h. Strike pair of doors: flat lip strike sized to fit flush with face of door.
- i. Furnish wrought strike box.

j. Acceptable manufacturers and types:

Best	Sargent	Schlage
45H Series	8200 Series	L9000 Series

2. Cylinders:

- a. Provide mortise and rim cylinders and cores from same manufacturer as locksets, for all locksets, exit devices, cylinder dogging, key switches and auxiliary hardware.
- b. Appropriate cam and blocking rings for proper installation

G. Keys & Keying

1. Cylinders: 7-pin, interchangeable core and keyed into a BEST factory registered Masterkey System.
2. Provide construction cores and keys during construction period. Construction control and operating keys and cores are not part of permanent keying system or furnished on same keyway (or key section) as permanent keying system.
3. Permanent Keys and Cores: Prepare permanent cores and keys in accordance with keying schedule. Provide Masterkeys and other Security Keys.
4. All keys to shall be stamped "Do Not Duplicate".
5. Furnish keys in the following quantities:
  - a. 4 each Masterkeys per new Masterkey set.
  - b. 2 each Change keys each keyed core.
  - c. 6 each Construction Masterkeys.
  - d. 2 each Construction Control keys.
  - e. 2 each Control keys.
  - f. 100 Extra Key Blanks
6. Install permanent cores in locksets.
7. Return construction cores to Hardware Supplier.

H. Exit Devices:

1. UL-listed for fire at fire door assemblies, and UL listed for panic at non-rated door assemblies.
2. Size exit devices to proper door width and height.
3. Stainless Steel deadlocking  $\frac{3}{4}$  -inch throw latch bolt.
4. LBR (less bottom rod) where scheduled to eliminate use of floor mounted strikes.
5. Cylinders for exit devices with cylinder dogging or locking trim.
6. Electrical functions as scheduled in sets. Provide power supply and power transfer from same manufacturer as electrified exit device.
7. Strike: as recommended by manufacturer.
8. Lever design: To match lockset trim.
9. Acceptable manufacturers and types:

Precision	Sargent	Von Duprin
Apex 2000 Series	19-GL-80 Series	98 Series

I. Surface Door Closers:

1. Conform to ANSI/BHMA A156.4 Grade 1.
2. Heavy duty high silicon aluminum alloy or cast iron body closers.
3. Furnish manufacturers recommended size, arms and configuration for door and frame application required.
4. Furnish brackets, spacers, support shoes, and plates for complete and proper installation.

5. DA (delayed-action) at toilet room doors and as scheduled.

6. Acceptable manufacturers and types:

Dorma	Sargent	LCN
8916 Series	350 Series	4040XP Series

J. Overhead Door Stop:

1. Provide overhead stop or overhead stop/holder for interior doors as specified. Provide overhead stop for interior doors and at any door that swings more than 140 degrees before striking a wall, open against equipment, casework, sidelights, and/or where conditions do not allow a wall stop or a floor stop presents a tripping hazard.
2. Where overhead holders are specified provide friction type at doors without a closer and positive type at doors with a closer.

3. Acceptable manufacturers:

ABH	Dorma	Glynn Johnson
4420 Series	710S Series	450 Series
1020 Series	910S Series	100 Series

K. Door Trim:

1. Provide push plates 6 inches wide x 16 inches high x 0.050 inch thick and beveled 4 edges. Where width of door stile prevents use of 6 inches wide plate, adjust width to fit.
2. Provide pull plates 4 inches wide x 16 inches high x 0.050 inch thick, beveled 4 edges, and prepped for pull. Where width of door stile prevents use of 4 inches wide plate, adjust width to fit.

3. Acceptable manufacturers:

Type	Trimco	Burns	Rockwood
Pull Plate	1018-3	5526B	110 x 70C
Push Plate	1001-9	56	75E

L. Protection Plates:

1. Where bottom rail allows, furnish 10-inch high kick plates and 10-inch high mop plates.
2. Material: 0.050-inch thick stainless steel plates with four beveled edges.
3. Countersink screw heads at wood doors.
4. Width: 2-inch less door width on stop (push) side and 1-inch less door width on face (pull) side.
5. Acceptable manufacturer and types:

Trimco	Burns	Rockwood
K0050	KP	K1050

M. Door Stops:

1. Convex, cast, wall stops.
2. Furnish fastener suitable for wall condition.
3. Provide wedge type stop for doors with push/pulls.
4. Where wall stops are inappropriate provide universal dome type floor stops.
5. Acceptable manufacturers and types:

Type	Trimco	Burns	Rockwood
Wall Stop	1270CX	560	400
Wedge Stop	1298	526	487
Floor Stop	1211	521	441H

N. Door Position Switch:

1. Provide magnetic switch, concealed three-quarter inch round, Single Pole Double Throw (SPDT) .250mA@ 30VDC for door status monitoring.

2. Acceptable manufacturer's and type:

Dorma	SDC	Securitron
MC4	MC-4	DPS

O. Thresholds and Gasketing:

1. Thresholds:

- a. Returned closed ends at openings where threshold extends beyond frame face.
- b. Bumper threshold with silicone insert where scheduled.
- c. Acceptable manufacturers and types:

Type	National Guard	Pemko
Saddle	513	271
Saddle	425	171
Bumper	896	2005

2. Gasketing:

- a. Rigid jamb weatherstrip with replaceable neoprene insert.
- b. Include self-adhesive two-sided tape in addition to manufacturer's standard fastener.
- c. Meeting-stile gasketing required at exterior pairs of doors and doors in smoke partitions.
- d. TPE adhesive fire/smoke gasketing at fire and smoke "S" labeled openings
- e. Door sweep with neoprene insert for exterior out-swing doors.
- f. Acceptable manufacturers and types:

Type	National Guard	Pemko
Rigid	137 NA	296CR
Smoke	5075	S773
Meeting Stile	115 NA	305CN
Door Sweep	200 NA	315CN

P. Silencers:

1. Grey rubber silencers with injector tool.
2. Three silencers at single doors and two silencers at pairs.
3. Acceptable manufacturers and types:

Trimco	Rockwood	Burns
1229A	608	500

## 2.3 KEY CONTROL

- A. Key cabinet: wall mounted with one hook for each lock or cylinder plus fifty extra hooks.

1. One non-removable security tag and one snap-on link duplicate tag per hook.
2. Furnish tools, instructions sheets and accessories required to complete installation.
3. Owner/Owner's representative will place keys in cabinet and complete index card furnished with key system.
4. Acceptable manufacturers:

Lund	Telkee	MMF
------	--------	-----

## 2.4 FINISHES

- |                                  |     |                                |
|----------------------------------|-----|--------------------------------|
| A. Conform to ANSI/BHMA A156.18. |     |                                |
| 1. Butt Hinges                   | 630 | Stainless Steel                |
| 2. Locks and Latches             | 626 | Satin Chrome                   |
| 3. Exit Devices                  | 630 | Satin Stainless Steel          |
| 4. Door Closers                  | 689 | Spray Painted Aluminum         |
| 5. Pull Plates                   | 630 | Satin Stainless Steel          |
| 6. Protection Plates             | 630 | Satin Stainless Steel          |
| 7. Stops and Holders             | 630 | Satin Stainless Steel          |
| 8. Thresholds/Gasket             | AL  | Anodized Mil Finished Aluminum |

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify doors and frames are plumb, square, level and true and free from defects that would prevent proper installation of finish hardware.
- B. Verify power is run to doors requiring electrified hardware.
- C. Wash down masonry walls and complete painting and staining of doors and frames prior to installation of hardware.
- D. Complete finish flooring at doorways.
- E. Correct conditions that inhibit a proper installation before continuing with work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install hardware in compliance with the DHI publication, Installation Guide for Doors and Hardware.
- B. Drill and countersink items not factory prepared for fasteners.
- C. Mount closers on room-side of corridor doors, inside of exterior doors, and stair-side of stairway doors. Use necessary arms, brackets, spacers and plates to accommodate auxiliary hardware and special applications.
- D. Install fire door assemblies to maintain clearances at door edge to frame and meeting edge of pairs of doors in compliance with NFPA 80, providing 1/8-inch clearance at the hinge edge, lock edge, head and between pairs. Provide maximum 3/4-inch undercut at door bottom. Where panic thresholds are used, undercut door to allow 1/8-inch clearance between door and threshold.
- E. Trim, cut, and notch thresholds and saddles neatly to minimally fit the profile of the door frame. Set thresholds in bed of mastic sealant, forming tight seal between threshold and surface to which set.
- F. Use only fasteners furnished by manufacturer for installation as recommended by manufacturer.
- G. Install blocking material for all wall mounted door stops at height appropriate to contact door trim.
- H. Install weather-strip prior to installation of door closers and exit devices. Do not cut or notch weather-strip.

- I. Locate electric hinges at second hinge from bottom of frame.
- J. Termination of wiring: Ensure wiring is in place and is connected for proper operation of hardware.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verify doors open and close smoothly without rubbing or catching and have positive latching where scheduled. Verify fire rated doors are installed with clearances in compliance with NFPA 80.
- B. Test electrified hold open devices tied into fire alarm system to confirm release upon activation of fire alarm. Test electrified hardware and access control to verify systems operate as directed in mode of operation. Where hardware is found to be inoperable, repair or replace with new.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Upon substantial completion, make final adjustments to door closers and other items of hardware after balance of heating and ventilating equipment to ensure doors close and latch properly.
- B. Clean and polish all exposed hardware surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's recommended procedures.
- C. Clean or repair pencil or tool marks from adjacent surfaces damaged or soiled by work of this Section.
- D. Recycle cardboard boxes and paper products used in packaging and transport of finish hardware.

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Remove hardware prior to painting or finishing door and frame. Wrap or mask exposed hardware that cannot be removed until date of substantial completion to avoid exposure to paint, solvents, and abuse.
- B. Repair or replace hardware damaged during construction at least two weeks prior to date of substantial completion.

### 3.6 SCHEDULES

- A. Should items of hardware not definitely specified be required for completion of the Work, furnish such items of type and quality comparable to adjacent hardware and appropriate for service required.
- B. Where items of hardware aren't definitely or correctly specified, are required for completion of the Work, a written statement of such omission, error, or other discrepancy to Architect, prior to date specified for receipt of bids for clarification by addendum; or, furnish such items in the type and quality established by this specification, and appropriate to the service intended.

END OF SECTION 087100



### Manufacturer List

<u>Code</u>	<u>Name</u>
AB	ABH Manufacturing Inc.
BE	Best Access Systems
BY	By Others
DM	Dorma Door Controls
NA	National Guard
PR	Precision
ST	Stanley
TR	Trimco

### Option List

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
C	QUICK CONNECT WIRING OPTION
N	Thru-Bolt w/ Flow-Thru
CD	CYLINDER DOGGING
FC	Full Plastic Cover
FL	Fire Exit Hardware
CSK	COUNTER SINKING OF KICK and MOP PLATES
LBR	LESS BOTTOM ROD
MCS	Mullion Cap Spacer
MLR	MOTORIZED LATCH RETRACTION
BSHD	Blade Stop Spacer - Heavy Duty Arms
DP89	Drop Plate
44443	ANGLE JAMB BRACKET
7/8"LTC	7/8" Lip-To-Center Strike
EPT Prep	EPT Prep
B4E-HEAVY-KP	BEVELED 4 EDGES
1/4-20 SSMS/EA	STAINLESS MACHINE SCREWS/EXPANSION ANC.

### Finish List

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
AL	Aluminum
626	Satin Chromium Plated
630	Satin Stainless Steel
689	Aluminum Painted
GREY	Grey
US26D	Chromium Plated, Dull
US32D	Stainless Steel, Dull

## Hardware Sets

### SET #01 - Exterior Aluminum Card Reader

Doors: A100A, A123B

1 Continuous Hinge	MCK-FM300 EPT	32D	MC
1 Exit Device	C MLR 2103	630	PR
1 Rim Cylinder	12E-72 STD (2-3/8" Thick Door)	626	BE
1 Door Pull	AP131E-20572 N Mtg (2-3/8" Thick Door)	630	TR
1 Closer	8916 DS BSHD DP89 FC	689	DM
1 Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1 Card Reader	By Security Contractor		BY
1 Power Supply	RPSMLR2BB		PR
1 Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PR
1 Wire Harness	WH-6E		ST
1 Wire Harness	WH-XXP (Length as REQ'D)		ST
1 Wire Harness	WH-192P		ST
1 Door Sweep	C627 A		NA
1 Drip Cap	16 A - 4" ODW		NA
1 Saddle Threshold	425 1/4-20 SSMS/EA	AL	NA

NOTE: Balance of weather-stripping by Aluminum Door/Frame manufacture. Coordinate door hardware with Aluminum Door/Frame manufacture. All wiring and conduit by electrical contractor. Coordinate all wiring and installation with electrical and security contractors. Operation: Door normally closed and locked. Presentation of valid credential allows entry. Egress always allowed. Mechanical key override. Coordinate specified hardware with aluminum Frame/Door supplier (Door weight and 2 3/8" Thickness).

### SET #02 - Exterior Aluminum Pair

Doors: A100B

2 Continuous Hinge	MCK-FM300	32D	MC
1 Removable Mullion	KR822 MCS	689	PR
2 Exit Device	2101 CD	630	PR
2 Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 STD	626	BE
1 Rim Cylinder	12E-72 STD (2-3/8" Thick Door)	626	BE
2 Door Pull	AP131E-20572 N Mtg (2-3/8" Thick Door)	630	TR
2 Closer	8916 DS BSHD DP89 FC	689	DM
2 Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1 Drip Cap	16 A - 4" ODW		NA
2 Door Sweep	C627 A		NA
1 Saddle Threshold	425 1/4-20 SSMS/EA	AL	NA

NOTE: Balance of weather-stripping by Aluminum Door/Frame manufacture. Coordinate door hardware with Aluminum Door/Frame manufacture. All wiring and conduit by electrical contractor. Coordinate all wiring and installation with electrical and security contractors. Doors mechanically dogged down for

push/pull operation. Coordinate specified hardware with aluminum Frame/Door supplier (Door weight and 2 3/8" Thickness).

#### SET #03 - Aluminum Secure Vestibule - Card Reader

##### Doors: A100C

1	Continuous Hinge	661HD UL EPT Prep	AL	ST
1	Exit Device	C MLR 2103	630	PR
1	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 STD	626	BE
1	Door Pull	AP131E-20572 N Mtg	630	TR
1	Closer	8916 DS BSHD DP89 FC	689	DM
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1	Card Reader	By Security Contractor		BY
1	Power Supply	RPSMLR2BB		PR
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PR
1	Wire Harness	WH-6E		ST
1	Wire Harness	WH-XXP (Length as REQ'D)		ST
1	Wire Harness	WH-192P		ST
1	Door Sweep	200 NA		NA
1	Saddle Threshold	425 1/4-20 SSMS/EA	AL	NA

NOTE: Balance of weather-stripping by Aluminum Door/Frame manufacture. Coordinate door hardware with Aluminum Door/Frame manufacture. All wiring and conduit by electrical contractor. Coordinate all wiring and installation with electrical and security contractors. Operation: Door normally closed and locked. Presentation of valid credential allows entry. Egress always allowed. Mechanical key override.

#### SET #04 - Aluminum Secure Vestibule

##### Doors: A100D

2	Continuous Hinge	661HD UL	AL	ST
1	Removable Mullion	KR822 MCS	689	PR
2	Exit Device	2101 CD	630	PR
2	Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 STD	626	BE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 STD	626	BE
2	Door Pull	AP131E-20572 N Mtg	630	TR
2	Closer	8916 DS BSHD DP89 FC	689	DM
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
2	Door Sweep	200 NA		NA
1	Saddle Threshold	425 1/4-20 SSMS/EA	AL	NA

NOTE: Balance of weather-stripping by Aluminum Door/Frame manufacture. Coordinate door hardware with Aluminum Door/Frame manufacture. Doors can be mechanically dogged down for push/pull operation.

## SET #05 - Reception - Card Reader

### Doors: A101A

1	Continuous Hinge	661HD UL	AL	ST
1	Storeroom Lockset	45H-7D14H STD	626	BE
1	Electric Strike	BES-F2164		BE
1	Closer (REG)	8916 AF89 FC	689	DM
1	Wall Bumper	1270CX	626	TR
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1	Power Supply	By Security Contractor.		BY
1	Card Reader	By Security Contractor		BY
1	Saddle Threshold	425 1/4-20 SSMS/EA	AL	NA

NOTE: Balance of weather-stripping by Aluminum Door/Frame manufacture. Coordinate door hardware with Aluminum Door/Frame manufacture. All wiring and conduit by electrical contractor. Coordinate all wiring and installation with electrical and security contractors. Operation: Door normally closed and locked. Presentation of valid credential allows entry. Egress always allowed. Mechanical key override.

## SET #06 - Exterior Aluminum Pair - Card Reader

### Doors: A119, A120B, A139, B104

1	Continuous Hinge	MCK-FM300	32D	MC
1	Continuous Hinge	MCK-FM300 EPT	32D	MC
1	Removable Mullion	KR822 MCS	689	PR
1	Exit Device	2101 CD	630	PR
1	Exit Device	C MLR 2103	630	PR
1	Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 STD	626	BE
2	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 STD (2-3/8" Thick Door)	626	BE
2	Door Pull	AP131E-20572 N Mtg (2-3/8" Thick Door)	630	TR
2	Closer	8916 DS BSHD DP89 FC	689	DM
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PR
1	Power Supply	RPSMLR2BB		PR
1	Card Reader	By Security Contractor		BY
2	Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1	Wire Harness	WH-6E		ST
1	Wire Harness	WH-192P		ST
1	Wire Harness	WH-XXP (Length as REQ'D)		ST
2	Door Sweep	C627 A		NA
1	Drip Cap	16 A - 4" ODW		NA
1	Saddle Threshold	425 1/4-20 SSMS/EA	AL	NA

NOTE: Balance of weather-stripping by Aluminum Door/Frame manufacture. Coordinate door hardware with Aluminum Door/Frame manufacture. All wiring and conduit by electrical contractor. Coordinate all wiring and installation with electrical and security contractors. Operation: Door normally closed and locked. Presentation of valid credential allows entry. Egress always allowed. Mechanical key override. Coordinate specified hardware with aluminum Frame/Door supplier (Door weight and 2 3/8" Thickness).

# SET #07 - Corr / Corr Card Reader - Mag Holders

## Doors: A120A

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL EPT Prep	AL	ST
1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL	AL	ST
1	Exit Device	2201 LBR	630	PR
1	Exit Device	C MLR 2203 X 4903D LBR	630	PR
1	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 STD	626	BE
2	Magnetic Holder	EM 500 Series as REQ'D	689	DM
2	Closer (PAR)	8916 SPA FC	689	DM
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PR
1	Power Supply	RPSMLR2BB		PR
1	Card Reader	By Security Contractor		BY
2	Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1	Wire Harness	WH-6E		ST
1	Wire Harness	WH-192P		ST
1	Wire Harness	WH-XXP (Length as REQ'D)		ST
2	Door Silencers	1229A	GREY	TR

NOTE: All wiring and conduit by electrical contractor. Coordinate all wiring and installation with electrical and security contractors. Operation: Door normally held open by magnetic wall holders. Upon activation of fire alarm system magnetic wall holders release doors allowing them to close and latch. When closed presentation of valid credential allows entry. Tie magnetic holders into fire alarm system. Egress always allowed. Mechanical key override.

# SET #08 - Exterior Card Reader

## Doors: B100B, B102B

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL EPT Prep	AL	ST
1	Exit Device	C MLR 2103	630	PR
1	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 STD	626	BE
1	Door Pull	AP131E-20572 N Mtg	630	TR
1	Closer	8916 DS FC	689	DM
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1	Wire Harness	WH-6E		ST
1	Wire Harness	WH-192P		ST
1	Wire Harness	WH-XXP (Length as REQ'D)		ST
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PR
1	Power Supply	RPSMLR2BB		PR
1	Card Reader	By Security Contractor		BY
1	Saddle Threshold	425 1/4-20 SSMS/EA	AL	NA
1	Drip Cap	16 A - 4" ODW		NA
1	Door Sweep	C627 A		NA
1	Gasketing	700 N @ Head & Jambs		NA

NOTE: All wiring and conduit by electrical contractor. Coordinate all wiring and installation with electrical and security contractors. Operation: Door normally closed and locked. Presentation of valid credential allows entry. Egress always allowed. Mechanical key override.

SET #09 - Exterior HM Pair - Card Reader

Doors: A116B, C100D

1 Continuous Hinge	662HD UL EPT Prep	AL	ST
1 Continuous Hinge	662HD UL	AL	ST
1 Removable Mullion	KR822 MCS	689	PR
1 Exit Device	C MLR 2103	630	PR
1 Exit Device	2101 CD	630	PR
1 Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 STD	626	BE
2 Rim Cylinder	12E-72 STD	626	BE
2 Door Pull	AP131E-20572 N Mtg	630	TR
2 Closer	8916 DS FC	689	DM
1 Wire Harness	WH-192P		ST
1 Wire Harness	WH-XXP (Length as REQ'D)		ST
1 Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PR
1 Power Supply	RPSMLR2BB		PR
1 Card Reader	By Security Contractor		BY
2 Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1 Wire Harness	WH-6E		ST
1 Drip Cap	16 A - 4" ODW		NA
2 Door Sweep	C627 A		NA
1 Gasketing	700 N @ Head & Jambs		NA
1 Saddle Threshold	425 1/4-20 SSMS/EA	AL	NA

NOTE: All wiring and conduit by electrical contractor. Coordinate all wiring and installation with electrical and security contractors. Operation: Door normally closed and locked. Presentation of valid credential allows entry. Egress always allowed. Mechanical key override.

SET #10 - Office

Doors: A102, A103, A110, A111

3 Hinges	FSB179 4 1/2 X 4 1/2	US26D	ST
1 Office Lockset	45H-7AB14H STD	626	BE
1 Wall Bumper	1270CX	626	TR
3 Door Silencers	1229A	GREY	TR

#### SET #11 - Office / Storage Card Reader - Hold Open

Doors: A104, A109, A114, A134A, B101B, B103B, B105, B108

3 Hinges	FBB179 4 1/2 X 4 1/2	US26D	ST
1 Storeroom Lockset	45H-7D14H STD	626	BE
1 Electric Strike	BES-F2164		BE
1 Closer (HO REG)	8916 FH FC	689	DM
1 Kick Plate	K0050 10" x 2" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Wall Bumper	1270CX	626	TR
1 Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1 Power Supply	By Security Contractor.		BY
1 Card Reader	By Security Contractor		BY
3 Door Silencers	1229A	GREY	TR

NOTE: All wiring and conduit by electrical contractor. Coordinate all wiring and installation with electrical and security contractors. Operation: Door normally closed and locked. Presenting valid credential to card reader releases electric strike to allow authorized entry. Electric strike is fail secure, in the event of loss of power, door remains secure from outside. Mechanical key override. Free egress at all times. Door can be held open with door closer.

NOTE: Delete Closer and Kick Plate at doors A104 and A109.

#### SET #12 - Classroom / Cust Card Reader - Hold Open

Doors: A134B, B100A, B102A, B106, B107B, B109

3 Hinges	FBB179 4 1/2 X 4 1/2 NRP	US26D	ST
1 Storeroom Lockset	45H-7D14H STD	626	BE
1 Electric Strike	BES-F2164		BE
1 Closer (HO PAR)	8916 FHP FC	689	DM
1 Kick Plate	K0050 10" x 2" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Mop Plate	KM050 10" x 1" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Wall Bumper	1270CX	626	TR
1 Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1 Power Supply	By Security Contractor.		BY
1 Card Reader	By Security Contractor		BY
3 Door Silencers	1229A	GREY	TR

NOTE: All wiring and conduit by electrical contractor. Coordinate all wiring and installation with electrical and security contractors. Operation: Door normally closed and locked. Presenting valid credential to card reader releases electric strike to allow authorized entry. Electric strike is fail secure, in the event of loss of power, door remains secure from outside. Mechanical key override. Free egress at all times.

#### SET #13 - Office - Storage - Locker - Card Reader

Doors: A106, A107, A108, A116A, A126, B101A, B103A

3 Hinges	FBB179 4 1/2 X 4 1/2	US26D	ST
1 Storeroom Lockset	45H-7D14H STD	626	BE
1 Electric Strike	BES-F2164		BE
1 Closer (REG)	8916 AF89 FC	689	DM
1 Kick Plate	K0050 10" x 2" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Mop Plate	KM050 10" x 1" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Wall Bumper	1270CX	626	TR
1 Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1 Power Supply	By Security Contractor.		BY
1 Card Reader	By Security Contractor		BY
3 Door Silencers	1229A	GREY	TR

NOTE: All wiring and conduit by electrical contractor. Coordinate all wiring and installation with electrical and security contractors. Operation: Door normally closed and locked. Presenting valid credential to card reader releases electric strike to allow authorized entry. Electric strike is fail secure, in the event of loss of power, door remains secure from outside. Mechanical key override. Free egress at all times.

NOTE: Delete Closer and Kick Plate at doors A107 and A108.

#### SET #14 - Weight Room - Card Reader

Doors: A123A

3 Hinges	FBB179 4 1/2 X 4 1/2 NRP	US26D	ST
1 Storeroom Lockset	45H-7D14H STD	626	BE
1 Electric Strike	BES-F2164		BE
1 Closer (PAR)	8916 SPA DP89 Drop Plate FC	689	DM
1 Kick Plate	K0050 10" x 2" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Mop Plate	KM050 10" x 1" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Wall Bumper	1270CX	626	TR
1 Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1 Power Supply	By Security Contractor.		BY
1 Card Reader	By Security Contractor		BY
3 Door Silencers	1229A	GREY	TR

NOTE: All wiring and conduit by electrical contractor. Coordinate all wiring and installation with electrical and security contractors. Operation: Door normally closed and locked. Presenting valid credential to card reader releases electric strike to allow authorized entry. Electric strike is fail secure, in the event of loss of power, door remains secure from outside. Mechanical key override. Free egress at all times.

#### SET #15 - Server - Card Reader

Doors: A115

6 Hinges	FBB179 4 1/2 X 4 1/2 NRP	US26D	ST
2 Flush Bolt	3917-12	626	TR



1 Elec-mech Lock (Fail Secure)	45HW-7DEU14H STD 7/8"LTC	626	BE
1 Closer (PAR)	8916 SPA FC	689	DM
2 Mop Plate	KM050 10" x 1" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
2 Wall Bumper	1270CX	626	TR
1 Wire Harness	WH-XXP (Length as REQ'D)		ST
1 Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PR
1 Dustproof Strike	3910	626	TR
1 Card Reader	By Security Contractor		BY
2 Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1 Power Supply	By Security Contractor.		BY
1 Wire Harness	WH-6E		ST
1 Wire Harness	WH-192P		ST
2 Door Silencers	1229A	GREY	TR

NOTE: All wiring and conduit by electrical contractor. Coordinate all wiring and installation with electrical and security contractors. Operation: Door normally closed and locked. Presenting valid credential to card reader releases secure lever of lockset allowing entry. Electric lock is fail secure, in the event of loss of power, door remains secure from outside. Mechanical key override. Free egress at all times.

#### SET #16 - Data

##### Doors: A135

6 Hinges	FBB179 4 1/2 X 4 1/2 NRP	US26D	ST
2 Flush Bolt	3917-12	626	TR
1 Storeroom Lockset	45H-7D14H STD 7/8"LTC	626	BE
1 Closer (DS HO PAR)	8916 DST FC	689	DM
1 Overhead Holder	4410 Series	US32D	AB
	NOTE: Mount on inactive leaf		
2 Kick Plate	K0050 10" x 2" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
2 Mop Plate	KM050 10" x 1" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Dustproof Strike	3910	626	TR
2 Door Silencers	1229A	GREY	TR

#### SET #17 - Elec Room - Laundry

##### Doors: A136, A138

3 Hinges	FBB179 4 1/2 X 4 1/2 NRP	US26D	ST
1 Storeroom Lockset	45H-7D14H STD	626	BE
1 Closer (PAR)	8916 DS FC	689	DM
1 Kick Plate	K0050 10" x 2" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Mop Plate	KM050 10" x 1" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
3 Door Silencers	1229A	GREY	TR

#### SET #18 - Custodial

Doors: A137

3 Hinges	FBB179 4 1/2 X 4 1/2	US26D	ST
1 Storeroom Lockset	45H-7D14H STD	626	BE
1 Closer (REG)	8916 AF89 FC	689	DM
1 Kick Plate	K0050 10" x 2" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Mop Plate	KM050 10" x 1" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Wall Bumper	1270CX	626	TR
3 Door Silencers	1229A	GREY	TR

SET #19 - Gen Storage - Card Reader

Doors: A140

6 Hinges	FBB179 4 1/2 X 4 1/2	US26D	ST
2 Flush Bolt	3917-12	626	TR
1 Elec-mech Lock (Fail Secure)	45HW-7DEU14H STD 7/8"LTC	626	BE
1 Closer (REG Stop Arm)	8916 IS FC	689	DM
1 Overhead Stop	4420 Series	US32D	AB
NOTE: Mount on pull side of inactive leaf.			
2 Mop Plate	KM050 10" x 1" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
2 Wall Bumper	1270CX	626	TR
1 Card Reader	By Security Contractor		BY
1 Wire Harness	WH-192P		ST
1 Wire Harness	WH-XXP (Length as REQ'D)		ST
1 Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PR
1 Dustproof Strike	3910	626	TR
2 Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1 Power Supply	By Security Contractor.		BY
1 Wire Harness	WH-6E		ST
2 Door Silencers	1229A	GREY	TR

NOTE: All wiring and conduit by electrical contractor. Coordinate all wiring and installation with electrical and security contractors. Operation: Door normally closed and locked. Presenting valid credential to card reader releases secure lever of lockset allowing entry. Electric lock is fail secure, in the event of loss of power, door remains secure from outside. Mechanical key override. Free egress at all times.

SET #20 - Toilet Room

Doors: A127, A128, A129, A130, A131, A132, A133

3 Hinges	FBB191 4 1/2 X 4 1/2	US26D	ST
1 Privacy Set	45H-0L14H	626	BE
1 Wall Bumper	1270CX	626	TR
3 Door Silencers	1229A	GREY	TR

# SET #21 - Locker / Multi Restroom

Doors: A121, A122, A124, A125

3 Hinges	FBB199 4 1/2 X 4 1/2	US26D	ST
1 Deadlock	48H-7R PATD	626	BE
1 Closer (REG)	8916 AF89 FC	689	DM
1 Pull Plate	1018-3	630	TR
1 Push Plate	1001-9	630	TR
1 Mop Plate	KM050 10" x 1" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Kick Plate	K0050 10" x 2" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Wall Bumper	1270CX	626	TR
3 Door Silencers	1229A	GREY	TR

# SET #22 - Cust HO

Doors: B107A

3 Hinges	FBB179 4 1/2 X 4 1/2 NRP	US26D	ST
1 Storeroom Lockset	45H-7D14H STD	626	BE
1 Closer (HO PAR)	8916 FHP FC	689	DM
1 Kick Plate	K0050 10" x 2" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Mop Plate	KM050 10" x 1" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Wall Bumper	1270CX	626	TR
3 Door Silencers	1229A	GREY	TR

# SET #23 - Multi-Purpose

Doors: C100A, C100B

6 Hinges	FBB168 4 1/2 X 4 1/2 NRP	US26D	ST
1 Removable Mullion	FLKR822 MCS	689	PR
1 Exit Device	FL 2101	630	PR
1 Exit Device	FL 2108 X 4908D	630	PR
2 Rim Cylinder	12E-72 STD	626	BE
2 Closer (PAR)	8916 SPA FC	689	DM
2 Mop Plate	KM050 10" x 1" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
2 Kick Plate	K0050 10" x 1" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
2 Wall Bumper	1270CX	626	TR
1 Smoke Seal Astragal	5070 CL		NA
1 Gasketing	5050 B		NA

# SET #24 - Multi-Purpose Storage

Doors: A118

6 Hinges	FBB179 4 1/2 X 4 1/2 NRP	US26D	ST
2 Flush Bolt	3917-12	626	TR
1 Storeroom Lockset	45H-7D14H STD 7/8" LTC	626	BE
1 Closer	8916 DS FC	689	DM
1 Overhead Stop	9020 Series	US32D	AB
2 Mop Plate	KM050 10" x 1" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
2 Kick Plate	K0050 10" x 1" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Dustproof Strike	3910	626	TR
1 Gasketing	700 N @ Head & Jambs		NA
1 Gasketing	5050 B		NA

#### SET #25 - Corridor Double Egress

##### Doors: A113

2 Continuous Hinge	662HD UL	AL	ST
2 Exit Device	FL 2201 LBR	630	PR
2 Magnetic Holder	EM 500 Series as REQ'D	689	DM
2 Closer (PAR)	8916 SPA FC	689	DM
4 Kick Plate	K0050 10" x 1" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
2 Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1 Smoke Seal Astragal	5070 CL		NA
1 Gasketing	5050 B		NA

NOTE: All wiring and conduit by electrical contractor. Coordinate all wiring and installation with electrical and security contractors. Operation: Door normally held open by magnetic wall holders. Upon activation of fire alarm system magnetic wall holders release doors allowing them to close and latch. Tie magnetic holders into fire alarm system.

#### SET #26 - Reception

##### Doors: A101B

3 Hinges	FBB179 4 1/2 X 4 1/2 NRP	US26D	ST
1 Classroom Lockset	45H-7R14H STD	626	BE
1 Closer (PAR)	8916 SPA FC	689	DM
1 Kick Plate	K0050 10" x 2" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Mop Plate	KM050 10" x 1" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Wall Bumper	1270CX	626	TR
3 Door Silencers	1229A	GREY	TR

#### SET #27 - Conference

##### Doors: A112

3 Hinges	FBB179 4 1/2 X 4 1/2	US26D	ST
1 Classroom Lockset	45H-7R14H STD	626	BE
1 Kick Plate	K0050 10" x 2" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Wall Bumper	1270CX	626	TR
3 Door Silencers	1229A	GREY	TR

#### SET #28 - Breakroom

##### Doors: A117A

3 Hinges	FBB179 4 1/2 X 4 1/2	US26D	ST
1 Classroom Lockset	45H-7R14H STD	626	BE
1 Closer (REG)	8916 AF89 FC	689	DM
1 Kick Plate	K0050 10" x 2" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Mop Plate	KM050 10" x 1" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Wall Bumper	1270CX	626	TR
3 Door Silencers	1229A	GREY	TR

#### SET #29 – Breakroom

##### Doors: A117B

3 Hinges	FBB179 4 1/2 X 4 1/2	US26D	ST
1 Classroom Lockset	45H-7R14H STD	626	BE
1 Closer (REG Stop Arm)	8916 IS FC	689	DM
1 Kick Plate	K0050 10" x 2" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Mop Plate	KM050 10" x 1" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
3 Door Silencers	1229A	GREY	TR

#### SET #30 - Storage

##### Doors: A142

3 Hinges	FBB179 4 1/2 X 4 1/2 NRP	US26D	ST
1 Storeroom Lockset	45H-7D14H STD	626	BE
1 Closer	8916 DS FC	689	DM
1 Kick Plate	K0050 10" x 2" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Mop Plate	KM050 10" x 1" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Gasketing	5050 B		NA

#### SET #31 - ALT GC-1 Classroom - Card Reader

##### Doors: B110A, B112A, B116, B119

3 Hinges	FBB179 4 1/2 X 4 1/2 NRP	US26D	ST
----------	--------------------------	-------	----

1 Storeroom Lockset	45H-7D14H STD	626	BE
1 Electric Strike	BES-F2164		BE
1 Closer (HO PAR)	8916 FHP FC	689	DM
1 Kick Plate	K0050 10" x 2" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Mop Plate	KM050 10" x 1" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Wall Bumper	1270CX	626	TR
1 Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1 Power Supply	By Security Contractor.		BY
1 Card Reader	By Security Contractor		BY
3 Door Silencers	1229A	GREY	TR

#### SET #32 - ALT GC-1 Storage - Card Reader

Doors: B111B, B113B

3 Hinges	FBF179 4 1/2 X 4 1/2	US26D	ST
1 Storeroom Lockset	45H-7D14H STD	626	BE
1 Electric Strike	BES-F2164		BE
1 Closer (REG)	8916 AF89 FC	689	DM
1 Kick Plate	K0050 10" x 2" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Mop Plate	KM050 10" x 1" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Wall Bumper	1270CX	626	TR
1 Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1 Power Supply	By Security Contractor.		BY
1 Card Reader	By Security Contractor		BY
3 Door Silencers	1229A	GREY	TR

#### SET #33 - ALT GC-1 Storage - Card Reader

Doors: B111A, B113A, B114, B118

3 Hinges	FBF179 4 1/2 X 4 1/2	US26D	ST
1 Storeroom Lockset	45H-7D14H STD	626	BE
1 Electric Strike	BES-F2164		BE
1 Closer (HO REG)	8916 FH FC	689	DM
1 Kick Plate	K0050 10" x 2" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Wall Bumper	1270CX	626	TR
1 Power Supply	By Security Contractor.		BY
1 Card Reader	By Security Contractor		BY
1 Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
3 Door Silencers	1229A	GREY	TR

#### SET #34 - ALT GC-1 Ext Alum Pr - Card Reader

Doors: B120

1 Continuous Hinge	MCK-FM300	32D	MC
1 Continuous Hinge	MCK-FM300 EPT	32D	MC
1 Removable Mullion	KR822 MCS	689	PR
1 Exit Device	2101 CD	630	PR
1 Exit Device	C MLR 2103	630	PR
1 Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 STD	626	BE
2 Rim Cylinder	12E-72 STD (2-3/8" Thick Door)	626	BE
2 Door Pull	AP131E-20572 N Mtg (2-3/8" Thick Door)	630	TR
2 Closer	8916 DS BSHD DP89 FC	689	DM
1 Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PR
1 Power Supply	RPSMLR2BB		PR
1 Card Reader	By Security Contractor		BY
2 Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1 Wire Harness	WH-6E		ST
1 Wire Harness	WH-192P		ST
1 Wire Harness	WH-XXP (Length as REQ'D)		ST
2 Door Sweep	C627 A		NA
1 Drip Cap	16 A - 4" ODW		NA
1 Saddle Threshold	425 1/4-20 SSMS/EA	AL	NA

NOTE: Balance of weather-stripping by Aluminum Door/Frame manufacture. Coordinate door hardware with Aluminum Door/Frame manufacture. All wiring and conduit by electrical contractor. Coordinate all wiring and installation with electrical and security contractors. Operation: Door normally closed and locked. Presentation of valid credential allows entry. Egress always allowed. Mechanical key override. Coordinate specified hardware with aluminum Frame/Door supplier (Door weight and 2 3/8" Thickness).

#### SET #35 - ALT GC-1 Exterior HM - Card Reader

Doors: B110B, B122B

1 Continuous Hinge	662HD UL EPT Prep	AL	ST
1 Exit Device	C MLR 2103	630	PR
1 Rim Cylinder	12E-72 STD	626	BE
1 Door Pull	AP131E-20572 N Mtg	630	TR
1 Closer	8916 DS FC	689	DM
1 Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1 Wire Harness	WH-6E		ST
1 Wire Harness	WH-192P		ST
1 Wire Harness	WH-XXP (Length as REQ'D)		ST
1 Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PR
1 Power Supply	RPSMLR2BB		PR
1 Card Reader	By Security Contractor		BY
1 Saddle Threshold	425 1/4-20 SSMS/EA	AL	NA
1 Drip Cap	16 A - 4" ODW		NA
1 Door Sweep	C627 A		NA
1 Gasketing	700 N @ Head & Jambs		NA

NOTE: All wiring and conduit by electrical contractor. Coordinate all wiring and installation with electrical and security contractors. Operation: Door normally closed and locked. Presentation of valid credential allows entry. Egress always allowed. Mechanical key override.

#### SET #36 - ALT GC-1 Elec Room

##### Doors: B117

3 Hinges	FBB179 4 1/2 X 4 1/2 NRP	US26D	ST
1 Storeroom Lockset	45H-7D14H STD	626	BE
1 Closer (PAR)	8916 SPA FC	689	DM
1 Kick Plate	K0050 10" x 2" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Mop Plate	KM050 10" x 1" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
3 Door Silencers	1229A	GREY	TR

#### SET #37 - ALT GC-1 Data

##### Doors: B115

6 Hinges	FBB179 4 1/2 X 4 1/2 NRP	US26D	ST
2 Flush Bolt	3917-12	626	TR
1 Storeroom Lockset	45H-7D14H STD 7/8" LTC	626	BE
1 Closer (DS HO PAR)	8916 DST FC	689	DM
1 Overhead Holder	4410 Series	US32D	AB
2 Kick Plate	K0050 10" x 2" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
2 Mop Plate	KM050 10" x 1" LDW B4E CSK	630	TR
1 Dustproof Strike	3910	626	TR
2 Door Silencers	1229A	GREY	TR



## SECTION 088000 – GENERAL GLAZING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes glazing for the following products and applications, including those specified in other Sections where glazing requirements are specified by reference to this Section:
  - 1. Windows.
  - 2. Doors.
  - 3. Interior borrowed lites.
  - 4. Glazed aluminum entrances and storefronts.
  - 5. Glazed aluminum curtain walls.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 8 Section "Aluminum Entrances and Storefronts."
  - 2. Division 8 Section "Flush Wood Doors."
  - 3. Division 8 Section "Steel Doors and Frames."
  - 4. Division 8 Section "Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls."
  - 5. Division 8 Section "Fire-Rated Glass"

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Glass Manufacturers: Firms that produce primary glass or fabricated glass as defined in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glazing Fabricators: Firms that produce fabricated glass products from primary glass as defined in referenced glazing publications.
- C. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters according to ASTM C 1036.
- D. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit that contains dehydrated air or a specified gas.
- E. Deterioration of Coated Glass: Defects developed from normal use that are attributed to the fabricating process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining

and cleaning coated glass contrary to fabricator's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in metallic coating.

- F. Deterioration of Laminated Glass: Defects developed from normal use that are attributed to the fabricating process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to fabricator's written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced laminated-glass standard.
- G. Deterioration of Insulating Glass: Failure of the hermetic seal under normal use that is attributed to the fabricating process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to fabricator's written instructions. Evidence of failure is the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Provide glazing systems capable of withstanding normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, or installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.
- B. Glass Design: Glass thicknesses indicated are minimums and are for detailing only. Confirm glass thicknesses by analyzing Project loads and in-service conditions. Provide glass lites for various size openings in nominal thicknesses indicated, but not less than thicknesses and in strengths (annealed or heat treated) required to meet or exceed the following criteria:
  - 1. Glass Thicknesses: Select minimum glass thicknesses to comply with ASTM E 1300 and ICC's 2006 International Building Code according to the following requirements:
    - a. Specified Design Wind Loads: Determine design wind loads applicable to Project from basic wind speed indicated in miles per hour at 33 feet above grade, according to ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures": Section 6.4.2, "Analytic Procedure," based on mean roof heights above grade indicated on Drawings.
      - 1) Wind Design Data: As indicated on the Drawings.
      - 2) Basic Wind Speed: 90 mph
      - 3) Importance Factor: 1.15
      - 4) Exposure Category: C
    - b. Specified Design Snow Loads: As indicated on Drawings, but not less than snow loads applicable to Project, required by ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures": Section 7, "Snow Loads".
    - c. Probability of Breakage for Vertical Glazing: 8 lites per 1000 for lites set vertically or not more than 15 degrees off vertical and under wind action.

- 1) Load Duration: 60 seconds or less.
  - d. Probability of Breakage for Sloped Glazing: For glass surfaces sloped more than 15 degrees from vertical, design glass for a probability of breakage not greater than 0.001.
  - e. Maximum Lateral Deflection: For glass supported on all four edges, limit center-of-glass deflection at design wind pressure to not more than 1/50 times the short-side length or 1 inch, whichever is less.
  - f. Differential Shading: Design glass to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading within individual glass lites.
  - g. Minimum Glass Thickness for Exterior Lites:
    - 1) Manufacturer's standard to meet wind load criteria, but not less than 6 mm.
- C. Thermal Movements: Provide glazing that allows for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures acting on glass framing members and glazing components. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- D. Performance Characteristics: Provide glass with performance properties specified based on manufacturer's published test data, as determined according to procedures indicated below:
1. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 6 mm thick.
  2. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units with lites 6 mm thick and a nominal ½-inch-wide interspace.
  3. Center-of-Glass thermal and optical performance properties shall be based on data and calculations from the current LBNL Windows 5.2 computer program expressed as Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F.
  4. Fenestration Performance: Performance values that take into account the total fenestration (Center-of-Glass and framing members) normally identified with building energy codes such as ASHRAE-IESNA 90.1 and the IECC. Values can also be tested and certified by the National Fenestration Rating Council (NFRC).

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each glass product and glazing material indicated.
- B. Samples: Provide 12-inch-square samples of each glass product specified.
- C. Glazing Schedule: Use same designations indicated on Drawings for glazed openings in preparing a schedule listing glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location.
- D. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of glass and glazing products certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.

1. For solar-control low-e-coated glass, provide documentation demonstrating that manufacturer of coated glass is certified by coating manufacturer.
- E. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in “Quality Assurance” Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- F. Adhesion and Compatibility Test Report: From glazing sealant manufacturer indicating glazing sealants were tested for adhesion to glass and glazing channel substrates and for compatibility with glass and other glazing materials.
- G. Product Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency, indicating the specified products comply with requirements based on comprehensive testing of standard products. Provide product test reports for each glass product.
- H. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed glazing similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Source Limitations for Monolithic Float Glass: Obtain all monolithic float glass from one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Source Limitations for Insulating Glass: Obtain all insulating-glass units from one source from a single fabricator using the same type of glass and other components for each type of unit indicated.
- D. Source Limitations for Laminated Glass: Obtain all laminated glass units from one source from a single fabricator using the same type of glass and other components for each type of unit indicated.
- E. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: Obtain all glazing accessories from one source from a single manufacturer for each product and installation method indicated.
- F. Safety Glass: Category II materials complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 and ANSI Z97.1.
  1. Subject to compliance with requirements, permanently mark safety glass with certification label of Safety Glazing Certification Council or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- G. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below, unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

Refer to the following publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.

1. GANA Publications: GANA's "Glazing Manual", "Sealant Manual" and "Laminated Glass Design Guide."
2. SIGMA Publications: SIGMA TM-3000, "Vertical Glazing Guidelines."
3. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial and Residential Use."
4. IGMA Publication for Sloped Glazing: IGMA TB-3001, "Guidelines for Sloped Glazing."

H. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
2. Review temporary protection requirements for glazing during and after installation.

I. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of the following inspecting and testing agency:

1. Insulated Glass Certification Council (IGCC)

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect glazing materials according to manufacturer's written instructions and as needed to prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.
- B. For insulating-glass units that will be exposed to substantial altitude changes, comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written recommendations for venting and sealing to avoid hermetic seal ruptures.

#### 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.

#### 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. General Warranty: Special warranties specified in this Article shall not deprive Owner of other rights the Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Insulating Glass: Written warranty, made out to Owner and signed by insulating-glass fabricator agreeing to furnish replacements for insulating-glass

units that deteriorate as defined in “Definitions” Article within specified warranty period indicated below.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

- C. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Laminated Glass: Written warranty, made out to Owner and signed by laminated-glass fabricator agreeing to furnish replacements for laminated-glass units that deteriorate as defined in “Definitions” Article within specified warranty period indicated below

1. Warranty Period: 5 years from date of Substantial Completion.

- D. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Written warranty, made out to Owner and signed by coated-glass fabricator agreeing to furnish replacements for coated-glass that deteriorates as defined in “Definitions” Article within specified warranty period indicated below. Deterioration of coated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer’s written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in coating.

1. Warranty Period: 5 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Thickness: Where glass thickness is indicated, it is a minimum. Provide glass lites in thicknesses as needed to comply with requirements indicated.

1. Minimum Glass Thickness for Exterior Lites: Not less than 6.0 mm.

- B. Strength: Where float glass is indicated, provide annealed float glass, Kind HS heat-treated float glass, or Kind FT heat-treated float glass as required by applicable glazing code.

- C. Windborne-Debris-Impact Resistance: Provide exterior glazing that passes basic-protection testing requirements in ASTM E 1996 for Wind Zone 3 when tested according to ASTM E 1886. Test specimens shall be no smaller in width and length than glazing indicated for use on the Project and shall be installed in same manner as glazing indicated for use on the Project.

### 2.2 MANUFACTURERS AND FABRICATION

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers of products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Monolithic Float Glass

a. PPG Industries, Inc.

- b. Guardian Industries, Inc.
  - c. Pilkington, Inc.
  - d. ACH (formerly Visteon).
- B. Available Fabricators: Subject to compliance with requirements, fabricators of the products specified include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. J. E. Berkowitz, L.P. (800) 257-7827
  - 2. Viracon, Inc.
  - 3. Arch Aluminum, Inc.
  - 4. Oldcastle Glass

## 2.3 MONOLITHIC FLOAT GLASS

- A. Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type 1, Class 1 (clear), Class 2 (tinted) transparent glass, flat, Quality q3 (glazing select); class, kind and condition indicated.

## 2.4 HEAT-TREATED FLOAT GLASS

- A. Heat-Treated Float Glass: ASTM C 1048; Type I; Class I (clear), Class 2 (tinted) transparent glass, flat, Quality q3 (glazing select); class, kind, and condition as required by the applicable glazing code.
- B. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Flatness Tolerances
    - a. Roller-Wave or Ripple: Deviation from flatness at any peak shall be targeted not to exceed 0.003" as measured per peak to valley for ¼" (6 mm) thick glass.
    - b. Bow and Warp: The bow and warp tolerances targeted shall not exceed 1/32" per linear foot.

## 2.5 INSULATING GLASS

- A. Insulating Glass Units – General: Preassembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, and complying with ASTM E 2190 for Class CBA units and with requirements specified in this Article.
  - 1. Type IG-1 Insulated Glass: Insulated glass units consisting of two lites of clear, annealed glass, separated by a ½-inch sealed air space. Provide insulated units with low "E" coating. For use in the buildings perimeter openings primarily facing North and East. Refer to Schedules for applied use.
    - a. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide units fabricated with "PPG Solarban 60 Clear" with the following characteristics or comparable product:

- 1) Ultra Violet: 18%
- 2) Visible Light Transmittance: 70%
- 3) Total Solar Energy Transmittance: 33%
- 4) Winter Night-time U Value: .29
- 5) Summer Day-time U Value: .28
- 6) Shading Co-efficient: .43
- 7) Solar Heat Gain Co-efficient: .38
- 8) Light to Solar Gain: 1.84

b. Insulating Glass Unit Make-up

- 1) Outboard Lite: "PPG Solarban 60 Clear", ¼-inch thick.
- 2) Low "E" coating on 2<sup>nd</sup>. surface.
- 3) ½-inch thick desiccant filled aluminum spacer.
- 4) Inboard Lite: ¼-inch thick clear glass.
- 5) Overall Thickness: 1-inch

2. Type IG-2 Insulated Glass: Insulated glass units consisting of two lites of clear, annealed glass, separated by a ½-inch sealed air space. Provide insulated units with low "E" coating. For use in the buildings perimeter openings primarily facing South and West. Refer to Schedules for applied use.

a. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "PPG Solarban 70 Clear" with the following characteristics or comparable product:

- 1) Ultra Violet: 4%
- 2) Visible Light Transmittance: 64%
- 3) Total Solar Energy Transmittance: 23%
- 4) Winter Night-time U Value: .28
- 5) Summer Day-time U Value: .27
- 6) Shading Co-efficient: .31
- 7) Solar Heat Gain Co-efficient: .27
- 8) Light to Solar Gain: 2.33

b. Insulating Glass Unit Make-up

- 1) Outboard Lite: "PPG Solarban 70 Clear", ¼-inch thick.
- 2) Low "E" coating on 2<sup>nd</sup> surface.
- 3) ½-inch thick desiccant filled aluminum spacer.
- 4) Inboard Lite: ¼-inch thick clear glass.
- 5) Overall Thickness: 1-inch.

3. Type IG-3 Insulated Glass: Insulated glass units consisting of one lite of clear and one lite of acid etched, annealed glass, separated by a ½-inch sealed air space. Provide insulated units with low "E" coating. For use in type W8 window units in locker rooms A121 and A122. Refer to Schedules for applied use.



- a. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide “PPG Solarban 70 Clear” with the following characteristics or comparable product:

- 1) Ultra Violet: 4%
- 2) Visible Light Transmittance: 64%
- 3) Total Solar Energy Transmittance: 23%
- 4) Winter Night-time U Value: .28
- 5) Summer Day-time U Value: .27
- 6) Shading Co-efficient: .31
- 7) Solar Heat Gain Co-efficient: .27
- 8) Light to Solar Gain: 2.33

- b. Insulating Glass Unit Make-up

- 1) Outboard Lite: “PPG Solarban 70 Clear”, ¼-inch thick.
- 2) Low “E” coating on 2<sup>nd</sup> surface.
- 3) ½-inch thick desiccant filled aluminum spacer.
- 4) Inboard Lite: ¼-inch thick velour acid etched glass.
- 5) Overall Thickness: 1-inch.

- B. Sealing System: Dual seal, with primary and secondary sealants as follows:

1. Dual air seal of polyisobutylene (PIB), and secondary seal of silicone.

- C. Spacer Specifications: Manufacturer’s standard spacer material and construction complying with the following requirements:

1. Spacer Material: Aluminum with mill or clear-anodized finish.
2. Desiccant: Molecular sieve or silica gel, or blend of both.
3. Corner Construction: Manufacturer’s standard corner construction.

## 2.6 GLAZING GASKETS

- A. Dense Compression Gaskets: Molded or extruded gaskets of material indicated below, complying with standards referenced with name of elastomer indicated below, and of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal:

1. Neoprene, ASTM C 864.
2. EPDM, ASTM C 864.
3. Silicone, ASTM C 1115.
4. Thermoplastic polyolefin rubber, ASTM C 1115.
5. Any material indicated above.

## 2.7 GLAZING TAPES

- A. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tape: Preformed, butyl-based elastomeric tape with a solids content of 100 percent; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces;

with or without spacer rods as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; packaged on rolls with a release paper backing; and complying with ASTM C 1281 and AAMA 800.

## 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
- B. VOC Content: For Sealants used inside weatherproofing system, not more than 250 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, subpart D.
- C. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- D. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
- E. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions with a Shore A durometer hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
- F. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).

## 2.9 FABRICATION OF GLASS AND OTHER GLAZING PRODUCTS

- A. Fabricate glass and other glazing products in sizes required to glaze openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing standard, to comply with system performance requirements.
- B. Clean-cut or flat-grind vertical edges of butt-glazed monolithic lites in a manner that produces square edges with slight kerfs at junctions with outdoor and indoor faces.
- C. Grind smooth and polish exposed glass edges and corners.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine framing glazing, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:
  - 1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
  - 2. Presence and functioning of weep system.
  - 3. Minimum required face or edge clearances.

4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.

### 3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL

A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.

B. Glazing channel dimensions, as indicated on Drawings, provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, with reasonable tolerances. Adjust as required by Project conditions during installation.

C. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass is glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass and impair performance and appearance.

D. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.

E. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.

F. Provide spacers for glass lites where the length plus width is larger than 50 inches as follows:

1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
2. Provide 1/8-inch minimum bite of spacers on glass.

G. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.

H. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.

### 3.4 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)

- A. Fabricate compression gaskets in lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with stretch allowance during installation.
- B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
- C. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- D. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect exterior glass from damage immediately after installation by attaching crossed streamers to framing held away from glass. Do not apply markers to glass surface. Remove nonpermanent labels, and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations, including weld splatter. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove them immediately as recommended by glass manufacturer.
- C. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for build-up of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains; remove as recommended by glass manufacturer.
- D. Remove and replace glass that is broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged in any way, including natural causes, accidents, and vandalism, during construction period.
- E. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces in each area of Project not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended by glass manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 088000

## SECTION 088100 – FIRE-RATED GLAZING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes fire-rated glazing for the following products and applications:
  - 1. Doors.
  - 2. Interior borrowed lites.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 8 Section "Flush Wood Doors." for vision panels in interior wood doors.
  - 2. Division 8 Section "Steel Doors and Frames." for vision panels in interior hollow metal doors and interior borrowed lite frames.
  - 3. Division 8 Section "General Glazing" for non-fire-rated glazing products.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Fire-rated glass, ceramic clear and wireless glazing material with surface-applied film listed for use in impact safety-rated locations such as doors and borrowed lites with fire rating requirements ranging from 20 minutes to 3 hours with required hose stream test.
- B. Glass Design: Provide glass lites for various openings in nominal thicknesses indicated, but not less than the thicknesses required to meet applicable codes.
- C. Fire-Rated Glazing Limitations Guide: Comply with the following:

Rating	Assembly	Max. Exposed Area (Sq. In.)	Max. Width Of Exposed Glazing (In.)	OR	Max. Height Of Exposed Glazing (In.)	Stop Height
20 min.	Doors					
	Hollow Metal Steel	3,204	36"		89"	5/8"
	Other than doors					
	Hollow Metal Steel	3,325	95"		95"	5/8"

45 min.	Doors				
	Hollow Metal Steel	3,204	36"	89"	5/8"
	Other than doors				
	Hollow Metal Steel	3,325	95"	95"	5/8"
60 min.	Doors (non-temp. rise)				
	Hollow Metal Steel	3,204	36"	89"	5/8"
	Doors (temp. rise)	100	12"	33"	5/8"
	Other than Doors				
90 min.	Hollow Metal Steel	3,325	95"	95"	5/8"
	Doors (non-temp. rise)	2,034	36"	56-1/2"	3/4"
	Doors (temp. rise)	100	12"	33"	1/2"
	Other than Doors				
3 Hrs.	Hollow Metal Steel	2,627	56-1/2"	56-1/2"	5/8"
	Doors	100	12"	33"	1/2"

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Comply with the requirements of Division 1 Section "Submittals".
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's technical data for each fire-rated glass product and glazing material indicated, including installation and maintenance instructions.
- C. Samples: Provide 12-inch-square samples of each glass product specified.
- D. Glazing Schedule: Use same designations indicated on Drawings for glazed openings in preparing a schedule listing glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location.
- E. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturer of fire-rated glass products certifying that products furnished comply with requirements. Products shall be permanently labeled, designating type and thickness of glass, by a recognized certification agency or independent testing laboratory acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- F. Product Test Listing: Comply with UL, based on comprehensive testing of current products.
- G. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.

- H. Adhesion and Compatibility Test Report: From glazing sealant manufacturer indicating glazing sealants were tested for adhesion to glass and glazing channel substrates and for compatibility with glass and other glazing materials.
- I. Product Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency, indicating the specified products comply with requirements based on comprehensive testing of standard products. Provide product test reports for each glass product.
- J. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed glazing similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Source Limitations for Fire-Rated Ceramic Glass: Obtain all fire-rated ceramic glass from one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Source Limitations for Fire-Rated Laminated Glass: Obtain all fire-rated laminated glass from one source from a single fabricator using the same type of glass and other components for each type of unit indicated.
- D. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: Obtain all glazing accessories from one source from a single manufacturer for each product and installation method indicated.
- E. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 252 and ASTM E 152.
- F. Fire-Rated Window Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 257.
- G. Fire-Rated Glass Labeling: Each lite shall be permanently labeled, designating type and thickness of glass, certifying it for use in tested and rated fire-protective assemblies, by a recognized certification agency or independent testing laboratory acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- H. Safety Glass: Category II materials complying with testing requirements in CPSC 16 CFR 1201 and ANSI Z97.1.
- I. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below, unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Refer to the following publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.

- 1. GANA Publications: GANA's "Glazing Manual"

2. FGMA Publications: FGMA's "Sealant Manual".
3. CSFM Publications: CSFM's "Fire Tests for Door and Window Assemblies".

J. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
2. Review temporary protection requirements for glazing during and after installation.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver fire-rated glazing materials in manufacturer's factory packaging, undamaged, complete with installation instructions.
- B. Protect fire-rated glazing materials according to manufacturer's written instructions and as needed to prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. General Warranty: Special warranties specified in this Article shall not deprive Owner of other rights the Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Fire-Rated Glass: Written warranty, made out to Owner and signed by fire-rated glass manufacturer agreeing to furnish replacements for fire-rated glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period indicated below.
  1. Warranty Period: 3 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Thickness: Where glass thickness is indicated, it is a minimum. Provide glass lites in thicknesses as needed to comply with requirements indicated.



## 2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers of products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Fire-Rated Glazing Products – Ceramic Glass
  - a. Nippon Electric Glass Co., Ltd. (Technical Glass Products 1-800-426-0279)
  - b. Vetrotech, Inc.
  - c. Schott North America, Inc.

## 2.3 FIRE-RATED CERAMIC GLASS

- A. Fire-Rated Glass, General: Listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 252 for door assemblies and NFPA 257 for window assemblies.

1. Type FR-1 Fire-Rated Glass: Monolithic ceramic glazing, clear, ceramic flat glass; 3/16-inch nominal thickness. For use in fire-rated applications where a SAFETY RATING IS NOT REQUIRED. Refer to Schedules for applied use.
  - a. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide “Nippon Electric Glass Co., Ltd. (distributed by Technical Glass Products); Standard FireLite” with the following characteristics or comparable product:
    - 1) Thickness: 3/16”
    - 2) Weight: 2.4 lbs./sq. ft.
    - 3) Visible Transmittance: 88%
    - 4) Visible Reflection: 9%
    - 5) Hardness: 700
    - 6) Positive Test Pressure: UL 10C
2. Type FR-2 Fire-Rated Glass: Film-faced ceramic glazing, clear, ceramic flat glass; 3/16-inch nominal thickness; faced on one surface with a clear glazing film; complying with ANSI Z97.1 and with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 for Category II materials. For use in fire-rated applications where a SAFETY RATING IS REQUIRED. Refer to Schedules for applied use.
  - a. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide “Nippon Electric Glass Co., Ltd. (distributed by Technical Glass Products); “FireLite NT” with the following characteristics or comparable product:
    - 1) Thickness: 3/16”
    - 2) Film: Fire-rated surface film
    - 3) Weight: 2.4 lbs./sq. ft.
    - 4) Visible Transmittance: 88%
    - 5) Visible Reflection: 9%
    - 6) Hardness: 700

7) Positive Test Pressure: UL 10C

2.4 GLAZING TAPE FOR FIRE-RATED GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. Glazing Tape: Closed cell polyvinyl chloride (PVC) foam, coiled on release paper over adhesive on two sides, maximum water absorption by volume of 2%.
  - a. Glass panels that exceed 1,393 sq. in. for a 90-minute rating must be glazed with fire-rated glazing tape supplied by manufacturer.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
- B. Silicone Sealant: One part natural curing silicone, medium modulus sealant, Type S; Grade NS; Class 25 with additional movement capability of 50 percent in both extension and compression (total 100%).
  - 1. Available products include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Dow Corning 795; Dow Corning Group
    - b. Silglaze-II 2800 – General Electric Co.
    - c. Spectrem 2 – Tremco, Inc.
- C. VOC Content: For Sealants used inside weatherproofing system, not more than 250 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, subpart D.
- D. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- E. Setting Blocks: Neoprene, EPDM, or silicone; tested for compatibility with glazing compound; of 70 to 90 Shore A hardness.

2.6 FABRICATION OF GLASS AND OTHER GLAZING PRODUCTS

- A. Fabricate glass and other glazing products in sizes required to glaze openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing standard, to comply with system performance requirements.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine glass framing, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:
  - 1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
  - 2. Minimum required face or edge clearances.
  - 3. Observable edge damage or face imperfections.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.

### 3.3 FIRE-RATED GLAZING, GENERAL

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glazing channel dimensions, as indicated on Drawings, provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, with reasonable tolerances. Adjust as required by Project conditions during installation.
- C. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass is glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass and impair performance and appearance.
- D. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- E. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- F. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.
- G. Cut glazing tape to length and set against permanent stops, flush with sight lines to fit openings exactly, with stretch allowance during installation.

- H. Glaze vertically into labeled fire-rated metal frames with same fire rating as glass and push against tape for full contact at perimeter of pane or unit.
- I. Place glazing tape on free perimeter of glazing and push against tape for full contact at perimeter.
- J. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
- K. Install removable stop and secure without displacement of tape.

#### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove them immediately as recommended by glass manufacturer.
- B. Remove and replace glass that is broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged in any way, including natural causes, accidents, and vandalism, during construction period.
- C. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces in each area of Project not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended by glass manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 088100

## SECTION 092216 - NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Non-load-bearing steel framing systems for interior gypsum board assemblies.
  - 2. Suspension systems for interior gypsum ceilings, soffits, and grid systems.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Evaluation Reports: For steel studs and runners.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies that incorporate non-load-bearing steel framing, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated, according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.

#### 2.2 FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 20 percent.
- B. Framing Members, General: Comply with ASTM C 754 for conditions indicated.
  - 1. Steel Sheet Components: Comply with ASTM C 645 requirements for metal unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Protective Coating: ASTM A 653/A 653M, hot-dip galvanized unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Studs and Runners: ASTM C 645. Use either steel studs and runners or dimpled steel studs and runners.
1. Steel Studs and Runners:
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.018 inch
    - b. Depth: 3-5/8 inches
  2. Dimpled Steel Studs and Runners:
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.015 inch
    - b. Depth: 3-5/8 inches
- D. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where indicated, provide one of the following:
1. Single Long-Leg Runner System: ASTM C 645 top runner with 2-inch-deep flanges in thickness not less than indicated for studs, installed with studs friction fit into top runner and with continuous bridging located within 12 inches of the top of studs to provide lateral bracing.
  2. Double-Runner System: ASTM C 645 top runners, inside runner with 2-inch-deep flanges in thickness not less than indicated for studs and fastened to studs, and outer runner sized to friction fit inside runner.
  3. Deflection Track: Steel sheet top runner manufactured to prevent cracking of finishes applied to interior partition framing resulting from deflection of structure above; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - 1) Dietrich Metal Framing; SLP-TRK Slotted Deflection Track.
      - 2) MBA Building Supplies; Slotted Deflecto Track
      - 3) Steel Network Inc. (The); VertiTrack VTD Series.
      - 4) Superior Metal Trim; Superior Flex Track System (SFT).
      - 5) Telling Industries; Vertical Slip Track.
- E. Firestop Tracks: Top runner manufactured to allow partition heads to expand and contract with movement of the structure while maintaining continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Fire Trak Corp.; Fire Trak System attached to studs with Fire Trak Posi Klip.
    - b. Grace Construction Products; FlameSafe FlowTrak System.
    - c. Metal-Lite, Inc.; The System.
- F. Flat Strap and Backing Plate: Steel sheet for blocking and bracing in length and width indicated.

1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.018 inch
- G. Cold-Rolled Channel Bridging: Steel, 0.053-inch minimum base-metal thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges.
1. Depth: 1-1/2 inches.
  2. Clip Angle: Not less than 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches, 0.068-inch-thick, galvanized steel.
- H. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645.
1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.033 inch.
  2. Depth: 7/8 inch
- I. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch-deep, steel sheet members designed to reduce sound transmission.
1. Configuration: Asymmetrical or hat shaped.
- J. Cold-Rolled Furring Channels: 0.053-inch uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges.
1. Depth: 3/4 inch.
  2. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge type of steel sheet with minimum uncoated-steel thickness of 0.033 inch.
  3. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch-diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch-diameter wire.
- K. Z-Shaped Furring: With slotted or nonslotted web, face flange of 1-1/4 inches, wall attachment flange of 7/8 inch, minimum uncoated-metal thickness of 0.018 inch, and depth required to fit insulation thickness indicated.

## 2.3 SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch-diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch-diameter wire.
- B. Hanger Attachments to Concrete:
1. Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials with holes or loops for attaching wire hangers and capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to 5 times that imposed by construction as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488 by an independent testing agency.
    - a. Type: Post installed, chemical anchor or Post installed, expansion anchor.
  2. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials with clips or other devices for attaching hangers of type indicated, and capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to 10 times that imposed by construction as determined by testing according to ASTM E 1190 by an independent testing agency.

- C. Wire Hangers: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.16 inch in diameter.
- D. Flat Hangers: Steel sheet, 1 by 3/16 inch by length indicated.
- E. Carrying Channels: Cold-rolled, commercial-steel sheet with a base-metal thickness of 0.053 inch and minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges.
  - 1. Depth: 2-1/2 inches.
- F. Furring Channels (Furring Members):
  - 1. Cold-Rolled Channels: 0.053-inch uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges, 3/4 inch deep.
  - 2. Steel Studs and Runners: ASTM C 645.
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.027 inch.
    - b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Dimpled Steel Studs and Runners: ASTM C 645.
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.
    - b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 4. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645, 7/8 inch deep.
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.018 inch
  - 5. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch-deep members designed to reduce sound transmission.
    - a. Configuration: Asymmetrical or hat shaped.
- G. Grid Suspension System for Gypsum Board Ceilings: ASTM C 645, direct-hung system composed of main beams and cross-furring members that interlock.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.; Drywall Grid Systems.
    - b. Chicago Metallic Corporation; Drywall Grid System.
    - c. USG Corporation; Drywall Suspension System.

## 2.4 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards.
  - 1. Fasteners for Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.



## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates, with Installer present, and including welded hollow-metal frames, cast-in anchors, and structural framing, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Suspended Assemblies: Coordinate installation of suspension systems with installation of overhead structure to ensure that inserts and other provisions for anchorages to building structure have been installed to receive hangers at spacing required to support the Work and that hangers will develop their full strength.
  - 1. Furnish concrete inserts and other devices indicated to other trades for installation in advance of time needed for coordination and construction.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Installation Standard: ASTM C 754.
  - 1. Gypsum Board Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C 840 that apply to framing installation.
- B. Install supplementary framing, and blocking to support fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, handrails or similar construction.
- C. Install bracing at terminations in assemblies.
- D. Do not bridge building control and expansion joints with non-load-bearing steel framing members. Frame both sides of joints independently.

### 3.4 INSTALLING FRAMED ASSEMBLIES

- A. Install framing system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
  - 1. Single-Layer Application: 16 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install studs so flanges within framing system point in same direction.
- C. Install tracks (runners) at floors and overhead supports. Extend framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings except where partitions are

indicated to terminate at suspended ceilings. Continue framing around ducts penetrating partitions above ceiling.

1. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where framing extends to overhead structural supports, install to produce joints at tops of framing systems that prevent axial loading of finished assemblies.
2. Door Openings: Screw vertical studs at jambs to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install runner track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.
  - a. Install two studs at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Install cripple studs at head adjacent to each jamb stud, with a minimum 1/2-inch clearance from jamb stud to allow for installation of control joint in finished assembly.
  - c. Extend jamb studs through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of overhead structure.
3. Other Framed Openings: Frame openings other than door openings the same as required for door openings unless otherwise indicated. Install framing below sills of openings to match framing required above door heads.
4. Fire-Resistance-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated and support closures and to make partitions continuous from floor to underside of solid structure.
  - a. Firestop Track: Where indicated, install to maintain continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated.

D. Direct Furring:

1. Attach to concrete or masonry with stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches o.c.

E. Z-Furring Members:

1. Except at exterior corners, securely attach narrow flanges of furring members to wall with concrete stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches (610 mm) o.c.
2. At exterior corners, attach wide flange of furring members to wall with short flange extending beyond corner; on adjacent wall surface, screw-attach short flange of furring channel to web of attached channel. At interior corners, space second member no more than 12 inches from corner and cut insulation to fit.

- F. Installation Tolerance: Install each framing member so fastening surfaces vary not more than 1/8 inch from the plane formed by faces of adjacent framing.

### 3.5 INSTALLING SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Install suspension system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.

1. Hangers: 48 inches o.c.
  2. Carrying Channels (Main Runners): 48 inches o.c.
  3. Furring Channels (Furring Members): 16 inches o.c.
- B. Isolate suspension systems from building structure where they abut or are penetrated by building structure to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement.
- C. Suspend hangers from building structure as follows:
1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or suspension system.
    - a. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
  2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with locations of hangers required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in the form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
    - a. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced installation standards.
  3. Wire Hangers: Secure by looping and wire tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for substrate, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
  4. Flat Hangers: Secure to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for structure and hanger, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
  5. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck.
  6. Do not attach hangers to permanent metal forms. Furnish cast-in-place hanger inserts that extend through forms.
  7. Do not attach hangers to rolled-in hanger tabs of composite steel floor deck.
  8. Do not connect or suspend steel framing from ducts, pipes, or conduit.
- D. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Wire tie furring channels to supports.
- E. Grid Suspension Systems: Attach perimeter wall track or angle where grid suspension systems meet vertical surfaces. Mechanically join main beam and cross-furring members to each other and butt-cut to fit into wall track.
- F. Installation Tolerances: Install suspension systems that are level to within 1/8 inch in 12 feet measured lengthwise on each member that will receive finishes and transversely between parallel members that will receive finishes.

END OF SECTION 092216

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 092900 - GYPSUM BOARD

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Interior gypsum board.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 9 Section "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for non-structural framing and suspension systems that support gypsum board panels.
  - 2. Division 9 Section "Tiling" for tile backing panels installed as substrates for ceramic tile.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For the following products:
  - 1. Trim Accessories: Full-size Sample in 12-inch-long length for each trim accessory indicated.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

#### 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C 840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations, whichever are more stringent.
- B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.

- C. Do not install panels that are wet, those that are moisture damaged, and those that are mold damaged.
  - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. Low-Emitting Materials: For ceiling and wall assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly and complying with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

### 2.2 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

- A. Recycled Content of Gypsum Panel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 20 percent.
- B. Regional Materials: Gypsum panel products shall be manufactured within 500 miles of Project site from materials that have been extracted, harvested, or recovered, as well as manufactured, within 500 miles of Project site.
- C. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

### 2.3 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. American Gypsum.
  - 2. CertainTeed Corp.
  - 3. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
  - 4. Lafarge North America Inc.
  - 5. National Gypsum Company.
  - 6. PABCO Gypsum.
  - 7. Temple-Inland.
  - 8. USG Corporation.

- B. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
  - 1. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
- C. Gypsum Board, Type X: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
  - 1. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
- D. Gypsum Ceiling Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
  - 1. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
- E. Abuse-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1629/C 1629M, Level 1.
  - 1. Core: 5/8 inch, regular type.
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
  - 3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.
- F. Moisture- and Mold-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M. With moisture- and mold-resistant core and paper surfaces.
  - 1. Core: 5/8 inch
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
  - 3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.
  - 4. ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.

## 2.4 TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. Interior Trim: ASTM C 1047.
  - 1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet or rolled zinc
  - 2. Shapes:
    - a. Cornerbead.
    - b. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
    - c. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
    - d. U-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound.
    - e. Expansion (control) joint.

## 2.5 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 475/C 475M.
- B. Joint Tape:

1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
  2. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: Paper.
  3. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: 10-by-10 glass mesh.
- C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
1. Prefilling: At open joints rounded or beveled panel edges, and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
  2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use setting-type taping or drying-type, all-purpose compound.
  3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use setting-type, sandable topping or drying-type, all-purpose compound.
  4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use setting-type, sandable topping or drying-type, all-purpose compound.
- D. Joint Compound for Exterior Applications:
1. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: Use setting-type taping compound and setting-type, sandable topping compound.
  2. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: As recommended by sheathing board manufacturer.

## 2.6 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written recommendations.
- B. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Use screws complying with ASTM C 954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick.
  2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.
- C. Sound Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.
1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.
  2. Recycled Content of Blankets: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 20 percent.
- D. Acoustical Joint Sealant: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.



1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Accumetric LLC; BOSS 824 Acoustical Sound Sealant.
  - b. Grabber Construction Products; Acoustical Sealant GSC.
  - c. Pecora Corporation; AC-20 FTR.
  - d. Specified Technologies, Inc.; Smoke N Sound Acoustical Sealant.
  - e. USG Corporation; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.
2. Acoustical joint sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Acoustical joint sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 APPLYING AND FINISHING PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C 840.
- B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.
- C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
- D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.
- E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.

- F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
  - 1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. in area.
  - 2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
  - 3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch-wide joints to install sealant.
- G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments, except floors. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch-wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.
- H. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.
- I. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

### 3.3 APPLYING INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:
  - 1. Wallboard Type: Vertical surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Type X: Where required for fire-resistance-rated assembly. Vertical surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Single-Layer Application:
  - 1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.
    - a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
  - 3. On Z-furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
  - 4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.

### 3.4 APPLYING EXTERIOR GYPSUM PANELS FOR CEILINGS AND SOFFITS

- A. Apply panels perpendicular to supports, with end joints staggered and located over supports.

1. Install with 1/4-inch open space where panels abut other construction or structural penetrations.
2. Fasten with corrosion-resistant screws.

### 3.5 INSTALLING TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Control Joints: Install control joints according to ASTM C 840 and in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect.
- C. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:
  1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners.
  2. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
- D. Exterior Trim: Install in the following locations:
  1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners.
  2. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
- E. Aluminum Trim: Install in locations indicated on Drawings.

### 3.6 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD

- A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
- B. Prefill open joints, rounded or beveled edges, and damaged surface areas.
- C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C 840:
  1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
  2. Level 4: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions for use as exposed soffit board.

### 3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.
- B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
  - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 092900

## SECTION 093000 – TILING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Ceramic tile.
  - 2. Porcelain wall tile.
  - 3. Waterproof membrane.
  - 4. Metal edge strips.
  - 5. Marble thresholds.

- B. Related Sections:

- 1. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealing of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile surfaces.
  - 2. Division 9 Section "Gypsum Board" for tile backing panels.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Definitions in the ANSI A 108 series of tile installation standards and in ANSI A 137.1 apply to Work of this Section unless otherwise specified.
- B. ANSI A 108 Series: ANSI A 108.01, 108.02, 108.1A, 108.1B, 108.1C, 108.4 through 108.6, and 108.8 through 108.17, which are contained in "American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile."
- C. Module Size: Actual tile size plus joint width indicated.
- D. Face Size: Actual tile size, excluding spacer lugs.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show locations of each type of tile and tile pattern. Show widths, details, and locations of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile substrates and finished tile surfaces.

- C. Samples: Samples are not required for the initial submittal. Architect/Interior Designer will request tile samples after prior final color selection as needed.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Master Grade Certificates: For each shipment, type, and composition of tile, signed by tile manufacturer and Installer.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of product, signed by product manufacturer.
- D. Material Test Reports: For each tile-setting and grouting product.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match and are from same production runs as products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Tile and Trim Units: Furnish quantity of full-size units equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, color, pattern, and size indicated.
  - 2. Grout: Furnish quantity of grout equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, and color indicated.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations for Tile: Obtain tile from one source or producer.
  - 1. Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from same production run and of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties for each contiguous area.
- B. Source Limitations for Setting and Grouting Materials: Obtain ingredients of a uniform quality for each mortar, adhesive, and grout component from one manufacturer and each aggregate from one source or producer.
- C. Source Limitations for Other Products: Obtain each of the following products specified in this Section from a single manufacturer for each product:
  - 1. Waterproof membrane.
  - 2. Joint sealants.
  - 3. Metal edge strips.
- D. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - 1. Build mockup of each type of wall tile installation. Coordinate location with Owner and Architect.

2. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review requirements in ANSI A 108.01 for substrates and for preparation by other trades.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Comply with requirements in ANSI A 137.1 for labeling tile packages.
- B. Store tile and materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination can be avoided.
- D. Store liquid materials in unopened containers and protected from freezing.
- E. Handle tile that has temporary protective coating on exposed surfaces to prevent coated surfaces from contacting backs or edges of other units. If coating does contact bonding surfaces of tile, remove coating from bonding surfaces before setting tile.

## 1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install tile until construction in spaces is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated in referenced standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide tile that complies with ANSI A 137.1 for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.
  1. Provide tile complying with Standard grade requirements unless otherwise indicated.
- B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI A 108.02, ANSI standards referenced in other Part 2 articles, ANSI standards referenced by TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules, and other requirements specified.
- C. Mounting: For factory-mounted tile, provide back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies as standard with manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.2 TILE PRODUCTS

### A. Tile Type CT: Glazed wall tile.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. American Olean; Division of Dal-Tile International, Inc.
  - b. Daltile; Division of Dal-Tile International, Inc.
2. Module Size: 3 by 6 inches.
3. Pattern: Rittenhouse Square
4. Thickness: 5/16 inch.
5. Finish: Semi-gloss glaze.
6. Tile Color and Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
7. Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
8. Mounting: Factory, back-mounted.
9. Trim Units: Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile. Provide shapes as required from manufacturer's standard shapes.

### B. Porcelain Tile - Type One (PT1):

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, Garden State Tile Company:
  - a. Crossville.
2. Composition: Porcelain.
3. Module Size: 12 inches by 24 inches.
4. Pattern: Shades.
5. Thickness: 5/16 inch.
6. Tile Color/Finish: AV246 Ash Honed
7. Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

### C. Porcelain Tile - Type Two (PT2):

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, Garden State Tile Company:
  - a. Crossville.
2. Composition: Porcelain.
3. Module Size: 6 inches by 24 inches.
4. Pattern: Shades.
5. Thickness: 5/16 inch.
6. Tile Color/Finish: AV249 Ink Honed
7. Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.



D. Porcelain Tile - Type Three (PT3):

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, Garden State Tile Company:
  - a. Crossville.
2. Composition: Porcelain.
3. Module Size: 12 inches by 24 inches.
4. Pattern: Argent
5. Thickness: 9.5mm
6. Tile Colors/Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
7. Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

E. Porcelain Tile - Type Three (PT4):

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, Garden State Tile Company:
  - a. Crossville.
2. Composition: Porcelain.
3. Module Size: 6 inches by 24 inches.
4. Pattern: Argent
5. Thickness: 9.5mm
6. Tile Colors/Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
7. Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.3 WATERPROOF MEMBRANE

A. General: Manufacturer's standard product, selected from the following, which complies with ANSI A 118.10 and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Laticrete Hydroban.
  - b. Mapei Mapelastic AquaDefense.
  - c. Custom Building RedGuard Waterproofing and Crack Prevention Membrane.

## 2.4 SETTING MATERIALS

A. Latex-Portland Cement Mortar (Thin Set): ANSI A 118.4.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Laticrete International, Inc.
  - b. Mapei Corporation.
  - c. Custom Building Products.

2. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix containing dry, redispersible, vinyl acetate or acrylic additive to which only water must be added at Project site.
3. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix combined with acrylic resin or styrene-butadiene-rubber liquid-latex additive at Project site.
4. For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for nonsagging mortar in addition to the other requirements in ANSI A 118.4.
5. For glass tile installations use white mortar in accordance with tile manufacturers recommendations for installation.

## 2.5 GROUT MATERIALS

### A. Polymer-Modified Tile Grout: ANSI A 118.7.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following
  - a. Laticrete International, Inc.
  - b. Mapei Corporation.
  - c. Custom Building Products.
2. Polymer Type: Ethylene vinyl acetate or acrylic additive, in dry, redispersible form, prepackaged with other dry ingredients.

## 2.6 ELASTOMERIC SEALANTS

- A. General: Provide sealants, primers, backer rods, and other sealant accessories that comply with the following requirements and with the applicable requirements in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
  1. Sealants shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  2. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
  3. Use primers, backer rods, and sealant accessories recommended by sealant manufacturer.
- B. Colors: Provide colors of exposed sealants to match colors of grout in tile adjoining sealed joints unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, Portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.
- B. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout manufacturers.

- C. Metal edge strips: Provide metal edge strips equal to Schluter Systems “JOLLY” at all vertical exposed edges of ceramic wall tile.

## 2.8 MIXING MORTARS AND GROUT

- A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with referenced standards and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.
- C. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of installed tile.
  - 1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm, dry, clean, free of coatings that are incompatible with tile-setting materials including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone; and comply with flatness tolerances required by ANSI A 108.01 for installations indicated.
  - 2. Verify that concrete substrates for tile floors installed with adhesives, bonded mortar bed or thin-set mortar comply with surface finish requirements in ANSI A 108.01 for installations indicated.
    - a. Verify that surfaces that received a steel trowel finish have been mechanically scarified.
    - b. Verify that protrusions, bumps, and ridges have been removed by sanding or grinding.
  - 3. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed.
  - 4. Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust joint locations in consultation with Architect.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in concrete substrates for tile floors installed with adhesives or thin-set mortar with trowelable leveling and patching compound specifically recommended by tile-setting material manufacturer.

- B. Where indicated, prepare substrates to receive waterproofing by applying a reinforced mortar bed that complies with ANSI A 108.1A and is sloped 1/4 inch per foot toward drains.
- C. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations, verify that tile has been factory blended and packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.

### 3.3 TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with TCNA's "Handbook for Ceramic Tile Installation" for TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules. Comply with parts of the ANSI A 108 Series "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that are referenced in TCNA installation methods, specified in tile installation schedules, and apply to types of setting and grouting materials used.
- B. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete covering without interruptions unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.
- C. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.
- D. Provide manufacturer's standard trim shapes where necessary to eliminate exposed tile edges.
- E. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in grid pattern unless otherwise indicated. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Lay out tile work to minimize the use of pieces that are less than half of a tile. Provide uniform joint widths unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. For tile mounted in sheets, make joints between tile sheets same width as joints within tile sheets so joints between sheets are not apparent in finished work.
  - 2. Where adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim are specified or indicated to be same size, align joints.
  - 3. Where tiles are specified or indicated to be whole integer multiples of adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim, align joints unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Joint Widths: Unless otherwise indicated, install tile with the following joint widths:
  - 1. Glazed Wall Tile: 1/8 inch.
  - 2. Porcelain Wall Tile: 1/16 inch.
- G. Lay out tile wainscots to dimensions indicated or to next full tile beyond dimensions indicated.
- H. Expansion Joints: Comply with TCNA indications for type of installation and comply with their written recommendations for expansion joints for wall and floor applications. Provide

expansion joints and other sealant-filled joints, including control, contraction, and isolation joints, where indicated. Form joints during installation of setting materials, mortar beds, and tile. Do not saw-cut joints after installing tiles.

1. Where joints occur in concrete substrates, locate joints in tile surfaces directly above them.
  2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
- I. Metal Edge Strips: Provide strips equal to Schluter System for transitions from tile to adjacent materials on floors, for wall transitions and corner applications. Refer to Drawings for details, and the following:
1. Outside Corners of all Wall Tile Types: Schluter Systems "Quadec-K;" finish shall be satin nickel anodized aluminum.
  2. Outside Edges: Schluter Systems "Jolly;" finish shall be satin nickel anodized aluminum.
  3. Outside Edges @ Showers: Schluter Systems "ECK-KHK" finish shall be satin nickel anodized aluminum.

### 3.4 WATERPROOFING INSTALLATION

- A. Install waterproofing to comply with ANSI A 118.10 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce waterproof membrane of uniform thickness and bonded securely to substrate.
- B. Do not install tile or setting materials over waterproofing until waterproofing has cured and been tested to determine that it is watertight.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

- A. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.
1. Remove latex-Portland cement grout residue from tile as soon as possible.
  2. Clean grout smears and haze from tile according to tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions but no sooner than 10 days after installation. Use only cleaners recommended by tile and grout manufacturers and only after determining that cleaners are safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after cleaning.
- B. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral protective cleaner from tile surfaces.

### 3.6 INTERIOR TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE

- A. Interior Wall Installations:

1. Tile Installation W202I: Thin-set mortar over CMU. For Restroom applications, apply waterproof membrane in accordance with ANSI A 118.4 and ANSI A 118.1.
    - a. Tile Type: CT and PT.
    - b. Thin-Set Mortar: Latex-Portland cement mortar.
    - c. Grout: Polymer-modified unsanded grout for glazed tile.
  2. Tile Installation W244C: Thin-set mortar on backer units. For Restroom applications, apply waterproof membrane in accordance with ANSI A 118.4 and ANSI A 118.1.
    - a. Tile Type: CT and PT.
    - b. Thin-Set Mortar: Latex- Portland cement mortar.
    - c. Grout: Polymer-modified unsanded grout for glazed tile.
  3. Tile Installation TCNA W245, ANSI 137.2: Thin-set mortar on backer units.
    - a. Tile Type: PT.
    - b. Thin-Set Mortar: Latex- Portland cement mortar; white mortar for glass tile mosaics.
    - c. Grout: Polymer-modified unsanded grout for glazed tile.
  4. Tile Installation B421-18: Thin-set mortar on backer units. For Restroom applications, apply waterproof membrane in accordance with ANSI A 118.10.
    - a. Tile Type: CT.
    - b. Thin-Set Mortar: Latex- Portland cement mortar.
    - c. Grout: Polymer-modified sanded epoxy grout for glazed tile.
- B. Interior Floor Installations:
1. Tile Installation F113: Thin-set mortar; TCA F113.
    - a. Tile Type: PT
    - b. Thin-Set Mortar: Latex-portland cement mortar.
    - c. Grout: Polymer-modified sanded grout.

END OF SECTION 093000

## SECTION 095113 - ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Mineral-based, factory-painted acoustical ceiling panels.
  - 2. Standard exposed grid suspension systems.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Suspended ceiling components.
  - 2. Structural members to which suspension systems will be attached.
  - 3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical panels.
  - 4. Items penetrating finished ceiling including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Lighting fixtures.
    - b. Air outlets and inlets.
    - c. Speakers.
    - d. Sprinklers.
    - e. Access panels.
  - 5. Perimeter moldings.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each acoustical panel ceiling, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Evaluation Reports: For each acoustical panel ceiling suspension system and anchor and fastener type, from ICC-ES.

- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Samples for Initial Selection: 12-inch-square Samples of specialty metal ceilings and 12-inch-long Samples of associated suspension system grid; provide full range of available colors and patterns.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Acoustical and FRP Panels: Full-size panels equal to 2 percent of quantity installed, in each pattern and color provided.
  - 2. Suspension-System Components: Quantity of each exposed component equal 2 percent of quantity installed, in each color and style provided.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to NVLAP for testing indicated.

#### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver acoustical panels, suspension-system components, and accessories to Project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.
- B. Before installing acoustical panels, permit them to reach room temperature and stabilized moisture content.
- C. Handle acoustical panels carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaging units in any way.

#### 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical panel or FRP ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weatherproof, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Acoustical ceiling shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.



- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Flame-Spread Index: Comply with ASTM E 1264 for Class A materials.
  - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
- C. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

## 2.2 ACOUSTICAL PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Low-Emitting Materials: Acoustical panel ceilings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of acoustical ceiling panel and supporting suspension system from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Acoustical Panel Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard panels of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E 1264 classifications as designated by types, patterns, acoustical ratings, and light reflectance unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Acoustical Panel Colors and Patterns: Match appearance characteristics indicated for each product type.
  - 1. Where appearance characteristics of acoustical panels are indicated by referencing pattern designations in ASTM E 1264 and not manufacturers' proprietary product designations, provide products selected by Architect from each manufacturer's full range that comply with requirements indicated for type, pattern, color, light reflectance, acoustical performance, edge detail, and size.

## 2.3 ACOUSTICAL PANELS – TYPE (ACT1)

- A. Manufacturers and Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
  - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.; Fine Fissured High Acoustics No.1714.
  - 2. USG Interiors, Inc.; Radar ClimaPlus High-NRC, No. 22441.
- B. Classification: Provide panels complying with ASTM E 1264 for type, form, and pattern as follows:
  - 1. Type and Form: Type III, mineral base with painted finish.
  - 2. Color: White.
  - 3. LR: 0.84.
  - 4. NRC: Not less than 0.70.
  - 5. CAC: Not less than 35.
  - 6. Edge Detail: Square.
  - 7. Thickness: 3/4 inch.
  - 8. Modular Size: Nominal 24 by 48 inches.

- C. Broad Spectrum Antimicrobial Fungicide and Bactericide Treatment: Provide acoustical panels treated with manufacturer's standard antimicrobial formulation that inhibits fungus, mold, mildew, and gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria and showing no mold, mildew, or bacterial growth when tested according to ASTM D 3273 and evaluated according to ASTM D 3274 or ASTM G 21.
- D. Suspension System Type: Applications and types as indicated on Drawings and Paragraph 2.6, B

#### 2.4 ACOUSTICAL PANELS – TYPE (ACT 2)

- A. Manufacturers and Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.; Fine Fissured Second Look, No. 1761.
  - 2. USG Interiors, Inc.; Radar ClimaPlus Illusion Two/24 No. 2842.
- B. Classification: Provide panels complying with ASTM E 1264 for type, form, and pattern as follows:
  - 1. Type and Form: Type III, mineral base with painted finish.
  - 2. Color: White.
  - 3. LR: 0.84.
  - 4. NRC: Not less than 0.55.
  - 5. CAC: Not less than 35.
  - 6. Edge Detail: Angled Tegular.
  - 7. Thickness: 3/4 inch.
  - 8. Modular Size: Nominal 24 by 48 inches.
- C. Broad Spectrum Antimicrobial Fungicide and Bactericide Treatment: Provide acoustical panels treated with manufacturer's standard antimicrobial formulation that inhibits fungus, mold, mildew, and gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria and showing no mold, mildew, or bacterial growth when tested according to ASTM D 3273 and evaluated according to ASTM D 3274 or ASTM G 21.
- D. Suspension System Type: Applications and types as indicated on Drawings and Paragraph 2.6, B.

#### 2.5 ACOUSTICAL PANELS – TYPE (ACT3)

- A. Manufacturers and Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.; Ceramaguard No. 605.
  - 2. USG Interiors, Inc.; Sheetrock Lay-In Ceiling Panel Clima Plus Vinyl No. 3270.”
- B. Classification: Provide panels complying with ASTM E 1264 for type, form, and pattern as follows:
  - 1. Type and Form: Type III, mineral base with painted finish.
  - 2. Color: White.
  - 3. LR: 0.86.

4. Edge Detail: Square.
  5. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
  6. Modular Size: Nominal 24 by 48 inches.
- C. Broad Spectrum Antimicrobial Fungicide and Bactericide Treatment: Provide acoustical panels treated with manufacturer's standard antimicrobial formulation that inhibits fungus, mold, mildew, and gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria and showing no mold, mildew, or bacterial growth when tested according to ASTM D 3273 and evaluated according to ASTM D 3274 or ASTM G 21.
- D. Suspension System Type: Applications and types as indicated on Drawings and Paragraph 2.6, B.

## 2.6 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEMS, GENERAL

- A. Metal Suspension-System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard direct-hung metal suspension systems of types, structural classifications, and finishes indicated that comply with applicable requirements in ASTM C 635.
1. High-Humidity Finish: Comply with ASTM C 635 requirements for "Coating Classification for Severe Environment Performance" where high-humidity finishes are indicated.
- B. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide the following wire types, based on Project requirements:
1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 641, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
  2. Stainless-Steel Wire: ASTM A 580, Type 304, nonmagnetic.
  3. Nickel-Copper-Alloy Wire: ASTM B 164, nickel-copper-alloy UNS No. N04400.
  4. Size: Select wire diameter so its stress at three times hanger design load (ASTM C 635/C, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but provide not less than 0.106-inch-diameter wire.
- C. Hanger Rods: Mild steel, zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.
- D. Angle Hangers: Angles with legs not less than 7/8 inch wide; formed with 0.04-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653, G90 coating designation; with bolted connections and 5/16-inch diameter bolts.
- E. Hold-Down Clips: Provide for all air lock and security applications, including vestibules, restrooms and locker rooms, where occurs; provide manufacturer's standard hold-down clips spaced 24 inches o.c. on all cross tees.
- F. Manufacturers and Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.; "Axiom Classic."
  - b. USG Interiors, Inc.; Subsidiary of USG Corporation; "Compasso."
5. Trim Height: As indicated on Drawings.
  6. Color: Match suspension grid color; for metal panels, provide custom color.
  7. Trim and Corners: Trim shall be equal to Armstrong World Industries, Inc. "Axiom Classic Trim," with field-assembled corners.

## 2.7 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
  - 2. USG Interiors, Inc.; Subsidiary of USG Corporation.
- B. Wide-Face, Capped, Double-Web, Steel Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from cold-rolled steel sheet; prepainted, electrolytically-zinc-coated, or hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 653, not less than G30 (Z90) coating designation; with prefinished 15/16-inch-wide metal caps on flanges.
  - 1. Structural Classification: Intermediate duty system.
  - 2. End Condition of Cross Runners: Butt-edge type.
  - 3. Face Design: Flat, flush.
  - 4. Cap Material: aluminum cold-rolled sheet.
  - 5. Cap Finish: Painted white.
- C. Metal Suspension System Standard for Types ACT5 Panels:
  - 1. Structural Classification: Heavy-duty system.
  - 2. Finish: Paint white or black to match other ceiling components.
  - 3. Suspension system shall be manufacturer's standard; supplied by same manufacturer as the acoustical panels.
  - 4. Grid Components: Provide the following basis-of-design USG Interiors, Inc. components, or equivalent:
    - a. Main Runners: "ZXLA26 Heavy Duty."
    - b. 4-Foot-Long Tees: "ZXLA424."
    - c. 2-Foot-Long Tees: "ZXLA224."
    - d. Wall Angle: "M7Z."
  - 5. Aluminum Cap Suspension System for use with FRP Panels: Formed from 15/16 inch wide flanges; other characteristics as follows:
    - a. Structural Classification: Heavy duty system.
    - b. Finish: Baked polyester paint white or black to match adjacent ceiling components.

## 2.8 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
  - 2. USG Interiors, Inc.; Subsidiary of USG Corporation.
- B. Extruded-Aluminum Edge Moldings and Trim: Where indicated, provide manufacturer's extruded-aluminum edge moldings and trim of profile indicated or referenced by manufacturer's designations, including splice plates, corner pieces, and attachment and other clips, complying with seismic design requirements and the following:
  - 1. Aluminum Alloy: Alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with not less than the strength and durability

- properties of aluminum extrusions complying with ASTM B 221 for Alloy and Temper 6063-T5.
2. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Comply with ASTM C 635 and coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing to which acoustical panel ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of acoustical panel ceilings.
- B. Examine acoustical panels before installation. Reject acoustical panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical panels to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install acoustical panel ceilings to comply with ASTM C 636 and seismic design requirements indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions and CISCA's "Ceiling Systems Handbook."
  1. Fire-Rated Assembly: If indicated, install fire-rated ceiling systems according to tested fire-rated design.
- B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:
  1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
  2. Splay hangers only where required and, if permitted with fire-resistance-rated ceilings, to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, counter-splaying, or other equally effective means.
  3. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension-system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
  4. Secure wire hangers to ceiling-suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly either to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.

5. Secure flat, angle, channel, and rod hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for both the structure to which hangers are attached and the type of hanger involved. Install hangers in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
  6. Do not support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms or floor deck. Fasten hangers to cast-in-place hanger inserts, post-installed mechanical or adhesive anchors, or power-actuated fasteners that extend through forms into concrete.
  7. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
  8. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs or any other part of steel deck. Attach hangers to structural members only.
  9. Space hangers not more than 48 inches o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches from ends of each member.
  10. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards and publications.
- C. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers, without attaching to permanent metal forms, steel deck, or steel deck tabs. Fasten bracing wires into concrete with cast-in-place or post-installed anchors.
- D. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical panels.
1. Apply acoustical sealant in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.
  2. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches o.c. and not more than 3 inches from ends, leveling with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
  3. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.
- E. Install suspension-system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
- F. Install acoustical panels with undamaged edges and fit accurately into suspension-system runners and edge moldings. Scribe and cut panels at borders and penetrations to provide a neat, precise fit.
1. Arrange directionally patterned acoustical panels as indicated on Drawings.
  2. For square-edged panels, install panels with edges fully hidden from view by flanges of suspension-system runners and moldings.
  3. For reveal-edged panels on suspension-system runners, install panels with bottom of reveal in firm contact with top surface of runner flanges.
  4. For reveal-edged panels on suspension-system members with box-shaped flanges, install panels with reveal surfaces in firm contact with suspension-system surfaces and panel faces flush with bottom face of runners.
  5. Paint cut edges of panel remaining exposed after installation; precisely match color of exposed panel surfaces using coating furnished or recommended in writing for this purpose by acoustical panel manufacturer.

6. Install hold-down clips for all air lock applications, including vestibules, and in areas required by authorities having jurisdiction, and for fire-resistance ratings; space as recommended by panel manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
7. Protect lighting fixtures and air ducts to comply with requirements indicated for fire-resistance-rated assembly.

#### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical panel ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension-system members. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage. Remove and replace ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION 095113

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



## SECTION 096513 - RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Rubber Wall Base.
  - 2. Rubber Accessory Moldings:

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, not less than 12 inches long.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: Samples are not required for the initial submittal. Architect/Interior Designer will request tile samples prior to final color selection as needed.
- D. Product Schedule: For resilient base and accessory products.

#### 1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Furnish not less than 10 linear feet for every 500 linear feet or fraction thereof, of each type, color, pattern, and size of resilient product installed.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - 1. Coordinate mockups in this Section with mockups specified in other Sections.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store resilient products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F.

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F in spaces to receive resilient products during the following time periods:
  - 1. 48 hours before installation.
  - 2. During installation.
  - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
- C. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. FloorScore Compliance: Resilient base and stair accessories shall comply with requirements of FloorScore certification.
- B. Low-Emitting Materials: Flooring system shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

### 2.2 RUBBER WALL BASE (RB): Where this designation is indicated, provide rubber wall base complying with the following:

- 1. Products: As follows:
  - a. Johnsonite Traditional Wall Base.
  - b. Roppe Wall Base.
- 2. Color and Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors and patterns produced for vinyl wall base complying with requirements indicated. Provide a minimum of 90 color selections.
- 3. Style: Cove with top-set toe.
- 4. Minimum Thickness: 1/8 inch.
- 5. Height: Provide 6-inch-high base in all other areas indicated as "RB" on the Room Finish Schedule, 4-inch-high @ casework.
- 6. Lengths: Lengths standard with manufacturer, but not less than 96 feet.
- 7. Outside Corners: Site-formed.
- 8. Inside Corners: Site-formed.
- 9. Surface: Smooth.

## 2.3 RUBBER MOLDING ACCESSORY

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Johnsonite.
  - 2. Roppe Corporation, USA.
- B. Profile and Dimensions: SRCN-C.
- C. Locations: Nosing at Auditorium and LGI tiered seating and orchestra pit opening.
- D. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors.

## 2.4 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, Portland cement-based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by resilient product manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by resilient-product manufacturer for resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.
  - 1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less
  - 2. Adhesives shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Installation of resilient products indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.

- B. Concrete Substrates for Resilient Stair Accessories: Prepare horizontal surfaces according to ASTM F 710.
  - 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
  - 2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
  - 3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 5 or more than 9pH.
  - 4. Moisture Testing: Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing according to manufacturer's written recommendations, but not less stringent than the following:
    - a. Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test according to ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
    - b. Perform relative humidity test using in situ probes according to ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum 75 percent relative humidity level.
- C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- D. Do not install resilient products until they are the same temperature as the space where they are to be installed.
  - 1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- E. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products.

### 3.3 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.
- B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.
- C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practical without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.
- D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.
- E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.
- F. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of resilient base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.

- G. Preformed Corners: Install preformed corners before installing straight pieces.
- H. Job-Formed Corners:
  - 1. Outside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches in length.
    - a. Form without producing discoloration (whitening) at bends.
  - 2. Inside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches in length.
    - a. Miter corners to minimize open joints.

### 3.4 RESILIENT ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient accessories.
- B. Resilient Molding Accessories: Butt to adjacent materials and tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece. Install reducer strips at edges of floor covering that would otherwise be exposed.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting resilient products.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient-product installation:
  - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from exposed surfaces.
  - 2. Sweep and vacuum horizontal surfaces thoroughly.
  - 3. Damp-mop horizontal surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect resilient products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Cover resilient products subject to wear and foot traffic until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 096513

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 096516 – RESILIENT SHEET FLOORING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Linoleum sheet flooring.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 096513 "Resilient Base and Accessories" for resilient base, reducer strips, and other accessories installed with linoleum floor covering.
  - 2. Section 096536 "Static-Control Resilient Flooring" for resilient floor coverings designed to control electrostatic discharge.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of floor covering. Include floor covering layouts, locations of seams, edges, columns, doorways, enclosing partitions, built-in furniture, cabinets, and cutouts.
  - 1. Show details of special patterns.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of floor covering indicated.
  - 1. Include similar Samples of installation accessories involving color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: In manufacturer's standard size, but not less than 6-by-9-inch sections of each color and pattern of floor covering required.
  - 1. Heat-Welding Bead: Include manufacturer's standard-size Samples, but not less than 9 inches long, of each color required.
- E. Heat-Welded Seam Samples: For each floor covering product and welding bead color and pattern combination required; with seam running lengthwise and in center of 6-by-9-inch. Sample applied to rigid backing and prepared by Installer for this Project.

- F. Product Schedule: For floor covering. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of floor covering to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Sheet Flooring: Furnish not less than 5 linear feet in roll form and in full roll width for each color, pattern, and type of sheet flooring installed.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs workers for this Project who are competent in techniques required by manufacturer for floor covering installation.
  - 1. Engage an installer who employs workers for this Project who are trained or certified by manufacturer for installation techniques required.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 648 or NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.
  - 1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.
- C. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - 1. Build mockups for floor coverings including resilient base accessories.
    - a. Size: Minimum 100 sq. ft. for each type, color, and pattern in locations directed by Architect.

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store floor coverings and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 65 deg F or more than 90 deg F.
  - 1. Sheet Flooring: Store rolls upright.



## 1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 65 deg F or more than 100 deg F, in spaces to receive floor coverings during the following time periods:
  - 1. 72 hours before installation.
  - 2. During installation.
  - 3. 72 hours after installation.
- B. Until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 85 deg F
- C. Close spaces to traffic during floor covering installation.
- D. Close spaces to traffic for 72 hours after floor covering installation.
- E. Install floor coverings after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.; Marmorette with Naturcote finish

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. FloorScore Compliance: Linoleum shall comply with requirements of FloorScore Standard.
- B. Low-Emitting Materials: Flooring system shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

### 2.3 LINOLEUM/ SHEET VINYL FLOOR COVERING

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products equal to Armstrong Medintone w/ Diamond 10 Technology (SV1)
- B. Pattern: Medintone w/ Diamond 10 Technology
- C. Thickness: .080 in./2.0mm

- D. Sheet Flooring: ASTM F 2034, Type I,.
  - 1. Roll Size: In manufacturer's standard length by not less than 6 ft. 7 in.
- E. Seaming Method: Heat welded.
- F. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- G. Seaming Method: Heat welded.
- H. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.4 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by manufacturer to suit products and substrate conditions indicated.
  - 1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of not more than 50 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 2. Adhesives shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Heat-Welding Bead: Solid-strand product of linoleum floor covering manufacturer.
  - 1. Match linoleum floor covering colors.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of floor coverings.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of floor coverings.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F 710.
  - 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
  - 2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with floor covering adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
  - 3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing.
  - 4. Moisture Testing: Perform tests recommended by manufacturer and as follows. Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing.
    - a. Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test, ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
    - b. Perform relative humidity test using in situ probes, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.
- C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound and remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- D. Do not install floor coverings until they are same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
  - 1. Move floor coverings and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed at least 72 hours in advance of installation.
- E. Sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by floor coverings immediately before installation.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing floor coverings.
- B. Scribe and cut floor coverings to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces, permanent fixtures, and built-in furniture including cabinets, pipes, outlets, edgings, thresholds, and nosings.
- C. Extend floor coverings into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings.
- D. Maintain reference markers, holes, or openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on floor coverings as marked on subfloor. Use chalk or other nonpermanent marking device.

- E. Install floor coverings on covers for telephone and electrical ducts and similar items in finished floor areas. Maintain overall continuity of color and pattern between pieces of floor covering installed on covers and adjoining floor covering. Tightly adhere floor covering edges to substrates that abut covers and to cover perimeters.
- F. Adhere floor coverings to substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate to produce a completed installation without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints,
- G. Heat-Welded Seams: Comply with ASTM F 1516. Rout joints and use welding bead to permanently fuse sections into a seamless floor covering. Prepare, weld, and finish seams to produce surfaces flush with adjoining floor covering surfaces.

### 3.4 LINOLEUM SHEET FLOORING INSTALLATION

- A. Unroll sheet floorings and allow them to stabilize before cutting and fitting.
- B. Lay out sheet floorings as follows:
  - 1. Maintain uniformity of floor covering direction.
  - 2. Minimize number of seams; place seams in inconspicuous and low-traffic areas, at least 6 inches away from parallel joints in floor covering substrates.
  - 3. Match edges of floor coverings for color shading at seams.
  - 4. Avoid cross seams.
  - 5. Eliminate deformations that result from hanging method used during drying process (stove bar marks).

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protection of floor coverings.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing floor covering installation:
  - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from exposed surfaces.
  - 2. Sweep and vacuum surfaces thoroughly.
  - 3. Damp-mop surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect floor coverings from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. After allowing drying room film (yellow film caused by linseed oil oxidation) to disappear, cover floor coverings until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 096516

## SECTION 096519 - RESILIENT TILE FLOORING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Static Dissipative Tile (SDT).

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of floor tile. Include floor tile layouts, edges, columns, doorways, enclosing partitions, built-in furniture, cabinets, and cutouts.
  - 1. Show details of special patterns.
- C. Samples: Full-size units of each color and pattern of floor tile required.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of floor tile indicated.
- E. Product Schedule: For floor tile. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of floor tile to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Floor Tile: Furnish one box for every 60 boxes or fraction thereof, of each type, color, and pattern of floor tile installed.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs workers for this Project who are competent in techniques required by manufacturer for floor tile installation and seaming method indicated.
  1. Engage an installer who employs workers for this Project who are trained or certified by floor tile manufacturer for installation techniques required.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store floor tile and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F Store floor tiles on flat surfaces.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F in spaces to receive floor tile during the following time periods:
  1. 48 hours before installation.
  2. During installation.
  3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
- C. Close spaces to traffic during floor tile installation.
- D. Close spaces to traffic for 48 hours after floor tile installation.
- E. Install floor tile after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For resilient tile flooring, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 648 or NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.
  1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.

## 2.2 Static Dissipative Tile (SDT)

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - 1. Armstrong – Static Dissipative Tile
- B. Tile Standard: ASTM F 1066, Class 2, through pattern.
- C. Wearing Surface: Smooth
- D. Thickness: 1/8 inch
- E. Size: 12 in. x 12 in.
- F. Color: As selected by architect from manufacturer's full range of color.

## 2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by floor tile manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by floor tile and adhesive manufacturers to suit floor tile and substrate conditions indicated.
  - 1. Adhesives shall comply with the following limits for VOC content:
    - a. Static Dissipative Tile Adhesives: Full Spread Adhesives – S202 Static Dissipative Tile Adhesive Required. Copper grounding strips shall be provided with the adhesive.
  - 2. Adhesives shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- C. Floor Polish: Provide protective, liquid floor-polish products recommended by floor tile manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of floor tile.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- C. Receive Resilient Tile Floor Manufacturer's written approval of substrate required before installation of any tile flooring. The Carpet and Resilient Tile Contractor is responsible for obtaining the Resilient Tile Flooring Manufacturer's written approval of the floor as an acceptable substrate for the installation of manufacturer's tile product specified. If the floor is not acceptable to the manufacturer, the general contractor is responsible for preparing the floor to receive the new tile, as specified in order paragraphs of this specification, including an underlayment or leveling compound where necessary to meet all requirements for a manufacturer's approval of the substrate.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to floor tile manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F 710.
  1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
  2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
  3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 5 or more than 10 pH.
  4. Moisture Testing: Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing according to floor tile manufacturer's written recommendations, but not less stringent than the following:
    - a. Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test according to ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
    - b. Perform relative humidity test using in situ probes according to ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level.
- C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- D. Do not install floor tiles until they are the same temperature as the space where they are to be installed.



1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient floor tile and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- E. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient floor tile.

### 3.3 FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing floor tile.
- B. Lay out floor tiles from center marks established with principal walls, discounting minor offsets, so tiles at opposite edges of room are of equal width. Adjust as necessary to avoid using cut widths that equal less than one-half tile at perimeter.
  1. Lay tiles in pattern indicated
- C. Match floor tiles for color and pattern by selecting tiles from cartons in the same sequence as manufactured and packaged, if so numbered. Discard broken, cracked, chipped, or deformed tiles.
  1. Lay tiles with grain running in one direction.
- D. Scribe, cut, and fit floor tiles to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces and permanent fixtures including built-in furniture, cabinets, pipes, outlets, and door frames.
- E. Extend floor tiles into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings. Extend floor tiles to center of door openings.
- F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on floor tiles as marked on substrates. Use chalk or other nonpermanent marking device.
- G. Install floor tiles on covers for telephone and electrical ducts, building expansion-joint covers, and similar items in finished floor areas. Maintain overall continuity of color and pattern between pieces of tile installed on covers and adjoining tiles. Tightly adhere tile edges to substrates that abut covers and to cover perimeters.
- H. Adhere floor tiles to flooring substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate to produce a completed installation without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks, and other surface imperfections.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting floor tile.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing floor tile installation:
  1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from exposed surfaces.

2. Sweep and vacuum surfaces thoroughly.
  3. Damp-mop surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect floor tile from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
  - D. Floor Polish: Remove soil, adhesive, and blemishes from floor tile surfaces before applying liquid floor polish.
  - E. Joint Sealant: Apply sealant to resilient terrazzo floor tile perimeter and around columns, at door frames, and at other joints and penetrations.
  - F. Sealers and Finish Coats: Remove soil, visible adhesive, and surface blemishes from resilient floor tile surfaces before applying liquid cleaners, sealers, and finish products.
    1. Finish: Apply 3 coats of liquid floor polish.
  - G. Cover floor tile until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 096519

## SECTION 096565 – ATHLETIC RESILIENT TILE

### FLOORING PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Athletic Resilient Sheet Flooring (ARF).
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 9 Section "Resilient Base and Accessories" for resilient wall base, reducer strips, and other accessories installed with resilient floor tiles.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product specified.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors and patterns available for each type of product indicated.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer to perform work of this Section who has specialized in installing resilient products similar to those required for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain product specified from one source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties without delaying the Work.
- C. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide products with the following fire-test-response characteristics as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated below by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Critical Radiant Flux: 0.45 W/sq. cm or greater when tested per ASTM E 648.
  - 2. Smoke Density: Maximum specific optical density of 450 or less when tested per ASTM E 662.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver products to Project site in manufacturer's original, unopened cartons and containers, each bearing names of product and manufacturer, Project identification, and shipping and handling instructions.
- B. Store products in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained between 50 and 90 deg F and under 50% relative humidity.
- C. Store rolls upright.
- D. Move products into spaces where they will be installed at least 48 hours before installation, unless longer conditioning period is recommended in writing by manufacturer.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain a temperature of not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F in spaces to receive products for at least 48 hours before installation, during installation, and for at least 48 hours after installation, unless manufacturer's written recommendations specify longer time periods. After post-installation period, maintain a temperature of not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
- B. Do not install products until they are at the same temperature as the space where they are to be installed.
- C. Close spaces to traffic during flooring installation and for time period after installation recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- D. Install flooring and accessories after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.
- E. Where demountable partitions and other items are indicated for installation on top of resilient flooring, install before these items are installed.
- F. Do not install flooring over concrete slabs until slabs have cured and are sufficiently dry to bond with adhesive, as determined by flooring manufacturer's recommended bond and moisture test.

## 1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed, are packaged with protective covering for storage, and are identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Furnish full-width rolls of not less than 10 linear feet for each 500 linear feet of each type, color and pattern of flooring installed.
  - 2. Deliver extra materials to Owner.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, those indicated in the Resilient Sheet Flooring Schedule at the end of Part 3.

### 2.2 ATHLETIC RESILIENT SHEET FLOORING

- A. Athletic Resilient Sheet Flooring: Products complying with requirements specified in the Resilient Athletic Rubber Sheet Flooring Schedule.

### 2.3 INSTALLATION ACCESSORIES

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, Portland-cement-based formulation provided or approved by flooring manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended in writing by manufacturer for substrate and conditions indicated.
  - 1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 2. Adhesives shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
  - 3. After all tiles have been installed, roll the floor, in both directions, with a 100-lb. three-section roller.

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where installation of resilient products will occur, with Installer present, for compliance with manufacturer's requirements. Verify that substrates and conditions are satisfactory for resilient product installation and comply with requirements specified.
- B. Concrete Subfloors: Verify that concrete slabs comply with ASTM F 710 and the following:
  - 1. Slab substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, hardeners, and other materials that may interfere with adhesive bond. Determine adhesion and dryness characteristics by performing bond and moisture tests recommended by flooring manufacturer.

2. Subfloor finishes comply with requirements specified in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for slabs receiving resilient flooring.
  3. Subfloors are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits.
- C. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. General: Comply with resilient product manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparing substrates indicated to receive resilient products.
- B. Use trowelable leveling and patching compounds, according to manufacturer's written instructions, to fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates.
- C. Remove coatings, including curing compounds, and other substances that are incompatible with flooring adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
- D. Broom and vacuum clean substrates to be covered immediately before product installation. After cleaning, examine substrates for moisture, alkaline salts, carbonation, or dust. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.3 FLOORING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Scribe, cut, and fit flooring to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces, equipment anchors, floor outlets, and other interruptions of floor surface.
- C. Extend flooring into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings.
- D. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on finish flooring as marked on subfloor. Use chalk or other nonpermanent, nonstaining marking device.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

- A. Perform the following operations immediately after installing resilient products:
  1. Remove debris and other surface blemishes using cleaner recommended by resilient product manufacturers.
  2. Sweep or vacuum floor thoroughly.
  3. Do not wash floor until after time period recommended by flooring manufacturer.

- B. Protect flooring against mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during the remainder of construction period. Use protection methods indicated or recommended in writing by flooring manufacturer.
  - 1. Cover products installed on floor surfaces with undyed, untreated building paper until inspection for Substantial Completion.
  - 2. Do not move heavy and sharp objects directly over floor surfaces. Place plywood or hardboard panels over flooring and under objects while they are being moved. Slide or roll objects over panels without moving panels.
- C. It shall be the responsibility of the General Contractor to protect the surface from damage by other trades before acceptance by the Owner or the Owner's authorized agent.

### 3.5 ATHLETIC RESILIENT FLOORING SCHEDULE

- A. Athletic Resilient Tile Flooring (ARF1): Provide athletic resilient rubber tile flooring as indicated on Room Finish Schedule complying with the following:
  - 1. Products: Provide the following:
    - a. Ecore: EcoMax
  - 2. Color and Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors and patterns produced for rolled goods, complying with requirements indicated.
  - 3. Material: Recycled-Rubber Compound.
  - 4. Traffic-Surface Texture: Smooth.
  - 5. Interlocking Tile: 24 by 24 inches.
  - 6. Hardness: Durometer hardness not less than 85 Shore, Type A per ASTM D 2240 as required according to ASTM F 1344.
  - 7. Coefficient of Friction: At least .75 (dry) per ASTM D-2047.
  - 8. Thickness: 1 inch.
- B. Reducer Strip: Provide reducer strips from manufacturer of flooring material, that reduce edge of tiles from 3/8 and higher to flush at doorways or in areas where rubber flooring adjoining other flooring to give a finished edge.
  - 1. Product: As produced or recommended by manufacturer.
  - 2. Color and Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors and patterns.

END OF SECTION 096565

## SECTION 096723 - RESINOUS FLOORING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Resinous flooring systems.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealants installed at joints in resinous flooring systems.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include manufacturer's technical data, application instructions, and recommendations for each resinous flooring component required.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish required.
- C. Product Schedule: For resinous flooring.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Installer Certificates: Signed by manufacturer certifying that installers comply with specified requirements.
- B. Material Certificates: For each resinous flooring component, from manufacturer.
- C. Material Test Reports: For each resinous flooring system.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For resinous flooring to include in maintenance manuals.



## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of flooring systems required for this Project.
  - 1. Engage an installer who is certified in writing by resinous flooring manufacturer as qualified to apply resinous flooring systems indicated.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain primary resinous flooring materials, including primers, resins, hardening agents, grouting coats, and topcoats, from single source from single manufacturer. Provide secondary materials, including patching and fill material, joint sealant, and repair materials, of type and from source recommended by manufacturer of primary materials.
- C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in original packages and containers, with seals unbroken, bearing manufacturer's labels indicating brand name and directions for storage and mixing with other components.

## 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions for substrate temperature, ambient temperature, moisture, ventilation, and other conditions affecting resinous flooring application.
- B. Lighting: Provide permanent lighting or, if permanent lighting is not in place, simulate permanent lighting conditions during resinous flooring application.
- C. Close spaces to traffic during resinous flooring application and for not less than 24 hours after application unless manufacturer recommends a longer period.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Stonhard, Inc. Stonclad GS with Tectop EF with ME7 Waterproofing System or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Sherwin-Williams Company; General Polymers.
  - 2. Key Resin/Durex.

## 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. VOC Content of Liquid-Applied Flooring Components: Not more than 100 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):

## 2.3 RESINOUS FLOORING (RES1)

- A. Resinous Flooring System Restrooms/ Showers

- 1. Basis of Design: "Stonclad GS with Tectop EF flake system with Stonproof ME7 Waterproofing System" as manufactured by Stonhard, Inc.; nominal 3/16-inch (5-mm) - thick system comprised of a penetrating, moisture tolerant, two-component epoxy primer, a high-performance, three-component mortar consisting of epoxy resin, curing agent and selected, graded aggregates blended with inorganic pigments and two-component, 100-percent solids undercoat, brightly colored flake broadcast and two coats of a high-performance, two-component, clear 100-percent solids epoxy sealer.

- a. Build-up of broadcast- or liquid-rich (slurry) -type systems shall not be accepted.

- B. System Characteristics:

- 1. Color and Pattern: Custom
- 2. Wearing Surface: Texture field.
- 3. Integral Cove Base: 6 inches.
- 4. Overall System Thickness: Nominal 1/4 inch.

- C. System Components: Manufacturer's standard components that are compatible with each other and as follows:

- 1. Body Coat: Epoxy resin with 100-percent solids formulation; equal to Stonhard "Stonclad GS."
- 2. Application Method: Metal trowel-applied, with one coat in thickness of 1/4 inch; aggregates shall be pigmented-blended.
- 3. Undercoat: Pigmented epoxy resin with 100-percent solids formulation; equal to Stonhard "Tectop Undercoat."
- 4. Broadcast Aggregate: Multi-color vinyl flakes broadcast; broadcasted to refusal.
- 5. Topcoats: Two coats of clear gloss epoxy resin with 100-percent solids formulation, with manufacturer's standard anti-slip texture; equal to Stonhard "Tectop Sealer."

## 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Primer: 100-percent solids, with type as recommended by manufacturer for substrate and body coats indicated; equal to Stonhard "Standard Primer."
- B. Waterproofing Membrane: Type as recommended by manufacturer for substrate and primer and body coats indicated.

- C. Patching and Fill Material: Resinous product provided or approved by resinous flooring manufacturer and recommended by manufacturer for application indicated; resinous- based materials only.
  - 1. Cementitious or single-component products shall not be acceptable.
- D. Joint Sealant: Type recommended or provided by resinous flooring manufacturer for type of service and joint condition indicated. Refer to Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. General: Prepare and clean substrates according to resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions for substrate indicated. Provide clean, dry substrate for resinous flooring application.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Provide sound concrete surfaces free of laitance, glaze, efflorescence, curing compounds, form-release agents, dust, dirt, grease, oil, and other contaminants incompatible with resinous flooring.
  - 1. Roughen concrete substrates as follows:
    - a. Shot-blast surfaces with an apparatus that abrades the concrete surface, contains the dispensed shot within the apparatus, and recirculates the shot by vacuum pickup.
    - b. Comply with ASTM C 811 requirements unless manufacturer's written instructions are more stringent.
  - 2. Repair damaged and deteriorated concrete according to resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 3. Verify that concrete substrates are dry and moisture-vapor emissions are within acceptable levels according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - a. Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test, ASTM F 1869. Proceed with application of resinous flooring only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lbs. of water/1000 sq. ft. of slab area in 24 hours.
    - b. Perform plastic sheet test, ASTM D 4263. Proceed with application only after testing indicates absence of moisture in substrates.
    - c. Perform relative humidity test using in situ probes, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.
  - 4. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Verify that concrete substrates have pH within acceptable range. Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with application only after substrates pass testing.

- C. Resinous Materials: Mix components and prepare materials according to resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Use patching and fill material to fill holes and depressions in substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Treat control joints and other nonmoving substrate cracks to prevent cracks from reflecting through resinous flooring according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.2 APPLICATION

- A. General: Apply components of resinous flooring system according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a uniform, monolithic wearing surface of thickness indicated.
  - 1. Coordinate application of components to provide optimum adhesion of resinous flooring system to substrate, and optimum intercoat adhesion.
  - 2. Cure resinous flooring components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent contamination during application and curing processes.
  - 3. At substrate expansion and isolation joints, comply with resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply primer over prepared substrate at manufacturer's recommended spreading rate.
- C. Apply waterproofing membrane, where indicated, in manufacturer's recommended thickness.
  - 1. Apply waterproofing membrane to integral cove base substrates.
- D. Apply reinforcing membrane to substrate cracks.
- E. Integral Cove Base: Apply cove base mix to wall surfaces before applying flooring. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions and details including those for taping, mixing, priming, troweling, sanding, and top-coating of cove base. Round internal and external corners.
  - 1. Integral Cove Base: 6 inches high.
- F. Apply self-leveling slurry body coats in thickness indicated for flooring system.
  - 1. Broadcast aggregates at rate recommended by manufacturer and, after resin is cured, remove excess aggregates to provide surface texture indicated.
- G. Apply grout coat, of type recommended by resinous flooring manufacturer, to fill voids in surface of final body coat and to produce wearing surface indicated.
- H. Apply topcoats in number indicated for flooring system and at spreading rates recommended in writing by manufacturer.

### 3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect resinous flooring from damage and wear during the remainder of construction period. Use protective methods and materials, including temporary covering, recommended in writing by resinous flooring manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 096723

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 096813 – TILE CARPETING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes modular carpet tile. and entrance mat carpet.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 9 Section "Resilient Base and Accessories.
  - 2. Division 9 Section "Resilient Tile Flooring" for resilient wall base and accessories installed with carpet tile.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review methods and procedures related to carpet tile installation including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Review delivery, storage, and handling procedures.
    - b. Review ambient conditions and ventilation procedures.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include manufacturer's written data on physical characteristics, durability, and fade resistance.
  - 2. Include installation recommendations for each type of substrate.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show the following:
  - 1. Columns, doorways, enclosing walls or partitions, built-in cabinets, and locations where cutouts are required in carpet tiles.
  - 2. Carpet tile type, color, and dye lot.
  - 3. Type of subfloor.
  - 4. Type of installation.
  - 5. Pattern of installation.

6. Pattern type, location, and direction.
  7. Pile direction.
  8. Type, color, and location of insets and borders.
  9. Type, color, and location of edge, transition, and other accessory strips.
  10. Transition details to other flooring materials.
- C. Samples: For each of the following products and for each color and texture required. Label each Sample with manufacturer's name, material description, color, pattern, and designation indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
1. Carpet Tile: Full-size Sample.
- D. Product Schedule: For carpet tile. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For carpet tile, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For carpet tiles to include in maintenance manuals. Include the following:
  1. Methods for maintaining carpet tile, including cleaning and stain-removal products and procedures and manufacturer's recommended maintenance schedule.
  2. Precautions for cleaning materials and methods that could be detrimental to carpet tile.

#### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Carpet Tile: Full-size units equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type indicated, but not less than 10 sq. yd.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who is certified by the International Certified Floor covering Installers Association at the Master II certification level.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Ratings: Where indicated, provide carpet tile identical to those of assemblies tested for fire response according to NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.



## 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with CRI 104.

## 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Comply with CRI 104 for temperature, humidity, and ventilation limitations.
- B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install carpet tiles until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- C. Do not install carpet tiles over concrete slabs until slabs have cured and are sufficiently dry to bond with adhesive and concrete slabs have pH range recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- D. Where demountable partitions or other items are indicated for installation on top of carpet tiles, install carpet tiles before installing these items.

## 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty for Carpet Tiles: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of carpet tile installation that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty does not include deterioration or failure of carpet tile due to unusual traffic, failure of substrate, vandalism, or abuse.
  - 2. Failures include, but are not limited to, more than 10 percent edge raveling, snags, runs, dimensional stability, excess static discharge, loss of tuft bind strength, loss of face fiber, and delamination.
  - 3. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CARPET TILE (CPT1)

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products equal to Shaw Contract .
  - 1. Collection: Material Matters
  - 2. Pattern: Haze Tile, NO. 5T037
  - 3. Color: Stardust NO. 37496
  - 4. Size: 18 inch by 36 inch
  - 5. Installation Pattern: Brick
  - 6. Backing: Ecoworx tile

## 2.2 CARPET TILE (CPT2)

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products equal to Shaw Contract .
  - 1. Collection: Material Matters
  - 2. Pattern: Haze Tile, NO. 5T037
  - 3. Color: Myth, NO. 37505
  - 4. Size: 18 inch by 36 inch
  - 5. Installation Pattern: Brick
  - 6. Backing: Ecoworx tile

## 2.3 ENTRANCE MAT (EM)

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products equal to Shaw Contract.
  - 1. Collection: Steppin Out
  - 2. Pattern: Welcome II, NO. 5T031
  - 3. Color: Navy, NO. 31485
  - 4. Size: 24 inch by 24 inch
  - 5. Installation Pattern: Quarter Turned
  - 6. Backing: Ecoworx tile

## 2.4 INSTALLATION ACCESSORIES

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- B. Adhesives: Carpet shall be installed with manufactures recommended adhesive.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, alkalinity range, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting carpet tile performance. Examine carpet tile for type, color, pattern, and potential defects.
- B. Concrete Subfloors: Verify that concrete slabs comply with ASTM F 710 and the following:
  - 1. Slab substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, hardeners, and other materials that may interfere with adhesive bond. Determine adhesion and dryness characteristics by performing bond and moisture tests recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.

2. Subfloor finishes comply with requirements specified in Division Section 3 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for slabs receiving carpet tile.
  3. Subfloors are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits.
- C. For wood subfloors, where occur, verify the following:
1. Underlayment over subfloor complies with requirements specified in Division Section 6 "Rough Carpentry."
  2. Underlayment surface is free of irregularities and substances that may interfere with adhesive bond or show through surface.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. General: Comply with CRI 104, Section 6.2, "Site Conditions; Floor Preparation," and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparing substrates indicated to receive carpet tile installation.
- B. Use trowelable leveling and patching compounds, according to manufacturer's written instructions, to fill cracks, holes, depressions, and protrusions in substrates. Fill or level cracks, holes and depressions 1/8 inch wide or wider and protrusions more than 1/32 inch unless more stringent requirements are required by manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Remove coatings, including curing compounds, and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, without using solvents. Use mechanical methods recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.
- D. Clean metal substrates of grease, oil, soil and rust, and prime if directed by adhesive manufacturer. Rough sand painted metal surfaces and remove loose paint. Sand aluminum surfaces, to remove metal oxides, immediately before applying adhesive.
- E. Broom and vacuum clean substrates to be covered immediately before installing carpet tile.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with CRI 104, Section 14, "Carpet Modules," and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Installation Method: As recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.
1. Carpet installation shall begin at the center point of the room and work out to the perimeter walls. Installation pattern to be ashlar.
- C. Maintain dye lot integrity. Do not mix dye lots in same area.
- D. Cut and fit carpet tile to butt tightly to vertical surfaces, permanent fixtures, and built-in furniture including cabinets, pipes, outlets, edgings, thresholds, and nosings. Bind or seal cut edges as recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.

- E. Extend carpet tile into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, open-bottomed obstructions, removable flanges, alcoves, and similar openings.
- F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on finish flooring as marked on subfloor. Use nonpermanent, nonstaining marking device.
- G. Install pattern parallel to walls and borders.
- H. Stagger joints of carpet tiles so carpet tile grid is offset from access flooring panel grid. Do not fill seams of access flooring panels with carpet adhesive; keep seams free of adhesive.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Perform the following operations immediately after installing carpet tile:
  - 1. Remove excess adhesive, seam sealer, and other surface blemishes using cleaner recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
  - 2. Remove yarns that protrude from carpet tile surface.
  - 3. Vacuum carpet tile using commercial machine with face-beater element.
- B. Protect installed carpet tile to comply with CRI 104, Section 16, "Protecting Indoor Installations."
- C. Protect carpet tile against damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during the remainder of construction period. Use protection methods indicated or recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 096813

## SECTION 097200 - WALL COVERINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Graphic vinyl wall covering.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include data on physical characteristics, durability, fade resistance, and fire-test-response characteristics.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show location and extent of each wall-covering type. Indicate pattern placement seams and termination points.
- C. Samples: For each type of wall covering and for each color, pattern, texture, and finish specified, full width by 36-inch long in size, with the appropriate material name and SKU information.
- D. For Owners approval, a copy of maintenance instructions as provided by Level Digital Wallcoverings.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each wall covering, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For wall coverings to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Wall-Covering Materials: For each type, color, texture, and finish, full width by length to equal to 5 percent of amount installed.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for installation.
  - 1. Build mockups for each type of wall covering on each substrate required. Comply with requirements in ASTM F 1141 for appearance shading characteristics.
  - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install wall coverings until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature (65-85 degrees Fahrenheit) and humidity conditions at levels (not more than 50%) intended for occupants after Project completion during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Wall Conditions: Gypsum board finish shall be completed to comply with AWCI Specification, Level 4 or higher. See Manufacturer's Installation Instructions for additional details.
- C. Lighting: Do not install wall covering until lighting that matches conditions intended for occupants after Project completion is provided on the surfaces to receive wall covering.
- D. Ventilation: Provide continuous ventilation during installation and for not less than the time recommended by wall-covering manufacturer for full drying or curing.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Low-Emitting Materials: Wall-covering system shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's (formerly, the California Department of Health Services') "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing identical wall coverings applied with identical adhesives to substrates according to test method indicated below by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
    - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
    - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 45 or less.
  - 2. Fire-Growth Contribution: No flashover and heat and smoke release according to NFPA 265

## 2.2 VINYL WALL COVERING (VWC)

- A. Description: Provide products in rolls from same production run and complying with the following:
  - 1. Arc Com
- B. Pattern: Custom Image provided by owner. See drawings for location and sample of custom image.
- C. Name/ Style: Custom image provided by owner
- D. Color: Limit of up to 8 colors provided
- E. Material: Type II Commercial Viny ACD-7706
- F. Repeat: None, Image should be placed on entire wall
- G. Field verify and wall dimensions are required.

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Adhesive: Mildew-resistant, nonstaining, strippable adhesive, for use with specific wall covering and substrate application indicated and as recommended in writing by wall-covering manufacturer.
  - 1. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
  - 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's (formerly, the California Department of Health Services') "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

- B. Primer/Sealer: Mildew resistant, complying with requirements in Section 099123 "Interior Painting" and recommended in writing by primer/sealer and wall-covering manufacturers for intended substrate.
- C. Seam Tape: As recommended in writing by wall-covering manufacturer.
- D. Stainless Steel Corner Guards: Surface-Mounted, Stainless Steel Corner Guards: 16 gauge, Type 304 with a No. 4 satin finish. 3 1/2-inch legs, Full height to occur at Vinyl Wallcovering images. Mounted with manufacturer's recommended construction adhesive. Provide where indicated on the Drawings.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Construction Specialties Group "Acrovyn CO-8" or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Pawling Corporation.
    - b. InPro Corporation.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for levelness, wall plumbness, maximum moisture content, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation.
- B. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of wall covering, including dirt, oil, grease, mold, mildew, and incompatible primers.
- C. Prepare substrates to achieve a smooth, dry, clean, structurally sound surface free of flaking, unsound coatings, cracks, and defects.
  - 1. Moisture Content: Maximum of 7 percent on new plaster, concrete, and concrete masonry units when tested with an electronic moisture meter.
  - 2. Plaster: Allow new plaster to cure. Neutralize areas of high alkalinity. Prime with primer recommended in writing by primer/sealer manufacturer and wall-covering manufacturer.
  - 3. Gyp20sum Board: Prime with primer as recommended in writing by primer/sealer manufacturer and wall-covering manufacturer.
  - 4. Painted Surfaces: Treat areas susceptible to pigment bleeding.



- D. Check painted surfaces for pigment bleeding. Sand gloss, semigloss, and eggshell finish with fine sandpaper.
- E. Remove hardware and hardware accessories, electrical plates and covers, light fixture trims, and similar items.
- F. Acclimatize wall-covering materials by removing them from packaging in the installation areas not less than 24 hours before installation.

### 3.3 WALL-COVERING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with wall-covering manufacturers' written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated.
- B. Cut wall-covering strips in roll number sequence. Change the roll numbers at partition breaks and corners.
- C. Install strips in sequential order
- D. Install wall covering without lifted or curling edges and without visible shrinkage.
- E. Install seams vertical and plumb at least **6 inches** from outside corners and **6 inches** from inside corners unless a change of pattern or color exists at corner. Horizontal seams are not permitted.
- F. Trim edges and seams for color uniformity, pattern match, and tight closure. Butt seams without overlaps or gaps between strips.
- G. Fully bond wall covering to substrate. Remove air bubbles, wrinkles, blisters, and other defects.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Remove excess adhesive at seams, perimeter edges, and adjacent surfaces.
- B. Use cleaning methods recommended in writing by wall-covering manufacturer.
- C. Replace strips that cannot be cleaned.
- D. Reinstall hardware and hardware accessories, electrical plates and covers, light fixture trims, and similar items.

END OF SECTION 097200

## SECTION 097723 - FABRIC-WRAPPED PANELS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes shop-fabricated, fabric-wrapped wall panels.
- B. Decorative 3-D Sculpted Acoustical Wall Panels

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of fabric facing, panel edge, core material, and mounting indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fabric-wrapped wall panels. Include mounting devices and details; details at panel head, base, joints, and corners; and details at ceiling, floor base, and wall intersections. Indicate panel edge and core materials.
  - 1. Include elevations showing panel sizes and direction of fabric weave and pattern matching.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of fabric facing from fabric-wrapped, wall panel manufacturer's full range.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Elevations and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Electrical outlets, switches, and thermostats.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of fabric-wrapped wall panel, from manufacturer.
- C. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For fabric-wrapped wall panels to include in maintenance manuals. Include fabric manufacturers' written cleaning and stain-removal recommendations.

## 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Acoustical Wall Panels: Provide 1 full-size unit of each size acoustical panel indicated on the drawings. Provide to owner for attic stock. Contractor shall include this quantity on the submittal for review/approval prior to manufacturing.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain fabric-wrapped wall panels from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide fabric-wrapped wall panels meeting the following as determined by testing identical products by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:
  - 1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing per ASTM E 84.
    - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
    - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
  - 2. Fire Growth Contribution: Meeting acceptance criteria of local code and authorities having jurisdiction when tested according to NFPA 265.
- C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with fabric and fabric-wrapped, wall panel manufacturers' written instructions for minimum and maximum temperature and humidity requirements for shipment, storage, and handling.
- B. Deliver materials and panels in unopened bundles and store in a temperature-controlled dry place with adequate air circulation.

## 1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install fabric-wrapped wall panels until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work at and above ceilings is

complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.

- B. Lighting: Do not install fabric-wrapped wall panels until a permanent level of lighting is provided on surfaces to receive fabric-wrapped wall panels.
- C. Air-Quality Limitations: Protect fabric-wrapped wall panels from exposure to airborne odors such as tobacco smoke, and install panels under conditions free from odor contamination of ambient air.
- D. Field Measurements: Verify locations of fabric-wrapped wall panels and actual dimensions of openings and penetrations by field measurements before fabrication.

#### 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of fabric-wrapped wall panels that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Fabric sagging, distorting, or releasing from panel edge.
    - b. Warping of core.
  - 2. Warranty Period: 2 years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 FABRIC-WRAPPED WALL PANELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - 2. MBI Products Company, Inc.
  - 3. Sound Concepts.
  - 4. Sound Seal.
  - 5. Decoustics.
  - 6. Wall Technology, Inc.; an Owens Corning company.
- B. General Requirements for Fabric-Wrapped Wall Panels: Panels shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

- C. Back-Mounted, High-Impact Wall Acoustical Wall Panels – Multi-Purpose application only: Manufacturer's standard panel construction consisting of facing material laminated to front face, edges, and back border of dimensionally stable, rigid glass- fiber board core; with edges being impact resistant to reinforce panel perimeter against warpage and damage; and complying with the following requirements.
1. Products: Provide one of the following:
    - a. Sound Seal-S-2100.
    - b. Sound Concepts (equal to Sound Seal Product listed above).
    - c. Solutions 600, Capual Corp. (equal to Sound Seal Product listed above).
    - d. Wall Technology (equal to Sound Seal Product listed above).
    - e. MBI Products Company, Inc.
    - f. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  2. Facing Material: Manufacturer's standard woven polyester fabric from same dye lot; color and pattern as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  3. Nominal Core Density: 6 to 7 lb/cu. ft.
  4. Nominal Overall Panel Thickness and Noise Reduction Coefficient: 2-1/8 inch and not less than NRC 1.05
  5. Panel Width: As indicated on the Drawings.
  6. Panel Height: As indicated on the Drawings.
  7. Edge Detail: Beveled.
  8. Corner Detail: Square.
  9. Fabric: As selected from Guilford of Maine FR701, Style 2100.
  10. Mounting: Use adhesive and Sound Seal Impaling Clip.
- F. Decorative 3-D Sculpted Acoustical Wall Panels: Corridor A119 application only: Manufacturer's standard panel construction consisting of facing material laminated to front face, edges, and back border of dimensionally stable, rigid glass- fiber board core; with edges being impact resistant to reinforce panel perimeter against warpage and damage; and complying with the following requirements.
1. Products: Provide one of the following:
    - a. Acoustic Enterprises Inc., 7601 Miller Drive, Frederick, CO 80504. Telephone (888) 287-4183, [www.dimensionalachoustics.com](http://www.dimensionalachoustics.com).
    - b. Substitutions: Not Permitted.
  2. Fabric Wrapped Fiberglass Panels: Dimensional Acoustic Wall Panels. Fiberglass core of 6-7 pcf plus 1/8" 16 lb fiberglass with custom profiled design pattern on face, with hardened edges, seamless finish material wrapped and bonded to back side of panels. The acoustical panels are an exclusive Dimensional Acoustic Panel per architectural design and manufactured under a Patent Pending.
    - a. Nominal Overall Panel Thickness and Noise Reduction Coefficient: 2 inch and not less than NRC 1.05
    - b. Panel Width: Refer to Interior Elevation Drawings

- c. Panel Height: Refer to Interior Elevation Drawings
- d. Edge Detail: Square
- e. Corner Detail: Square
- f. 3-D Pattern: 805 Steps
- g. Fabric: As selected from Guilford of Maine Anchorage 2335
- h. Mounting: Use adhesive and Sound Seal Impaling Clip

## 2.2 FABRICATION

- A. General: Use manufacturer's standard construction except as otherwise indicated; with facing material applied to face, edges, and back border of dimensionally stable core; and with rigid edges to reinforce panel perimeter against warpage and damage.
- B. Core-Face Layer: Evenly stretched over core face and edges and securely attached to core; free from puckers, ripples, wrinkles, or sags.
- C. Facing Material and Lining Material: Apply fabric fully covering visible surfaces of panel; with material stretched straight, on the grain, tight, square, and free from puckers, ripples, wrinkles, sags, blisters, seams, adhesive, or other visible distortions or foreign matter.
  - 1. Square Corners: Tailor corners. Heat seal vinyl fabric seams at corners.
  - 2. Radius and Other Non-Square Corners: Attach material so there are no seams or gathering of material.
  - 3. Fabrics with Directional or Repeating Patterns or Directional Weave: Mark fabric top and attach fabric in same direction so pattern or weave matches in adjacent panels.
- D. Dimensional Tolerances of Finished Panels: Plus or minus 1/16 inch for the following:
  - 1. Thickness.
  - 2. Edge straightness.
  - 3. Overall length and width.
  - 4. Squareness from corner to corner.
  - 5. Chords, radii, and diameters.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fabric, fabricated panels, substrates, areas, and conditions, for compliance with requirements, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of fabric-wrapped wall panels.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fabric-wrapped wall panels in locations indicated with vertical surfaces and edges plumb, top edges level and in alignment with other panels, faces flush, and scribed to fit adjoining work accurately at borders and at penetrations.
- B. Comply with fabric-wrapped, wall panel manufacturer's written instructions for installation of panels using type of mounting devices indicated. Mount panels securely to supporting substrate.
- C. Align and level fabric pattern and grain among adjacent panels.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Variation from Plumb and Level: Plus or minus
- B. Variation of Panel Joints from Hairline: Not more than 1/16 inch wide.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clip loose threads; remove pills and extraneous materials.
- B. Clean panels on completion of installation to remove dust and other foreign materials according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 097723

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



## SECTION 099123 – PAINTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes surface preparation and field painting of exposed exterior and interior items and surfaces.
  - 1. Surface preparation, priming, and finish coats specified in this Section are in addition to shop priming and surface treatment specified in other Sections.
- B. Paint exposed surfaces, except where these Specifications indicate that the surface or material is not to be painted or is to remain natural. If an item or a surface is not specifically mentioned, paint the item or surface the same as similar adjacent materials or surfaces. If a color of finish is not indicated, Architect will supply a color selection.
  - 1. Painting includes field painting of exposed bare and covered pipes and ducts (including color coding), hangers, exposed steel and iron supports, and surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment that do not have a factory-applied final finish.
- C. Do not paint prefinished items, concealed surfaces, finished metal surfaces, operating parts, and labels.
  - 1. Prefinished items include the following factory-finished components:
    - a. Architectural woodwork.
    - b. Acoustical wall panels.
    - c. Metal toilet enclosures.
    - d. Metal lockers.
    - e. Unit kitchens.
    - f. Elevator entrance doors and frames.
    - g. Elevator equipment.
    - h. Light fixtures.
  - 2. Concealed surfaces include walls or ceilings in the following generally inaccessible spaces:
    - a. Foundation spaces.
    - b. Furred areas.
    - c. Ceiling plenums.
    - d. Utility tunnels.
    - e. Pipe spaces.
    - f. Duct shafts.
    - g. Elevator shafts.

3. Finished metal surfaces include the following:
  - a. Anodized aluminum.
  - b. Stainless steel.
  - c. Chromium plate.
  - d. Copper and copper alloys.
  - e. Bronze and brass.
4. Operating parts include moving parts of operating equipment and the following:
  - a. Valve and damper operators.
  - b. Linkages.
  - c. Sensing devices.
  - d. Motor and fan shafts.
5. Labels: Do not paint over UL, FMG, or other code-required labels or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.

D. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 5 Sections for shop priming of metal substrates with primers specified in this Section.
2. Division 2 Section "Cement Concrete Pavement" for traffic-marking paint.
3. Division 5 Section "Structural Steel" for shop priming structural steel.
4. Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for shop priming ferrous metal.
5. Division 6 Section "Architectural Woodwork" for shop priming interior architectural woodwork.
6. Division 8 Section "Steel Doors and Frames" for factory priming steel doors and frames.
7. Division 9 Section "Gypsum Board Assemblies" for surface preparation of gypsum board.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. General: Standard coating terms defined in ASTM D 16 apply to this Section.

1. Flat refers to a lusterless or matte finish with a gloss range below 15 when measured at an 85-degree meter.
2. Eggshell refers to low-sheen finish with a gloss range between 20 and 35 when measured at a 60-degree meter.
3. Semigloss refers to medium-sheen finish with a gloss range between 35 and 70 when measured at a 60-degree meter.
4. Full gloss refers to high-sheen finish with a gloss range more than 70 when measured at a 60-degree meter.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each paint system indicated. Include block fillers and primers.

1. Material List: An inclusive list of required coating materials. Indicate each material and cross-reference specific coating, finish system, and application. Identify each material by manufacturer's catalog number and general classification. Submit in same format as specification.

2. Manufacturer's Information: Manufacturer's technical information, including label analysis and instructions for handling, storing, and applying each coating material.
  3. Certification by the manufacturer that products supplied comply with local regulations controlling use of volatile organic compounds (VOC's).
- B. Colors: Match Architect's color selections.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each color and material to be applied, with texture to simulate actual conditions, on representative Samples of the actual substrate.
1. Submit 4 sets of samples of each final color and finish.
- D. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in the "Quality Assurance" Article to be demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- E. Certifications:
1. Furnish a letter from the paint manufacturer or their factory representative certifying that the paint system proposed for this project are equal to or better than the specified systems in appearance and performance levels. Submit proof of equivalency for approval including generic type, descriptive information, VOC content, performance data, solids by volume, and recommended film thickness. Submittals not accompanied by this certification will be returned, "REJECTED."
- F. Coating Maintenance Manual: Upon conclusion of the project, the Contractor or paint manufacturer/supplier shall furnish a coating maintenance manual, such as Sherwin-Williams "Custodian Project Color and Product Information" report or equal. Manual shall include an Area Summary with finish schedule, Area Detail designating where each product/color/finish was used, product data pages, Material Safety Data Sheets, care and cleaning instructions, touch-up procedures, and color samples of each color and finish used.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Applicator Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in applying paints and coatings similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in applications with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain block fillers and primers for each coating system from the same manufacturer as the finish coats.
- C. Benchmark Samples (Mockups): Provide a full-coat benchmark finish sample for each type of coating and substrate required. Comply with procedures specified in PDCA P5. Duplicate finish of approved sample Submittals.
1. Architect will select one room or surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each type of coating and substrate.

- a. Provide mock up of first and second coats of block filler or primer for approval of application.
  - b. Wall Surfaces: Provide samples on at least 100 sq. ft.
  - c. Small Areas and Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.
- D. Apply benchmark samples, according to requirements for the completed Work, after permanent lighting and other environmental services have been activated. Provide required sheen, color, and texture on each surface. Where materials are being applied over previously painted surfaces, apply mock up samples and perform field testing to check for compatibility, adhesion, and film integrity of the new materials to existing painted surfaces. Report in writing any condition that may affect application, appearance, or performance of the specified coating system.
  - 1. After finishes are accepted, Architect will use the room or surface to evaluate coating systems of a similar nature.
  - 2. Final approval of colors will be from benchmark samples.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials to Project site in manufacturer's original, unopened packages and containers bearing manufacturer's name and label and the following information:
  - 1. Product name or title of material.
  - 2. Product description (generic classification or binder type).
  - 3. Manufacturer's stock number and date of manufacture.
  - 4. Contents by volume, for pigment and vehicle constituents.
  - 5. Thinning instructions.
  - 6. Application instructions.
  - 7. Color name and number.
  - 8. VOC content.
- B. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in a well-ventilated area at a minimum ambient temperature of 45 deg F. Maintain storage containers in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - 1. Protect from freezing. Keep storage area neat and orderly. Remove oily rags and waste daily.
- C. Take necessary measures to ensure that workers and work areas are protected from fire and health hazards resulting from handling, mixing, and application.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Apply waterborne paints only when temperatures of surfaces to be painted and surrounding air are between 50 and 90 deg F.
- B. Apply solvent-thinned paints only when temperatures of surfaces to be painted and surrounding air are between 45 and 95 deg F.

- C. Do not apply paint in snow, rain, fog, or mist; or when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; or at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.
  - 1. Painting may continue during inclement weather if surfaces and areas to be painted are enclosed and heated within temperature limits specified by manufacturer during application and drying periods.

## 1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra paint materials from the same production run as the materials applied and in the quantities described below. Package with protective covering for storage and identify with labels describing contents. Deliver left-over paint materials to Owner.
  - 1. Quantity: Furnish Owner with extra paint materials in quantities indicated below:
    - a. Exterior: 2 gallons of each color applied.
    - b. Interior: 1 case of each color applied.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products from one of the following manufacturers. Sherwin-Williams is the basis of design and establishes the standard of quality required.
- B. Manufacturers' Names:
  - 1. Sherwin Williams (SW).
  - 2. Duron.
  - 3. MAB.
  - 4. Glidden.

### 2.2 PAINT MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Material Compatibility: Provide block fillers, primers, and finish-coat materials that are compatible with one another and with the substrates indicated under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by manufacturer based on testing and field experience. Each system should be from the same manufacturer.
- B. Material Quality: Provide manufacturer's best-quality paint material of the various coating types specified that are factory formulated and recommended by manufacturer for application indicated. Paint-material containers not displaying manufacturer's product identification will not be acceptable.
  - 1. Proprietary Names: Use of manufacturer's proprietary product names to designate colors or materials is not intended to imply that products named are required to be used to the exclusion of equivalent products of other manufacturers. Furnish manufacturer's material data and certificates of performance for proposed substitutions.

- C. Colors: Match Architect's samples.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for paint application. Comply with procedures specified in PDCA P4.
  - 1. Proceed with paint application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and surfaces receiving paint are thoroughly dry.
  - 2. Start of painting will be construed as Applicator's acceptance of surfaces and conditions within a particular area.
- B. Coordination of Work: Review other Sections in which primers are provided to ensure compatibility of the total system for various substrates. On request, furnish information on characteristics of finish materials to ensure use of compatible primers.
  - 1. Notify Architect about anticipated problems when using the materials specified over substrates primed by others.
- C. Where materials are being applied over previously painted surfaces, apply mock up samples and perform field testing to check for compatibility, adhesion, and film integrity of the new materials to existing painted surfaces. Report in writing any condition that may affect application, appearance, or performance of the specified coating system.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. General: Remove hardware and hardware accessories, plates, machined surfaces, lighting fixtures, and similar items already installed that are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of the item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
  - 1. After completing painting operations in each space or area, reinstall items removed using workers skilled in the trades involved.
- B. Cleaning: Before applying paint or other surface treatments, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of the various coatings. Remove oil and grease before cleaning. All surfaces must be clean, dry, and free of all oil, grease, surface contaminants, and substances that could impair adhesion.
  - 1. Schedule cleaning and painting so dust and other contaminants from the cleaning process will not fall on wet, newly painted surfaces.
  - 2. All previously coated surfaces shall clean, dry, dull, and in sound condition prior to coating. All loose paints (either visible or not) shall be removed to expose a sound surface for repainting. All smooth, glossy surfaces shall be abraded to impart a surface profile that will promote adhesion of the subsequent coating system. A test-patch shall be applied prior to a full installation to assure adequate adhesion will be achieved.

- C. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be painted according to manufacturer's written instructions for each particular substrate condition and as specified.
1. Provide barrier coats over incompatible primers or remove and reprime.
  2. Cementitious Materials: Prepare concrete, concrete unit masonry, cement plaster, and mineral-fiber-reinforced cement panel surfaces to be painted. Remove efflorescence, chalk, dust, dirt, grease, oils, and release agents. Roughen as required to remove glaze. If hardeners or sealers have been used to improve curing, use mechanical methods of surface preparation.
    - a. Use abrasive blast-cleaning methods if recommended by paint manufacturer.
    - b. Determine alkalinity and moisture content of surfaces by performing appropriate tests. If surfaces are sufficiently alkaline to cause the finish paint to blister and burn, correct this condition before application. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
  3. Wood: Clean surfaces of dirt, oil, and other foreign substances with scrapers, mineral spirits, and sandpaper, as required. Sand surfaces exposed to view smooth and dust off.
    - a. Scrape and clean small, dry, seasoned knots, and apply a thin coat of white shellac or other recommended knot sealer before applying primer. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.
    - b. Prime, stain, or seal wood to be painted immediately on delivery. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and back sides of wood, including cabinets, counters, cases, and paneling.
    - c. If transparent finish is required, back-prime with spar varnish.
    - d. Back-prime paneling on interior partitions where masonry, plaster, or other wet wall construction occurs on back side.
    - e. Seal tops, bottoms, and cutouts of unprimed wood doors with a heavy coat of varnish or sealer immediately on delivery.
  4. Ferrous Metals: Clean ungalvanized ferrous-metal surfaces that have not been shop coated; remove oil, grease, dirt, loose mill scale, and other foreign substances. Use solvent or mechanical cleaning methods that comply with SSPC's recommendations.
    - a. Power Tool Clean steel surfaces clean as recommended by paint system manufacturer and according to SSPC-SP 3.
    - b. Treat bare and sandblasted or pickled clean metal with a metal treatment wash coat before priming.
    - c. Touch up bare areas and shop-applied prime coats that have been damaged. Wire-brush, clean with solvents recommended by paint manufacturer, and touch up with same primer as the shop coat.
  5. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean galvanized surfaces with nonpetroleum-based solvents so surface is free of oil and surface contaminants. Remove pretreatment from galvanized sheet metal fabricated from coil stock by mechanical methods.
  6. Interior Grilles, Louvers and Sprinkler Escutcheons shall be painted in the field to match adjacent material color. Contractor shall prep and prime factory finished items to receive new paint finish in the field.

- D. Material Preparation: Mix and prepare paint materials according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Maintain containers used in mixing and applying paint in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  2. Stir material before application to produce a mixture of uniform density. Stir as required during application. Do not stir surface film into material. If necessary, remove surface film and strain material before using.
  3. Use only thinners approved by paint manufacturer and only within recommended limits.
- E. Tinting: Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to simplify identification of each coat when multiple coats of same material are applied. Tint undercoats to match the color of the finish coat, but provide sufficient differences in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. General: Apply paint according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use applicators and techniques best suited for substrate and type of material being applied.
1. Paint colors, surface treatments, and finishes are indicated in the paint schedules.
  2. Do not paint over dirt, rust, scale, grease, moisture, scuffed surfaces, or conditions detrimental to formation of a durable paint film.
  3. Provide finish coats that are compatible with primers used.
  4. The term "exposed surfaces" includes areas visible when permanent or built-in fixtures, grilles, convector covers, covers for finned-tube radiation, and similar components are in place. Extend coatings in these areas, as required, to maintain system integrity and provide desired protection.
  5. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture the same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation of equipment, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
  6. Paint interior surfaces of ducts with a flat, nonspecular black paint where visible through registers or grilles.
  7. Paint back sides of access panels and removable or hinged covers to match exposed surfaces.
  8. Finish exterior doors on tops, bottoms, and side edges the same as exterior faces.
  9. Finish interior of wall and base cabinets and similar field-finished casework to match exterior.
  10. Sand lightly between each succeeding enamel or varnish coat.
- B. Scheduling Painting: Apply first coat to surfaces that have been cleaned, pretreated, or otherwise prepared for painting as soon as practicable after preparation and before subsequent surface deterioration.
1. The number of coats and film thickness required are the same regardless of application method. Do not apply succeeding coats until previous coat has cured as recommended by manufacturer. If sanding is required to produce a smooth, even surface according to manufacturer's written instructions, sand between applications.
  2. Omit primer over metal surfaces that have been shop primed and touchup painted.



3. If undercoats, stains, or other conditions show through final coat of paint, apply additional coats until paint film is of uniform finish, color, and appearance. Give special attention to ensure that edges, corners, crevices, welds, and exposed fasteners receive a dry film thickness equivalent to that of flat surfaces.
  4. Allow sufficient time between successive coats to permit proper drying. Do not recoat surfaces until paint has dried to where it feels firm, and does not deform or feel sticky under moderate thumb pressure, and until application of another coat of paint does not cause undercoat to lift or lose adhesion.
- C. Application Procedures: Apply paints and coatings by brush, roller, spray, or other applicators according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Brushes: Use brushes best suited for type of material applied. Use brush of appropriate size for surface or item being painted.
  2. Rollers: Use rollers of carpet, velvet-back, or high-pile sheep's wool as recommended by manufacturer for material and texture required.
  3. Spray Equipment: Use airless spray equipment with orifice size as recommended by manufacturer for material and texture required.
- D. Minimum Coating Thickness: Apply paint materials no thinner than manufacturer's recommended spreading rate to achieve dry film thickness indicated. Provide total dry film thickness of the entire system as recommended by manufacturer.
- E. Mechanical and Electrical Work: Painting of mechanical and electrical work is limited to items exposed in equipment rooms and occupied spaces.
- F. Mechanical items to be painted include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Exposed uninsulated metal piping.
  2. Exposed uninsulated plastic piping.
  3. Exposed pipe hangers and supports.
  4. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.
  5. Visible portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets.
  6. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having "all-service jacket" or other paintable jacket material.
  7. Mechanical equipment that is indicated to have a factory-primed finish for field painting.
- G. Electrical items to be painted include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Switchgear.
  2. Panel boards.
  3. Electrical equipment that is indicated to have a factory-primed finish for field painting.
- H. All interior and exterior exposed gypsum wallboard, including any bulkheads and soffits to be painted.
- I. All interior and exterior ferrous metal to be painted including any lintels, railings, grilles, and louvers (does not include factory or pre-finished items).

- J. All hollow metal doors and frames, interior and exterior, to be painted.
- K. Block Fillers: Apply block fillers to concrete masonry block at a rate to ensure complete coverage with pores filled.
- L. Prime Coats: Before applying finish coats, apply a prime coat, as recommended by manufacturer, to material that is required to be painted or finished and that has not been prime coated by others. Recoat primed and sealed surfaces where evidence of suction spots or unsealed areas in first coat appears, to ensure a finish coat with no burn-through or other defects due to insufficient sealing.
- M. Pigmented (Opaque) Finishes: Completely cover surfaces as necessary to provide a smooth, opaque surface of uniform finish, color, appearance, and coverage. Cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections will not be acceptable.
- N. Transparent (Clear) Finishes: Use multiple coats to produce a glass-smooth surface film of even luster. Provide a finish free of laps, runs, cloudiness, color irregularity, brush marks, orange peel, nail holes, or other surface imperfections.
  - 1. Provide satin finish for final coats.
- O. Completed Work: Match approved samples for color, texture, and coverage. Remove, refinish, or repaint work not complying with requirements.
- P. Marking and Identification: Fire walls, fire barriers, fire partitions, smoke barriers and smoke partitions or any other wall required to have protected openings or penetrations shall be effectively and permanently identified with signs or stenciling. Such identification shall:
  - 1. Be located in accessible concealed floor, floor-ceiling or attic spaces;
  - 2. Be repeated at intervals not exceeding 30 feet measured horizontally along the wall or partition; and
  - 3. Include lettering not less than 0.5 inch in height, incorporating the suggested wording: "FIRE AND/OR SMOKE BARRIER-PROTECT ALL OPENINGS," or other wording.
    - a. Exception: Walls in Group R-2 occupancies that do not have a removable decorative ceiling allowing access to the concealed space.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner reserves the right to invoke the following test procedure at any time and as often as Owner deems necessary during the period when paint is being applied:
  - 1. Owner will engage a qualified independent testing agency to sample paint material being used. Samples of material delivered to Project will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in the presence of Contractor.
  - 2. Testing agency will perform appropriate tests for the following characteristics as required by Owner:
    - a. Quantitative material analysis.
    - b. Abrasion resistance.

- c. Apparent reflectivity.
  - d. Flexibility.
  - e. Washability.
  - f. Absorption.
  - g. Accelerated weathering.
  - h. Dry opacity.
  - i. Accelerated yellowness.
  - j. Recoating.
  - k. Skinning.
  - l. Color retention.
  - m. Alkali and mildew resistance.
3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop painting if test results show material being used does not comply with specified requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces previously coated with the noncomplying paint. If necessary, Contractor may be required to remove noncomplying paint from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with specified paint, the two coatings are incompatible.

B. Pre-installation Meetings:

- 1. Schedule a conference and inspection to be held on-site before field application of coating systems begins.
- 2. Conference shall be attended by Contractor, Owner's representative, Engineer, Construction Manager, coating applicators, and a representative of coating material manufacturer.
- 3. Topics to be discussed at meeting shall include:
  - a. A review of Contract Documents and accepted shop drawings shall be made and deviations or differences shall be resolved.
  - b. Review items such as environmental conditions, surface conditions, surface preparation, application procedures, and protection following application.
  - c. Establish which areas on-site will be available for use as storage areas and working area
- 4. Pre-construction conference and inspection shall serve to clarify Contract Documents, application requirements and what work should be completed before coating application can begin.
- 5. Prepare and submit, to parties in attendance, a written report of pre-installation conference report shall be submitted with 3 days following conference.
- 6. Field Samples:
  - a. Provide a full coating system to the required sheen, color, texture, and recommended coverage rates. Simulate finished lighting conditions for reviewing in-place work.
- 7. The Architect, Construction Manager or Owners Representative will select one room, area, or combination of areas and surfaces and conditions for each type of coating and substrate to be coated. Apply coatings in this room, area, combination of areas and surfaces according to the schedule, or as specified. After finishes are accepted, this room, area or combination of areas and surfaces will serve as the standard of quality and for

evaluation of coating systems of similar nature.

8. A manufacturer's representative shall be available upon request by the General Contractor or Painting subcontractor, to advise applicator on proper application technique and procedures.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. Cleanup: At the end of each workday, remove empty cans, rags, rubbish, and other discarded paint materials from Project site.
  1. After completing painting, clean glass and paint-spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paint by washing and scraping without scratching or damaging adjacent finished surfaces.

### 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect work of other trades, whether being painted or not, against damage from painting. Correct damage by cleaning, repairing or replacing, and repainting, as approved by Architect.
- B. Provide "Wet Paint" signs to protect newly painted finishes. After completing painting operations, remove temporary protective wrappings provided by others to protect their work.
  1. After work of other trades is complete, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces. Comply with procedures specified in PDCA P1.

### 3.7 EXTERIOR PAINT SCHEDULE

- A. Ferrous Metal: Provide the following finish systems over exterior ferrous metal. Primer is not required on shop-primed items.
  1. Semi-Gloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coats over a rust-inhibitive primer.
    - a. Primer: SW, Pro-Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Metal Primer, B66-310 series
    - b. Finish Coats: SW, Waterbased Acrolyn 100 Waterbased Urethane Gloss.
- B. Galvanized Metal: Provide the following finish systems over exterior ferrous metal. Primer is not required on shop-primed items.
  1. Semi-Gloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coats over a rust-inhibitive primer.
    - a. Primer: SW, Pro-Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Metal Primer, B66-310 series.
    - b. Finish Coats: SW, Waterbased Acrolyn 100 Waterbased Urethane Gloss.
- C. Concrete Masonry Units (CMU): Provide the following finish systems over exterior CMU/Block.
  1. Semi-Gloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coats over a block filler.
    - a. Filler: SW, PrepRite Block Filler, B25W25
    - b. Finish Coats: SW, A-100 Exterior 100% Acrylic Gloss, A8 series
- D. Poured Concrete/Masonry: Provide the following finish systems over exterior concrete/masonry.

1. Semi-Gloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: two finish coats over a masonry primer.
  - a. Primer: Loxon Concrete & Masonry Primer, A24W8300
  - b. 1st Coat: A-100 Exterior 100% Acrylic Gloss, A8 series
  - c. 2nd Coat: A-100 Exterior 100% Acrylic Gloss, A8 series
- E. Exterior Wood Semi-Transparent (Stained Finish): Provide the following finish systems over exterior wood surfaces.
  1. Semi-Transparent Finish: two finish coats over a rust-inhibitive primer.
    - a. 1st Coat: Woodscapes Exterior Polyurethane Semi-Transparent Stain, A15 series
    - b. 2nd Coat: Woodscapes Exterior Polyurethane Semi-Transparent Stain, A15 series

### 3.8 INTERIOR PAINT SCHEDULE

- A. Gypsum Board: Provide the following finish systems over interior gypsum board surfaces:
  1. Flat Acrylic Finish (Ceiling Application): Two finish coats over a primer.
    - a. Primer: SW, ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Primer, B28W600.
    - b. Finish Coast: SW, ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Flat, B30W2650 series.
  2. Low Luster Acrylic-Enamel Finish (Wall Application @ Adminstration): Two finish coats over a primer.
    - a. Primer: SW, ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Primer, B28W600.
    - b. Finish Coats: SW, ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Eg-Shel, B20W2650 series.
  3. Semi-Gloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish (Wall Application): Two finish coats over a primer.
    - a. Primer: SW, ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Primer, B28W600.
    - b. Finish Coats: SW, ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Semi-Gloss, B31W2650 series.
- B. Gypsum Board Epoxy Finish (EPX1 @ GWB Ceilings): Provide the following epoxy finish systems over interior gypsum board surfaces:
  1. Eg-Shel Waterbased Epoxy Finish: Two finish coats over a primer.
    - a. Primer: SW, ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Primer, B28W600.
    - b. Finish Coats: SW, Pro-Industrial Waterbased Catalyzed Epoxy Eg-Shel, B73-360 series.
- C. Gypsum Board Epoxy Finish (EPX1 @ GWB Walls): Provide the following epoxy finish systems over interior gypsum board surfaces:
  - a. Primer: ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Primer, B28W600
  - b. 1st Coat: Pro Industrial Waterbased Catalyzed Epoxy Eg-Shel, B73-360
  - c. 2nd Coat: Pro Industrial Waterbased Catalyzed Epoxy Eg-Shel, B73-360

- D. Ferrous Metal: Provide the following finish systems over ferrous metal:
1. Semi-Gloss Finish: Two finish coats over a primer.
    - a. Primer: SW, Pro-Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Metal Primer, B66-310 series
    - b. Finish Coats: SW, Pro-Industrial Waterbased Catalyzed Epoxy Gloss.
- E. Galvanized Metal: Provide the following finish systems over galvanized metal:
1. Semi-Gloss Finish: Two finish coats over a primer.
    - a. Primer: SW, Pro-Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Metal Primer, B66-310 series
    - b. Finish Coats: SW, Pro-Industrial Waterbased Catalyzed Epoxy Gloss.
- F. Dry Fog Paint: Provide where indicated for painted exposed structure.
1. Provide dry fog paint system according to approved manufacture's recommendations.
    - a. Primer: SW, Pro-Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Metal Primer, B66-310 series  
\*Omit primer on clean galvanized surfaces
    - b. Finish Coats, SW, Pro-Industrial Waterborne Acrylic Dryfall Flat, B42W81 series
- G. Concrete Masonry Units: Provide the following finish systems over primer for wall applications.
1. Semi-Gloss Finish: Two finish coats over a primer.
    - a. Filler: SW, PrepRite Block Filler, B25W25.
    - b. Finish Coats: SW, ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Semi-Gloss, B31W2650 series
- H. Concrete Masonry Units Eg-Shel Epoxy Finish (EXP1): Provide the following epoxy finish systems over filler for wall applications.
1. Eg-Shel Waterbased Epoxy Finish: two finish coats over a filler.
    - a. Filler: PrepRite Block Filler, B25W25.
    - b. 1st Coat: Pro Industrial Waterbased Catalyzed Epoxy Eg-Shel, B73-360 series
    - c. 2nd Coat: Pro Industrial Waterbased Catalyzed Epoxy Eg-Shel, B73-360 series
- I. Concrete Masonry Units Epoxy Finish for Shower Walls/ Ceilings (EXP2): Provide the following epoxy finish systems over filler for Shower Wall applications.
1. Semi-Gloss Epoxy Finish for Immersion: two finish coats over a block filler.
    - a. Filler: Cement-Plex 875, B42W200.
    - b. 1st Coat: Macropoxy 646 Fast Cure Epoxy Semi-Gloss, B58-600 series
    - c. 2nd Coat: Macropoxy 646 Fast Cure Epoxy Semi-Gloss, B58-600 series
    - d. 1st Coat: Kem Cati- Coat HS Epoxy Filler, B42W400 (omit if surface is previously coated)
    - e. 2nd Coat: Macropoxy 646 Fast Cure Epoxy Semi-Gloss, B58-600 series  
Note\* Product is solvent based and strong odors may be present during application and curing.

### 3.9 INTERIOR STAIN AND NATURAL-FINISH WOODWORK SCHEDULE

- A. Natural-Finish Woodwork: Provide the following natural finishes over new interior woodwork:
  - 1. Waterborne Satin-Varnish Finish: Two finish coats of waterborne clear satin varnish over a sanding sealer.
    - a. Filler Coat: Optional Open-grain wood filler (if needed).
    - b. Finish Coats: SW, Wood Classics Waterborne Polyurethane Satin Finish, A68F90.
- B. Stain-Finish Woodwork with Sealer: Provide the following stain finish with sealer over new interior woodwork:
  - 1. Waterborne Satin-Varnish Finish: Two finish coats of waterborne clear satin varnish over a sanding sealer. Wipe wood filler before applying stain.
    - a. Filler Coat: Optional Open-grain wood filler (if needed).
    - b. Stain Coat: SW, Wood Classics 250 VOC Interior Oil Stain, A49-800 series.
    - c. Finish Coats: SW, Wood Classics Waterborne Polyurethane Satin Finish, A68F90.

### 3.10 MARKERBOARD PAINT

- A. Manufacturer: Master Coating Technologies.
- B. Products: Wink.
  - 1. Part A: low odor, milky white, nonpigmented liquid emulsion.
  - 2. Part B: pale yellow polymer hardener with slight odor.
  - 3. Wink Surface Conditioner.
- C. Characteristics:
  - 1. Fast drying, high gloss, waterbased formula covers in one coat without need for primer.
  - 2. Low Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) content of less than 50 grams per liter.
  - 3. Free of formaldehyde, harmful carcinogens, chromium, lead, and mercury.
  - 4. Class A rated for fire safety in accordance with ASTM E 84.
- D. Preparation: Surface should be dry, prepared to Level 5 smoothness, and free of grease, mildew, and any imperfections. Spray application of primers/sealers and base coat of paint preferred. Scuff sanding recommended for high gloss surfaces.
- E. Applications: Apply with a roller over smooth, non-porous painted surfaces including drywall, marker board, chalkboard, metal, and glass, as well as smooth vinyl wallcovering. Opening, mixing, and installing Wink should be done by a professional installer, in accordance with the application instructions.

- F. Cleaning: For dialing erasing and cleaning use a clean, dry-erase cotton cloth or microfiber towel. Periodically use a clean damp cloth, dry-erase cleaner, or wipes to maintain surface.
- G. Warranty: 10-year limited warranty from date of shipment

END OF SECTION 099123



## SECTION 099600 - HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of high-performance coating systems for exposed exterior structural steel framing, columns and accessories.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 5 Section "Structural Steel Framing" for shop priming of structural steel with primers specified in this Section.
  - 2. Division 9 Section "Painting" for general field painting.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
  - 1. Include printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
  - 2. Indicate VOC content.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product indicated.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of coating system and each color and gloss of topcoat indicated.
  - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches square.
  - 2. Apply coats on Samples in steps to show each coat required for system.
  - 3. Label each coat of each Sample.

4. Label each Sample for location and application area.

- D. Product List: Cross-reference to coating system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules. Include color designations.

#### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Coatings: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Apply mockups of each coating system indicated to verify preliminary selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each coating system.

a. Structural steel canopy column: One (1) column, including plates and connections.

2. Final approval of color selections will be based on mockups.

a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional mockups of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.

3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.

4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.

1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.

2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

#### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply coatings only when temperature of surfaces to be coated and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.

- B. Do not apply coatings when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.
- C. Do not apply exterior coatings in snow, rain, fog, or mist.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide high-performance paints manufactured by Tnemec Company, Inc., or comparable products by one of the following:
  - 1. Sherwin Williams Paints and Coatings, Inc.
  - 2. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.
  - 3. Behr Process Corporation.
  - 4. Benjamin Moore & Co.
  - 5. Comex Industrial Coatings; Comex Group.
  - 6. Corotech Coatings; Benjamin Moore & Co.
  - 7. Devoe Paint Company; Akzo Nobel.
  - 8. Diamond Vogel Paints.
  - 9. Dulux (formerly ICI Paints); a brand of Akzo Nobel.

### 2.2 HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATINGS, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products Lists."
- B. Material Compatibility:
  - 1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
  - 2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
  - 3. Products shall be of same manufacturer for each coat in a coating system.
- C. VOC Content: Products shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Flat Paints and Coatings: 50 g/L.
  - 2. Nonflat Paints and Coatings: 150 g/L.
  - 3. Primers, Sealers, and Undercoaters: 200 g/L.
  - 4. Anti-Corrosive and Anti-Rust Paints Applied to Ferrous Metals: 250 g/L.
  - 5. Zinc-Rich Industrial Maintenance Primers: 340 g/L.
  - 6. Pretreatment Wash Primers: 420 g/L.
  - 7. Floor Coatings: 100 g/L.

8. Shellacs, Clear: 730 g/L.
9. Shellacs, Pigmented: 550 g/L.

- D. Low-Emitting Materials: Interior coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- E. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing of Coating Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:
  1. Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample coating materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If coating materials have already been delivered to Project site, samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.
  2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
  3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying coatings if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying coating materials from Project site, pay for testing, and recoat surfaces coated with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously coated surfaces if, on recoating with complying materials, the two coatings are incompatible.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- C. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and coating systems indicated.

- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
  - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of coatings, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
  - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce coating systems indicated.
- D. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer, but not less than the following:
  - 1. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4.
  - 2. SSPC-SP 11.
  - 3. SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3.
  - 4. SSPC-SP 10/NACE No. 2.
  - 5. SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1.
- E. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- F. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied coatings.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply high-performance coatings according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual."
  - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for coating and substrate indicated.
- B. If undercoats or other conditions show through final coat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform coating finish, color, and appearance.
- C. Apply coatings to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Produce sharp glass lines and color breaks.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test coatings for dry film thickness.

1. Contractor shall touch up and restore coated surfaces damaged by testing.
2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied coating does not comply with coating manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with coating manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing coating application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered coatings by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from coating operation. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and recoating, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced coated surfaces.

### 3.6 EXTERIOR HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATING SCHEDULE

- A. Steel Substrates:
  1. Epoxy over Self-Priming Epoxy System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Epoxy, high build, self-priming; equal to Tnemec "Series 27 – F.C. Typoxy."
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Epoxy, matching topcoat.
    - c. Top Coat: Epoxy, semi-gloss; equal to Tnemec "Series 73 – Endura-Shield."

END OF SECTION 099600

## SECTION 099670 - INTUMESCENT PAINTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes surface preparation and application of fire-retardant intumescent paint to interior items and surfaces where steel is exposed in fire rated assemblies.
  - 1. Surface preparation, priming, and finish coats specified in this Section are in addition to shop priming and surface treatment specified in other Sections.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Albi Manufacturing; a division of StanChem, Inc. (Albi).
  - 2. Fire Research Laboratories; Ocean Fire Retardants Inc. (FRL).
  - 3. Flame Control Coatings, Inc. (FCC).
  - 4. International Fire-Resistant Systems, Inc. (IFRS).
  - 5. NoFire Technologies, Inc. (NoFire).

#### 2.2 INTERIOR INTUMESCENT FINISH COATS

- A. Provide the following paint finish systems over new steel surfaces:
  - 1. Prime Coat: Factory-formulated alkyd or latex primers applied at spreading rate recommended by manufacturer.
    - a. Albi: Primer approved by Albi or Albi 490W.
    - b. FCC: No. 3001 Primer.
    - c. FRL: Latex primer.
    - d. IFRS: Primer approved by IFRS.
    - e. NoFire: Primer approved by NoFire.

2. Intumescent Coatings: Intumescent-type, fire-retardant paint applied at spreading rate recommended by manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness as required to comply with the UL Design Numbers listed on the drawings.
  - a. Albi: Albi-Clad TF.
  - b. FCC: No. 20-20 latex flat coating.
  - c. FRL: FireCoat 320 flat latex fire-protective coating.
  - d. IFRS: Firefree88 flat latex coating.
  - e. NoFire: A-18 flat latex intumescent fire-retardant coating.
3. Topcoat: Protective fire-inert coating that will not affect fire-retardant class of intumescent coating.
  - a. Albi: Albi 144 semigloss fire-inert alkyd coating.
  - b. FCC: No. 30-30, pigmented, semigloss.
  - c. FRL: TopCoat X, pigmented.
  - d. IFRS: Coating approved by IFRS.
  - e. NoFire: Latex-based coating approved by NoFire.

## PART 3 - PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Application Procedures: Apply coatings by brush, roller, spray, or other applicators according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  1. Brushes: Use brushes best suited for material applied. Use brush of appropriate size for surface or item being painted.
  2. Rollers: Use rollers made of carpet, velvet back, or high-pile sheep's wool as recommended by manufacturer for material and texture required.
  3. Spray Equipment: Use spray equipment with orifice size as recommended by manufacturer for material and texture required.
- B. Minimum Coating Thickness: Apply materials at not less than manufacturer's recommended spreading rate for surface to be coated. Provide total dry film thickness of entire system as recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Prime Coat: Before applying finish coats, apply a prime coat, as recommended by manufacturer, to substrates required to be painted that have not been prime coated by others. Recoat primed and sealed surfaces where evidence of suction spots or unsealed areas appears in the first coat.
- D. Apply fire-inert topcoats where scheduled, using materials and application methods according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 096670



## SECTION 101100 - VISUAL DISPLAY UNITS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Porcelain enamel marker boards with aluminum frames.
  - 2. Vinyl- and fabric-faced cork tack boards with aluminum frames.
  - 3. Tack strips and display rails with aluminum frames.
  - 4. Carnegie, Xorel fabric faced cork tackboards w/ maple frames.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of visual display board indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of visual display board required.
  - 1. Include dimensioned elevations. Show location of joints between individual panels where unit dimensions exceed maximum panel length.
  - 2. Include sections of typical trim members.
  - 3. Show anchors, grounds, reinforcement, accessories, layout, and installation details.
  - 4. Where occurs, Contractor shall verify the existing board dimensions to ensure new visual display boards cover extent of existing boards.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts showing the full range of colors and textures available for the following:
  - 1. Markerboards: Actual sections of porcelain enamel finish for each type of marker board required.
  - 2. Vinyl-Faced Cork Tackboards: Fabric swatches for each type of vinyl- faced cork tack board indicated. Provide a minimum of 25 colors to select from for vinyl-faced tack boards.
  - 3. Tack Strips and Display Rails: Cork swatches for each type of vinyl- faced cork tack board indicated. Provide a minimum of 12 colors to select from for cork tack strips.
  - 4. Fabric-Faced Cork Tackboards: Fabric swatches for each type of fabric -faced cork tack board indicated. Provide a minimum of 71 colors to select from for fabric-faced tack boards.
- D. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of tack boards certifying that vinyl-faced materials furnished comply with requirements specified for flame-spread ratings.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer who is an authorized representative of marker board manufacturer for both installation and maintenance of the type of sliding marker board units required for this Project.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain visual display boards through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of visual display boards and are based on the products indicated. Other manufacturers' products with equal performance characteristics may be considered. Refer to Division 1 Section "Substitutions."
  - 1. Do not modify intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval and only to the extent needed to comply with performance requirements. Where modifications are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.
- D. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide vinyl- and fabric-faced tackboards with the following surface-burning characteristics as determined by testing assembled materials composed of facings and backings identical to those required in this Section per ASTM E 84 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify vinyl- and fabric-faced tack boards with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
  - 1. Flame Spread: 25 or less.
  - 2. Smoke Developed: 10 or less.
- E. Field Measurements: Verify field measurements before preparation of Shop Drawings and before fabrication to ensure proper fitting. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
  - 1. Allow for trimming and fitting where taking field measurements before fabrication might delay the Work.

#### 1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranties: As follows:
  - 1. Writing Surface: Manufacturer's standard, written, material warranty agreeing at manufacturer's option to repair or replace the original boards if they do not retain their original writing and erasing qualities, gloss variance, or color consistency under normal usage and maintenance, without reducing or otherwise limiting any other rights to correction which the Owner may have under the Contract Documents. Warranty does not include the cost of removal or reinstallation.
    - a. Term of Warranty: Limited lifetime warranty.
  - 2. Workmanship and Materials: Manufacturer's standard, written, material replacement warranty agreeing at manufacturer's option to repair or replace any products which, under normal usage and maintenance, show defects in workmanship or materials,

without reducing or otherwise limiting any other rights to correction which the Owner may have under the Contract Documents. Warranty does not include the cost of removal or reinstallation.

- a. Term of Warranty: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. Marsh Industries.
  2. Claridge Products and Equipment, Inc.
  3. School Specialty "BestRite."
  4. AARCO.
  5. PolyVision Corporation; a Steelcase company.
  6. Nelson Adams.

### 2.2 MATERIALS FOR MARKER BOARD PANELS

- A. Writing Surface Facing Sheet: Provide "E-3" surface.
  1. Enameling grade cold-rolled steel, manufactured from a minimum of 30 percent post-consumer and post-industrial waste, .016 inch thick for all pre-framed boards without joints. All face sheets shall be .025 inch thick for boards with spline joints and have the same content as .016 inch thick face sheets.
  2. Writing surfaces shall consist of the following characteristics:
    - a. All coatings shall contain less than a combined total of less than 0.1 percent of heavy metals cadmium, mercury, hexavalent chromium, and lead.
    - b. All coatings shall be free of arsenic and antimony as well as volatile organic compounds.
    - c. Writing surface face sheet shall be 99 percent recyclable.
    - d. Marker boards shall have a 91 to 97 percent gloss (high-gloss surface) and be free of orange peel.
    - e. Marker board 80 to 85 percent gloss (low-gloss surface), recommended for projection. Wet cleaning required if used as a marker surface.
    - f. Facing Sheet Coatings:
      1. Face Coat: 1.7 to 2.5 mils minimum thickness enameled ground coat.
      2. Cover Coat: 3.0 to 4.0 mils enameled color coat.
      3. Back Coat: 1.7 to 2.5 mils enameled minimum ground coat.
      4. Firing Temperatures: 1,475 to 1,500 deg F, minimum.
    - g. Color(s): As selected by the Architect from the manufacturer's range of standard colors.
  3. Screen-printed graphics are to be porcelain-enameled fired-on lines and graphics for maximum durability.

- a. Staff Lines: Refer to Drawings for locations.
  - 4. Core: Minimum 7/16 inch thick, particleboard core material complying with requirements of ANSI A 208.1, Grade 1-M-1.
  - 5. Backing Sheet: Manufacturer's standard; moisture-blocking backing, 0.015 inch thick; recyclable; factory-laminated to core material.
  - 6. Laminating Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard, moisture-resistant, thermoplastic-type adhesive.
- C. Lamination: Factory-machine-type only.
- 2.3 MATERIALS FOR TACK BOARD PANELS
- A. Core: Composed of 100 percent post-consumer and post-industrial waste, or 100 percent naturally-sustainable; 1/4-inch fiberboard laminated to 1/4-inch natural cork.
  - B. Coverings:
    - 1. 100 percent naturally-sustainable.
      - a. Provide 1/4-inch-thick, pure-grain natural cork for all tack strips and display rails.
    - 2. Covering Materials: Provide the following, as indicated:
      - a. Aluminum Framed Tackboards:
        - 1) 20-ounce-per-linear-yard, 2-ply, 100 percent recycled polyester with a plain weave pattern.
        - 2) Mildew-resistant, washable vinyl fabric complying with FS CCC-W-408, Type II, weighing not less than 13 oz./sq. yd, laminated to 1/4-inch thick cork sheet.
      - b. Fabric- Wrapped Tack Boards w/ wood frames: Carnegie, Series: Xorel, Pattern: Meteor where indicated on drawings.
    - 3. Color(s):
      - a. 20-ounce fabric: As selected by the Architect from the manufacturer's range of standard colors.
      - b. Carnegie, Xorel: As selected by the Architect from the manufacturer's range of colors.
- 2.4 ACCESSORIES
- A. Metal Trim and Accessories: Fabricate frames and trim of not less than 0.062-inch thick, extruded-aluminum alloy, size and shape as indicated, to suit type of installation. Provide straight, single-length units. Keep joints to a minimum. Miter corners to a neat, hairline closure. Provide frames equal to Polyvision Series 500 for factory-applied aluminum frames.
    - 1. Where size of visual display boards or other conditions require support in addition to normal trim, provide structural supports or modify trim as indicated or as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard structural support accessories to suit conditions indicated.
    - 2. Field-Applied Trim: Manufacturer's standard snap-on trim with no visible fasteners or exposed joints.

3. Map Rails: Furnish map rail at top of each marker board with rail length equaling length of marker board. In instances where tack boards are located adjacent to marker board, display rail should equal length of marker boards and tack boards. Each display rail on marker boards shall be complete with the following accessories:
  - a. Display Rail: Provide continuous cork display rail, approximately 2 inches wide integral with map rail.
  - b. End Stops: Provide one end stop at each end of map rail.
  - c. Map Hooks: Provide 2 metal map hooks for every 48 inches of map rail or fraction thereof.
  - d. Flag Holder: Provide one flag holder for each room.
  - e. Metal Roller Brackets: Provide one pair for each room.
- B. Provide manufacturer's standard maple frame for tack boards and marker boards as indicated.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Porcelain Enamel Marker Boards: Laminate facing sheet and backing sheet to core material under pressure with manufacturer's recommended flexible, waterproof adhesive.
- B. Assembly: Provide factory-assembled marker board and tack board units, unless field-assembled units are required.
  1. Make joints only where total length exceeds maximum manufactured length. Fabricate with minimum number of joints, balanced around center of board, as acceptable to Architect.
    - a. Provide marker board lengths of 16'-0" wide maximum with no seams. For boards over 16' – 0", refer to drawings for seam locations.
  2. Provide manufacturer's standard mullion trim at joints between marker board and tack boards.

## 2.6 FINISHES

- A. General: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations relative to applying and designating finishes.
- B. Finish designations prefixed by AA conform to the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
- C. Class II, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A31 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class II, clear coating 0.010 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 607.1.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine wall surfaces, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting installation of visual display boards.
  - 1. Surfaces to receive marker boards shall be free of dirt, scaling paint, and projections or depressions that would affect smooth, finished surfaces of marker boards.
  - 2. Surfaces to receive tack boards shall be dry and free of substances that would impair the bond between tack boards and substrate.
  - 3. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Deliver factory-built visual display boards completely assembled in one piece without joints, where possible. If dimensions exceed panel size, provide 2 or more pieces of equal length as acceptable to Architect. When overall dimensions require delivery in separate units, prefit components at the factory, disassemble for delivery, and make final joints at the site. Use splines at joints to maintain surface alignment.
- B. Install units in locations and at mounting heights indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions. Keep perimeter lines straight, plumb, and level. Provide grounds, clips, backing materials, adhesives, brackets, anchors, trim, and accessories necessary for complete installation.
- C. Coordinate Project-site-assembled units with grounds, trim, and accessories. Join parts with a neat, precision fit.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Verify that accessories required for each unit have been properly installed and that operating units function properly.
- B. Clean units according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 101100

## SECTION 101200 - DISPLAY CASES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Illuminated display cases.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 10 Section "Visual Display Units" for tackboards.
  - 2. Division 10 Section "Directories" for boards with changeable messages or changeable letters.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Display Case: Glazed cabinet with visual display surface background and adjustable shelves.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for display cases.
- B. Shop Drawings: For display cases. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Show location of seams and joints in visual display surfaces.
  - 2. Include sections of typical trim members.
  - 3. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes, and as follows:
  - 1. Actual sections of visual display surfaces.
  - 2. Section of header panel for color selection.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for surface-burning characteristics of fabrics.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For visual display surfaces, operating hardware, and illuminated units to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain display cases from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
  - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install display cases until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings for display cases by field measurements before fabrication.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Hardboard: ANSI A135.4, tempered.
- B. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-1, made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.
- C. Fiberboard: ASTM C 208.



- D. Hardwood Plywood: HPVA HP-1, made with adhesive containing no urea formaldehyde.
- E. Natural Cork Sheet: Seamless, single-layer, compressed fine-grain cork sheet; bulletin board quality; face sanded for natural finish.
- F. Plastic-Impregnated Cork Sheet: Seamless, homogeneous, self-sealing sheet consisting of granulated cork, linseed oil, resin binders, and dry pigments that are mixed and calendared onto burlap backing; with washable vinyl finish and integral color throughout.
- G. Vinyl Fabric: FS CCC-W-408D, Type II, burlap weave; weighing not less than 13 oz./sq. yd.; with flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84.
- H. Polyester Fabric: Nondirectional weave, 100 percent polyester; weighing not less than 15 oz./sq. yd.; with flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84.
- I. Extruded-Aluminum Bars and Shapes: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063.
- J. Aluminum Tubing: ASTM B 429, Alloy 6063.
- K. Clear Tempered Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Class 1, Quality Q3, with exposed edges seamed before tempering, and 6 mm thick unless otherwise indicated.
- L. High-Pressure Plastic Laminate: NEMA LD 3.
- M. Fasteners: Provide screws, bolts, and other fastening devices made from same material as items being fastened, except provide hot-dip galvanized, stainless-steel, or aluminum fasteners for exterior applications. Provide types, sizes, and lengths to suit installation conditions. Use security fasteners where exposed to view.
- N. Adhesives: Manufacturer's standard product that complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.2 TACKBOARD ASSEMBLIES

- A. Vinyl-Fabric-Faced Tackboard: Vinyl fabric factory laminated to 3/8-inch-thick fiberboard backing.

## 2.3 DISPLAY CASE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. Claridge Products and Equipment, Inc. (390 Series – Basis of Design)
  2. Best-Rite Manufacturing.
  3. Nelson-Harkins Industries.
  4. PolyVision Corporation; a Steelcase company.

- B. Recessed Cabinet: Factory-fabricated cabinet; with tackboard assembly on back inside surface, operable glazed doors at front, and trim on face to cover edge of recessed opening.
  - 1. Cabinet Box: Extruded aluminum.
  - 2. Cabinet Frame and Trim: Aluminum.
  - 3. Aluminum Finish: Clear anodic.
- C. Glazed Sliding Doors: Tempered glass; unframed; with extruded-aluminum top and bottom track; supported on nylon or ball-bearing rollers; with plastic top guide and rubber bumpers. Equip each door with ground finger pull and adjustable cylinder lock with two keys.
  - 1. Thickness: Not less than 6 mm thick.
  - 2. Number of Doors: As indicated on Drawings.
- D. Shelves: 6-mm-thick tempered glass; supported on adjustable shelf standards and supports.
  - 1. Shelf Width: 12 inches
  - 2. Number of Shelves: As indicated on Drawings.
- E. Adjustable Shelf Standards and Supports: BHMA A156.9, B04102; with shelf brackets, B04112; recess mounted in rear surface. Provide standards full height of display case.
- F. Tack Surface: Vinyl-fabric-faced tackboard assembly.
  - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- G. Illumination System: Concealed top-lighting system consisting of fluorescent-strip fixtures. Include lamps and internal wiring with single concealed electrical connection to building system. Coordinate electrical characteristics with power supply provided.
  - 1. Ballasts: Low-temperature, high-power-factor, low-energy, fluorescent lamp ballasts that comply with Certified Ballast Manufacturers Association standards and carry its label.
- H. Width: As indicated on Drawings.
- I. Height: As indicated on Drawings.
- J. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate display cases to requirements indicated for dimensions, design, and thickness and finish of materials.
- B. Use metals and shapes of thickness and reinforcing to produce flat surfaces, free of oil-canning, and to impart strength for size, design, and application indicated.

- C. Fabricate cabinets and door frames with reinforced corners, mitered to a hairline fit, with no exposed fasteners.
- D. Fabricate exterior units with vents to permit evaporation of moisture trapped inside.
- E. Fabricate shelf standards plumb and at heights to align shelf brackets for level shelves.

## 2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## 2.6 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm or thicker.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, surface conditions of wall, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical power system to verify actual locations of connections before installation of illuminated units.
- C. Examine walls and partitions for proper backing for display cases.
- D. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth if recessed units will be installed.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare recesses for display cases as required by type and size of unit.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install units in locations and at mounting heights indicated on Drawings, or if not indicated, at heights indicated below. Keep perimeter lines straight, level, and plumb. Provide grounds, clips, backing materials, adhesives, brackets, anchors, trim, and accessories necessary for complete installation.
- B. Recessed Display Cases: Attach units to wall framing with fasteners at not more than 16 inches o.c. Attach aluminum trim over edges of recessed display cases and conceal grounds and clips. Attach trim with fasteners at not more than 24 inches o.c.
- C. Comply with requirements specified elsewhere for connecting illuminated display cases.
  - 1. After installation is complete, install new fluorescent lamps.
- D. Install display case shelving level and straight.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust doors to operate smoothly without warp or bind and so contact points meet accurately. Lubricate operating hardware as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Touch up factory-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

### 3.5 DISPLAY CASEWORK SCHEDULE

- A. Display Casework: As a minimum standard of quality, the design is based on the following product:
  - 1. Product: Recessed Display Cases in Corridor A120, A121 and D108:
    - a. Claridge display case "Series 390 Large Door Display Case" with super heavy satin anodized aluminum frame with 3" face and sliding tempered glass doors, wood box and back panel of "Fabricork"-vinyl covered cork (color as selected from manufacturer's full range of colors). Clear oak high-pressure laminate finish at interior top, bottom and side panels. Also provide the following:
      - 1). Lighting: Concealed top lighting system with recessed 277 V. fluorescent lights and reflector.
      - 2). Finish Designation: Manufacturer's clear anodized finish.
      - 3). Size: As indicated on drawings.
      - 4). Keying: Master.
      - 5). Glass Shelves: Provide (2) 12" glass shelves/unit with adjustable brackets and standards.

END OF SECTION 101200

## SECTION 101300 - DIRECTORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Nonilluminated, changeable-letter directories.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 10 Section "Visual Display Units" for tackboards.
  - 2. Division 10 Section "Display Cases" for display cases with tackable surfaces.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for directories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For directories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Include sections of typical trim members.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes, as follows:
  - 1. Fabric swatches for letterboards.
  - 2. Section of header panel for color selection.

#### 1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain directories from single source from single manufacturer.

- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
  - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
- C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install directories until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before fabrication.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated, and as follows:
  - 1. Sheet: ASTM B 209.
  - 2. Extruded Shapes: ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063.
- B. Clear Tempered Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Class 1 (clear), Quality q3, with exposed edges seamed before tempering, and 6 mm thick unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fasteners: Provide screws, bolts, and other fastening devices made from same material as items being fastened, except provide hot-dip galvanized, stainless-steel, or aluminum fasteners for exterior applications. Provide types, sizes, and lengths to suit installation conditions. Use security fasteners where exposed to view.

### 2.2 CHANGEABLE-LETTER DIRECTORIES

- A. Enclosed-Face, Changeable-Letter Directory: Factory-fabricated unit consisting of manufacturer's standard, 2-inch-deep perimeter frame with fixed letterboard on back inside surface and with glazed doors.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Claridge Products and Equipment, Inc. (441 Series Basis-of-Design)
  - b. ASI-Modulex.
  - c. Best-Rite Manufacturing.
  - d. Best Sign Systems, Inc.
  - e. Nelson-Harkins Industries.
2. Aluminum Perimeter Frame: Extruded aluminum.
  - a. Perimeter Frame Profile: Square.
  - b. Perimeter Frame Corners: Square.
  - c. Finish: Clear anodic.
3. Glazed, Hinged Doors: Clear tempered glass set in door frame equipped with full-height continuous hinge and cylinder lock with two keys.
  - a. Door Frame: Same material and finish as perimeter frame.
  - b. Number of Doors: One.
4. Header Panel: Nonilluminated; with opaque, acrylic sheet panel set within overall perimeter frame; with matching frame that separates header panel from letterboard.
  - a. Graphic Content and Style: Provide header panel copy that complies with requirements indicated on artwork supplied on electronic media by Architect for size, style, spacing, content, height, location, material, and colors.
  - b. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
5. Letterboard: Manufacturer's standard felt or vinyl-covered panel material, with grooves spaced at 1/4 inch o.c. to receive changeable letters.
  - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
6. Letters: Molded plastic with tabs for engaging grooves in letterboard. Provide manufacturer's standard assortment of not less than 300 characters for each size, style, color, and case required; include letters, numbers, and characters. Package letters in compartmentalized carrying box.
  - a. Height: 3/8 inch to top of capitals.
  - b. Style: Roman.
  - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  - d. Case: Capitals and lowercase.
7. Width: As indicated on Drawings.
8. Height: As indicated on Drawings.
9. Mounting: Recessed.
10. Mounting Height: As indicated on Drawings.

## 2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate directories to requirements indicated for dimensions, design, and thickness and finish of materials. Use metals and shapes of thickness and reinforcement to produce flat surfaces, free of oil canning, and to impart strength for size, design, and application indicated.
- B. Fabricate directory cabinets and door frames with reinforced corners, mitered and welded to a hairline fit, with no exposed fasteners. Provide structural reinforcement to prevent racking and misalignment.

## 2.4 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## 2.5 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, surface conditions of wall, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine walls and partitions for proper backing for directories.
- C. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare recesses for directories as required by type and size of unit.



### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install directories in locations and at mounting heights indicated on Drawings, or if not indicated, at heights indicated below. Keep perimeter lines straight, level, and plumb. Provide grounds, clips, backing materials, adhesives, brackets, anchors, trim, and accessories necessary for complete installation.
- B. Recessed Directories: Attach directories to wall framing with fasteners at not more than 16 inches o.c. Attach aluminum trim over edges of recessed directories and conceal grounds and clips.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust directory doors to operate smoothly without warp or bind and so that contact points meet accurately. Lubricate operating hardware as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Touch up factory-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

END OF SECTION 101300

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 101416 – BUILDING PLAQUE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes plaques.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 10 Section "Panel Signage" for signs, with or without frames, that are made of materials other than solid metal.
  - 2. Division 14 Section 142400 "Hydraulic Elevators" for code-required conveying equipment signage.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For plaques.
  - 1. Include fabrication and installation details and attachments to other work.
  - 2. Show plaque mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by others, and accessories.
  - 3. Show message list, typestyles, graphic elements and layout for each plaque at least half size.
- C. Samples: For each type of plaque showing all components and with the required finish(es), in manufacturer's standard size unless otherwise indicated and as follows:
  - 1. Exposed Accessories: Full-size Sample of each accessory type.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For plaques to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of plaques that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PLAQUES, GENERAL

- A. Regional Materials: Plaques shall be manufactured within 500 miles of Project site.

### 2.2 PLAQUES

- A. Cast Plaque: Plaque with background texture, border, and characters having uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles; and as follows:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Diskey Sign Company.
    - b. Gemini Incorporated.
    - c. Metallic Arts.
    - d. Nelson-Harkins Industries.
  - 2. Plaque Material: Cast aluminum.
  - 3. Plaque Thickness: 0.50 inch.
  - 4. Finishes:
    - a. Integral Aluminum Finish: Anodized color as selected by Architect from full range of industry colors and color densities.
  - 5. Background Texture: Leatherette
  - 6. Integrally Cast Border Style: Projected bevel.
  - 7. Mounting: Rosette-head through fasteners.

8. Text and Typeface: Typeface as indicated on the drawings and variable content as scheduled. Finish raised characters to contrast with background color.

## 2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, alloy and temper recommended by plaque manufacturer for casting process used and for type of use and finish indicated.

## 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of plaques, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following:
  1. Use concealed fasteners and anchors unless indicated to be exposed.
  2. Exposed Metal-Fastener Components:
    - a. Fabricated from same basic metal and finish of fastened metal unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Through Fasteners: Exposed metal fasteners matching plaque finish, with type of head indicated, installed in predrilled holes.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard plaques according to requirements indicated.
  1. Preassemble plaques in the shop.
  2. Comply with AWS for recommended practices in welding and brazing. Provide welds and brazes behind finished surfaces without distorting or discoloring exposed side. Clean exposed welded and brazed connections of flux, and dress exposed and contact surfaces.
  3. Provide rebates, lugs, and brackets necessary to assemble components and to attach to existing work. Drill and tap for required fasteners. Use concealed fasteners where possible; use exposed fasteners that match plaque finish.
  4. Castings: Fabricate castings free of warp, cracks, blowholes, pits, scale, sand holes, and other defects that impair appearance or strength. Grind, wire brush, sandblast, and buff castings to remove seams, gate marks, casting flash, and other casting marks before finishing.

## 2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Directional Finishes: Run grain with long dimension of each piece and perpendicular to long dimension of finished trim or border surface unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Organic, Anodic, and Chemically Produced Finishes: Apply to formed metal after fabrication but before applying contrasting polished finishes on raised features unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
- B. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of plaque work.
- B. Verify that plaque-support surfaces are within tolerances to accommodate plaques without gaps or irregularities between backs of plaques and support surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install plaques using mounting methods indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Install plaques level, plumb, true to line, and at locations and heights indicated, with plaque surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
  - 2. Before installation, verify that plaque surfaces are clean and free of materials or debris that would impair installation.
  - 3. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of exterior aluminum in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.

B. Mounting Methods:

1. Through Fasteners: Drill holes in substrate using predrilled holes in plaque as template. Countersink holes in plaque if required. Place plaque in position and flush to surface. Install through fasteners and tighten.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace damaged or deformed plaques and plaques that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace plaques with damaged or deteriorated finishes or components that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.
- B. wOn completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of plaques according to manufacturer's written instructions, and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Maintain plaques in a clean condition during construction and protect from damage until acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 101416

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



## SECTION 101419 - DIMENSIONAL LETTER SIGNAGE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Cut dimensional characters.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For dimensional letter signs.
  - 1. Include fabrication and installation details and attachments to other work.
  - 2. Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by others, and accessories.
  - 3. Show message list, typestyles, graphic elements, and layout for each sign at least half size.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sign assembly, exposed component, and exposed finish.
  - 1. Include representative Samples of available typestyles and graphic symbols.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of sign assembly showing all components and with the required finish(es), in manufacturer's standard size unless otherwise indicated and as follows:
  - 1. Dimensional Characters: Full-size Sample each type of dimensional character.
  - 2. Exposed Accessories: Full-size Sample of each accessory type.
- E. Sign Schedule: Use same designations specified or indicated on Drawings or in a sign schedule.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For signs to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify locations of electrical service embedded in permanent construction by other installers by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of signs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering.
    - b. Separation or delamination of sheet materials and components.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 DIMENSIONAL LETTER SIGNS, GENERAL

- A. Regional Materials: Dimensional letter signs shall be manufactured within 500 miles of Project site.

### 2.2 DIMENSIONAL CHARACTERS

- A. Cutout Characters: Characters with uniform faces; square-cut, smooth, edges; precisely formed lines and profiles; and as follows:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. ASI Sign Systems, Inc.
  - b. Gemini Incorporated.
  - c. InPro Corporation.
  - d. Metal Arts; Division of L & H Mfg. Co.
  - e. Metallic Arts.
  - f. Nelson-Harkins Industries.
2. Character Material: Sheet or plate aluminum.
3. Character Height: As indicated on drawings.
4. Thickness: Manufacturer's standard for size of character.
5. Finishes:
  - a. Integral Aluminum Finish: Clear Anodized or Baked Enamel finish. Refer drawings for locations of various finishes.
6. Mounting: Projecting studs
7. Typeface: Arial.

## 2.3 DIMENSIONAL CHARACTER MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.

## 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of signage, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following:
  1. Use concealed fasteners and anchors unless indicated to be exposed.
  2. Sign Mounting Fasteners:
    - a. Projecting Studs: Threaded studs with sleeve spacer, welded or brazed to back of sign material, screwed into back of sign assembly, or screwed into tapped lugs cast integrally into back of cast sign material, unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard sign assemblies according to requirements indicated.
  1. Comply with AWS for recommended practices in welding and brazing. Provide welds and brazes behind finished surfaces without distorting or discoloring exposed side.

Clean exposed welded and brazed connections of flux, and dress exposed and contact surfaces.

## 2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Directional Finishes: Run grain with long dimension of each piece and perpendicular to long dimension of finished trim or border surface unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Organic, Anodic, and Chemically Produced Finishes: Apply to formed metal after fabrication but before applying contrasting polished finishes on raised features unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
- B. Baked-Enamel Finish: AA-M4xC12C42R1x (Mechanical Finish: Manufacturer's standard, other nondirectional textured; Chemical Finish: Chemical conversion coating, acid chromate-fluoride-phosphate pretreatment; Organic Coating: as specified below). Apply baked enamel in compliance with paint manufacturer's specifications for cleaning, conversion coating, and painting.
  - 1. Organic Coating: Thermosetting-modified acrylic enamel primer/topcoat system complying with AAMA 603.8 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils, medium gloss.
    - a. Color: As selected by the Architect from the manufacturer's full range of colors or as indicated.
- C. Refer drawings for locations of various finishes.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of signage work.

- B. Verify that sign-support surfaces are within tolerances to accommodate individual characters without irregularities between backs of individual characters and support surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install signs using mounting methods indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Install signs level, plumb, true to line, and at locations and heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
  - 2. Before installation, verify that sign surfaces are clean and free of materials or debris that would impair installation.
  - 3. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of exterior aluminum in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.
- B. Mounting Methods:
  - 1. Projecting Studs: Using a template, drill holes in substrate aligning with studs on back of sign. Remove loose debris from hole and substrate surface.
    - a. Masonry Substrates: Fill holes with adhesive. Leave recess space in hole for displaced adhesive. Place spacers on studs, place sign in position, and push until spacers are pinched between sign and substrate, embedding the stud ends in holes. Temporarily support sign in position until adhesive fully sets.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace damaged or deformed characters and signs that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace characters with damaged or deteriorated finishes or components that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.
- B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as signs are installed.
- C. On completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of signs according to manufacturer's written instructions, and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Maintain signs in a clean condition during construction and protect from damage until acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 101419

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 101423 – PANEL SIGNAGE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes Interior and Exterior Panel Signs.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 1 Section "Temporary Facilities & Controls" for temporary Project identification signs.
  - 2. Division 10 Sections "Directories" for building directories and "Post and Panel/Pylon Signage" for freestanding signs.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of sign specified, including details of construction relative to materials, dimensions of individual components, profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For panel signs, showing fabrication and erection of signs. Include plans, elevations, and large-scale sections of typical members and other components. Show anchors, layout, reinforcement, accessories, and installation details.
  - 1. Details: Provide message list for each type of sign required, including typestyles, graphic elements, including raised characters and Braille, and layout for each sign at least half size. Include large-scale details of nomenclature, including layout of room names, room numbers and graphic symbols, as indicated. Elevation details shall be consistent with sign type number on Drawings.
  - 2. Floor Plans: Provide floor plans showing locations of each sign, indicating original room name, room number, and sign type.
  - 3. Signage Schedule: Provide signage schedule in an editable version of Microsoft® Excel® format (.xlsx or .xls) or similar, compatible software. Arrange per building, building floor and building area, in a sequential manner that is consistent with the Drawings. Each room shall consist of a horizontal line of information, which shall intersect with vertical columns, in which applicable information may be input into each cell. Provide the following column heading information, which may be abbreviated as needed, formatted from left to right:
    - a. Original Room Number: As indicated on Contract Drawings.
    - b. Original Room Name: As indicated on Contract Drawings.

- c. Revised Room Number: Final information to be fabricated; any revisions shall be input by the Architect.
  - d. Revised Room Name: Final information to be fabricated; any revisions shall be input by the Architect.
  - e. Sign Type: To cross-reference Shop Drawing elevation details.
  - f. Sign Size: To indicate overall sign width and height.
  - g. Accessibility: To include International Symbol of Access (ISA).
  - h. Female: To include International Symbol for Female Gender.
  - i. Male: To include International Symbol for Male Gender.
  - j. Neutral: To include International Symbol for Gender-Neutral.
  - k. Family: To include International Symbol for Family.
  - l. Miscellaneous: To include, and make reference to, additional graphic symbols, including, but not limited to, directional arrows, stairs, and fire, as well as other signage features, such as paper inserts and sliding vacant/in use types.
  - m. Quantity: Indicate number of same panel sign design required for specific room; provide additional lines for rooms that are to have more than one sign, but require different design or sign type.
  - n. Remarks: For providing additional notes or remarks; by manufacturer (in black font color), Contractor (in green font color) or Architect (in red font color).
4. For signs supported by or anchored to permanent construction, provide setting drawings, templates, and directions for installation of anchor bolts and other anchors to be installed as a unit of Work in other Sections.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sign assembly, exposed component, and exposed finish.
- 1. Cast Acrylic Sheet: Manufacturer's color Samples consisting of actual sections or chips of material, including the full range of standard colors, patterns and textures available.
  - 2. Panel Signs: Full-size Sample, not less than 12 inches square, including corners, for verification of basic design.
  - 3. Exposed Accessories: Full-size Sample of each accessory type.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For signs to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE



- A. Sign Fabricator Qualifications: Firm experienced in producing signs similar to those indicated for this Project, with a record of successful in-service performance, and sufficient production capacity to produce sign units required without causing delay in the Work.
- B. Single-Source Responsibility: For each separate sign type required, obtain signs from one source of a single manufacturer.
- C. Design Concept: The Drawings indicate profile and dimensional requirements of panel signs. Slight deviations in profiles and dimensions may be approved, as long as such deviations do not drastically change the design concept, as judged by the Architect. The burden of proof of equality is on the Bidder.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Whenever possible, and if necessary, take field measurements prior to the preparation of Shop Drawings and fabrication to ensure proper fitting. Show recorded measurements on final Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delay.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering panel signage products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. 4Sign Solutions.
  - 2. Best Manufacturing.
  - 3. Bayuk Graphics.

### 2.2 FRAMED/ FRAMELESS PANEL SIGNS

- A. Cast Acrylic Sheet: ASTM D 4802; non-extruded, non-continuous-cast polymethyl methacrylate monomer (PMMA) or extruded polyvinyl chloride (PVC)-acrylic alloy sheet, Type UVF (UV filtering); in sizes and thicknesses indicated, with a minimum flexural strength of 16,000 psi when tested according to ASTM D 790, with a minimum allowable continuous service temperature of 176 deg F, and of the following general types:
  - 1. Opaque Sheet: Where sheet material is indicated as "opaque," provide colored, solid acrylic sheet in colors and finishes as selected from the manufacturer's full range of standard colors and textures.
  - 2. Colored Coatings: Use colored coatings, including inks and paints for copy and background colors, that are recommended by acrylic manufacturer for optimum adherence to acrylic surface and are non-fading for the application intended.

- B. Fasteners: Use concealed fasteners fabricated from metals that are not corrosive to and compatible with the sign material and mounting surface.
- C. Framed (Interior)/Frameless Panel Signs (Exterior): Comply with requirements indicated for materials, thicknesses, finishes, colors, designs, shapes, sizes, and details of construction.
  - 1. Construction: Fabricate smooth, flush panel surfaces, capable of remaining flat with no noticeable distortions, while subjected to installed environmental conditions, within a tolerance of plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured diagonally.
  - 2. Laminated Sign Panels: Permanently laminate face panels to backing sheets of material and thickness indicated using the manufacturer's standard process.
  - 3. Engraved Copy: Machine-engrave letters, numbers, symbols, and other graphic devices into sign panel on the face indicated to produce precisely formed copy, incised to uniform depth. Use high-speed cutters mechanically linked to master templates in a pantographic system or equivalent process capable of producing characters of the style indicated with sharply-formed edges.
    - a. Copy Depth: Character, graphic and Braille copy shall be raised 1/32 inch, unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Lettering Style: Upper- and lower-case letters; as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of standard typefaces.
  - 4. Characters and Graphics: Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate signs with 1-inch-high room numbers and 3/4-inch-high room identification lettering. Standard grade Braille shall be located 1/2 inch below copy.
    - a. Accessibility Standards: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities and ICC A117.1 for signs. All signage shall comply with accessibility requirements, including International Symbol of Access, Braille, and provisions for mounting.
    - b. Final room numbering and verbiage designations for all signs shall be approved by Owner prior to fabrication.
  - 5. Edge Condition: Square, non-beveled.
  - 6. Edge Color: Same as background.
  - 7. Frame Material: Plastic
  - 8. Corner Condition: Square, non-rounded.
  - 9. Blank Panels: Where panel signs are indicated or required to be installed on glass sidelites or similar transparent surfaces, provide blank panel signs to the opposite side of the glass, matching size, profile and color, to conceal the adhesives.
  - 10. Extra Signs: Provide an additional quantity of (10) 8"x8" signs.
  - 11. Note: Where panel signs are to be installed on exterior side of building, provide drill & countersink mechanical fasteners mounted to conical anchors.
  - 12. Refer to drawings for quantities and locations for all sign types.
  - 13. NOTE: FINAL TEXT FOR ALL SIGNS TO BE APPROVED BY OWNER PRIOR TO MANUFACTURING.

- D. Graphic Content and Style: Provide sign copy that complies with the requirements indicated for size, style, spacing, content, position, material, finishes, and colors of letters, numbers, and other graphic devices.
  - 1. Signs shall consist of internationally-adopted graphic silhouette symbols indicating entrances to male, female, gender-neutral, and family restrooms, as well as handicapped-accessibility, where occurs.
  - 2. Provide signs at the entrances of all non-accessible restrooms that graphically indicate the directions to the nearest handicapped-accessible restrooms.
- E. Signs with Changeable Message Capability: Fabricate signs to allow insertion of changeable messages as follows:
  - 1. For snap-in changeable inserts beneath removable face sheet, furnish one suction or other device to assist in removing face sheet. Furnish initial changeable insert. Furnish two blank inserts for each sign for Owner's use.
  - 2. For slide-in changeable inserts, fabricate slot without burrs or constrictions that inhibit function. Furnish initial changeable insert.

## 2.3 FINISHES

- A. Colors and Surface Textures: For exposed sign material that requires selection of materials with integral or applied colors, surface textures or other characteristics related to appearance, provide colors as selected by the Architect from the manufacturer's full range of standard colors and textures.
  - 1. Manufacturer shall offer no less than 25 colors.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of signage work.
  - 1. Verify that sign-support surfaces are within tolerances to accommodate signs without gaps or irregularities between backs of signs and support surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Verify that anchor inserts are correctly sized and located to accommodate signs.
  - 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Locate sign units and accessories where indicated, using mounting methods of the type described and in compliance with the manufacturer's instructions.
  - 1. Install signs level, plumb, and at the height indicated, with sign surfaces free from distortion or other defects in appearance. All signs shall be mounted per accessibility standards, as required by the authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Install signs so they do not protrude or obstruct according to the accessibility standard.

3. Before installation, verify that sign surfaces are clean and free of materials or debris that would impair installation.
- B. Mounting Methods: Attach panel signs to surfaces, as follows:
1. Interior Surfaces: Use one of the following methods, as applicable:
    - a. Vinyl-covered or Rough Surfaces: Clean bond-breaking materials from substrate surface and remove loose debris. Apply linear beads or spots of high-bond adhesive symmetrically to back of sign and of suitable quantity to support weight of sign after cure without slippage. Keep adhesive away from edges to prevent adhesive extrusion as sign is applied and to prevent visibility of cured adhesive at sign edges. Place sign in position, and push to engage adhesive. Temporarily support sign in position until adhesive fully sets.
    - b. Smooth Surfaces: Clean bond-breaking materials from substrate surface and remove loose debris. Apply two-face tape strips symmetrically to back of sign and of suitable quantity to support weight of sign without slippage. Add silicone sealant as needed. Keep strips away from edges to prevent visibility at sign edges. Place sign in position, and push to engage tape adhesive.
  2. Exterior Surfaces: Use concealed-stud mounting; using a template, drill holes in substrate aligning with studs on back of sign. Remove loose debris from hole and substrate surface.
    - a. Masonry Substrates: Fill holes with adhesive. Leave recess space in hole for displaced adhesive. Place sign in position and push until flush to surface, embedding studs in holes. Temporarily support sign in position until adhesive fully sets.

### 3.3 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove protective coverings and strippable films as signs are installed. After installation, clean soiled sign surfaces according to the manufacturer's instructions. Protect units from damage until substantial completion.
- B. Touch up minor nicks and abrasions; otherwise, remove and replaced damaged or deformed signs that do not comply with requirements.

END OF SECTION 101423

## SECTION 102113 - TOILET COMPARTMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Solid plastic toilet compartments configured as toilet enclosures and urinal screens.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 10 Section "Toilet and Bath, Accessories".

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for toilet compartments.
- B. Shop Drawings: For toilet compartments.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachment details.
  - 2. Show locations of cutouts for compartment-mounted toilet accessories.
  - 3. Show locations of centerlines of toilet fixtures.
  - 4. Show locations of floor drains.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of toilet compartment material indicated.
  - 1. Include Samples of hardware and accessories involving material and color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in manufacturer's standard sizes unless otherwise indicated:

1. Each type of material, color, and finish required for toilet compartments, prepared on 6-inch-square Samples of same thickness and material indicated for Work.
2. Each type of hardware and accessory.

- E. Product Schedule: For toilet compartments, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, detailing location and selected colors for toilet compartment material.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For toilet compartments to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents and source.

1. Door Hinges: Ten hinges with associated fasteners.
2. Latch and Keeper: Ten latches and keepers with associated fasteners.
3. Door Bumper: Ten bumpers with associated fasteners.
4. Door Pull: Ten door pull(s) with associated fasteners.
5. Fasteners: Twenty fasteners of each size and type.

#### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of toilet fixtures, walls, columns, ceilings, and other construction contiguous with toilet compartments by field measurements before fabrication.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
1. Flame-Spread Index: 75 or less.
  2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities and ICC A117.1 for toilet compartments designated as accessible.

## 2.2 SOLID-PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Accurate Partitions Corporation.
  - 2. American Sanitary Partition Corporation.
  - 3. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
  - 4. Bradley Corporation; Mills Partitions.
  - 5. General Partitions Mfg. Corp.
  - 6. Global Steel Products Corp.
  - 7. Metpar
  - 8. Scranton Products.
- B. Toilet-Enclosure Style: Floor anchored, overhead braced.
- C. Entrance-Screen Style: Floor anchored, overhead braced.
- D. Urinal-Screen Style: Floor anchored, overhead braced.
- E. Door, Panel, Screen, and Pilaster Construction: Solid, high-density polyethylene (HDPE) panel material, not less than 1 inch thick, seamless, with eased edges, and with homogenous color and pattern throughout thickness of material.
  - 1. Heat-Sink Strip: Manufacturer's standard continuous, extruded-aluminum or stainless-steel strip fastened to exposed bottom edges of solid-plastic components to hinder malicious combustion.
  - 2. Color and Pattern: as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- F. Pilaster Shoes and Sleeves (Caps): Manufacturer's standard design; stainless steel.
- G. Brackets (Fittings):
  - 1. Full-Height (Continuous) Type: Manufacturer's standard design.
    - a. To be used for all wall connections and panel 'T' connections.

## 2.3 HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Hardware and Accessories: Manufacturer's heavy-duty operating hardware and accessories.
  - 1. Hinges: Manufacturer's standard stainless steel, continuous.
  - 2. Latch and Keeper: Manufacturer's heavy-duty surface-mounted cast-stainless-steel latch unit designed to resist damage due to slamming, with combination rubber-faced door strike and keeper, and with provision for emergency access. Provide units that comply with regulatory requirements for accessibility at compartments designated as accessible. Mount with through-bolts.

3. Coat Hook: Manufacturer's heavy-duty combination cast-stainless-steel hook and rubber-tipped bumper, sized to prevent in-swinging door from hitting compartment-mounted accessories. Mount with through-bolts.
  4. Door Bumper: Manufacturer's heavy-duty rubber-tipped cast-stainless-steel bumper at out-swinging doors and entrance-screen doors. Mount with through-bolts.
  5. Door Pull: Manufacturer's heavy-duty cast-stainless-steel pull at out-swinging doors that complies with regulatory requirements for accessibility. Provide units on both sides of doors at compartments designated as accessible. Mount with through-bolts.
- B. Overhead Bracing: Manufacturer's standard continuous, extruded-aluminum head rail with anti-grip profile and in manufacturer's standard finish.
1. Urinal Screens shall also be overhead braced.
- C. Anchorages and Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard exposed fasteners of stainless steel, finished to match the items they are securing, with theft-resistant-type heads. Provide sex-type bolts for through-bolt applications. For concealed anchors, use stainless-steel, hot-dip galvanized-steel, or other rust-resistant, protective-coated steel compatible with related materials.

## 2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M.
- B. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304, stretcher-leveled standard of flatness.
- D. Stainless-Steel Castings: ASTM A 743/A 743M.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabrication, General: Fabricate toilet compartment components to sizes indicated. Coordinate requirements and provide cutouts for through-partition toilet accessories where required for attachment of toilet accessories.
  1. Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant supports, leveling mechanism, and anchors at pilasters to suit floor conditions. Provide shoes at pilasters to conceal supports and leveling mechanism.
  2. Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies with leveling adjustment nuts at pilasters for structural connection to floor. Provide shoes at pilasters to conceal anchorage.



- B. Door Size and Swings: Unless otherwise indicated, provide 24-inch- wide, in-swinging doors for standard toilet compartments and 36-inch- wide, out-swinging doors with a minimum 32-inch- wide, clear opening for compartments designated as accessible.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for fastening, support, alignment, operating clearances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Confirm location and adequacy of blocking and supports required for installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions. Install units rigid, straight, level, and plumb. Secure units in position with manufacturer's recommended anchoring devices.
  - 1. Maximum Clearances:
    - a. Pilasters and Panels: 1/2 inch.
    - b. Panels and Walls: 1 inch.
  - 2. Full-Height (Continuous) Brackets: Secure panels to walls and to pilasters with full-height brackets.
    - a. Locate bracket fasteners so holes for wall anchors occur in masonry or tile joints.
    - b. Align brackets at pilasters with brackets at walls.
- B. Secure pilasters to floor and level, plumb, and tighten. Set pilasters with anchors penetrating not less than 2 inches into structural floor unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written instructions. Secure continuous head rail to each pilaster with no fewer than two fasteners. Hang doors to align tops of doors with tops of panels, and adjust so tops of doors are parallel with overhead brace when doors are in closed position.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Hardware Adjustment: Adjust and lubricate hardware according to hardware manufacturer's written instructions for proper operation. Set hinges on in-swinging doors to hold doors open approximately 30 degrees from closed position when unlatched. Set hinges on out-swinging doors to return doors to fully closed position.

END OF SECTION 102113

## SECTION 102239 – FOLDING PANEL PARTITIONS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Manually operated, paired panel operable partitions.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 5 Section “Structural Steel” for partition support.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. NIC: Noise isolation class.
- B. NRC: Noise reduction coefficient.
- C. STC: Sound transmission class.

#### 1.4 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Acoustical Performance: Provide operable panel partitions tested by a qualified testing agency for the following acoustical properties according to test methods indicated:
  - 1. Sound Transmission Requirements: Operable panel partition assembly tested in a full-scale opening, 14 by 9 feet, for laboratory sound transmission loss performance according to ASTM E 90, determined by ASTM E 413, and rated for not less than the STC indicated.
  - 2. Noise Reduction Requirements: Operable panel partition assembly, identical to partition tested for STC, tested for sound absorption performance according to ASTM C 423 and rated for not less than the NRC indicated.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Material descriptions, construction details, finishes, installation details, and operating instructions for each type of operable panel partition, component, and accessory specified. Include data on acoustical performance, surface-burning characteristics, and durability.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show location and extent of operable panel partitions. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, numbered panel installation sequence, attachments to other construction, and accessories. Indicate dimensions; weights; conditions at openings and for storage; and required installation, storage, and operating clearances. Indicate location and installation requirements for hardware and track, and direction of travel. Show blocking to be provided by others. Include the following:
  - 1. Calculations: Calculate requirements for supporting operable panel partitions and verify capacity of carriers and track components to support loads; indicate deflection limits for partition and adjacent construction.
  - 2. Electric Operator: Show locations and details for installing operator components, switches, and controls. Indicate motor size, electrical characteristics, and mounting arrangements.
  - 3. Wiring Diagrams: Detail wiring for power and control systems and differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring and between components provided by operable panel partition manufacturer and those provided by others.
- C. Setting Drawings: For embedded items and cutouts required in other work, including support beam punching template.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts showing the full range of colors available for units with factory-applied color finishes.
  - 1. Include similar Samples of accessories involving color selection.
- E. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of operable panel partitions certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
- F. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience.
- G. Field Test Reports: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements.
- H. Product Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating that each operable panel partition complies with requirements, based on comprehensive testing of current products.

- I. Maintenance Data: For the following to include in maintenance manuals specified in Division 1:
  1. Panel face finishes and finishes for exposed trim and accessories. Include precautions for cleaning materials and methods that could be detrimental to finishes and performance.
  2. Seals, hardware, track, carriers, and other operating components.
  3. For electric operator.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who is certified in writing by the operable panel partition manufacturer as qualified to install the manufacturer's partition systems for work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project.
- B. Acoustical Performance: Test operable partitions in an independent acoustical laboratory in accordance with ASTM E90 test procedure to attain no less than the STC rating specified.
- C. Preparation of the opening shall conform to the criteria set forth per ASTM E557 "Standard Practice for Architectural Application and Installation of Operable Partitions".
- D. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing laboratory, or an NVLAP-accredited laboratory, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548. NVLAP-accredited laboratories must document accreditation, based on a "Certificate of Accreditation" and a "Scope of Accreditation" listing the test methods specified.
- E. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide operable panel partitions with the following fire-test-response characteristics, as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify materials with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
  1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As follows, per ASTM E 84:
    - a. Flame Spread: 25 or less.
    - b. Smoke Developed: 450 or less.
  2. Fire Growth Contribution: Textile wall coverings complying with the acceptance criteria of UBC Standard 8-2.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protectively package and sequence panels in order for installation. Clearly mark packages and panels with numbering system used on Shop Drawings. Do not use permanent markings on panels.

- B. Protect panels during delivery, storage, and handling to comply with manufacturer's direction and as required to prevent damage.

## 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify operable panel partition openings and storage arrangements by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
  - 1. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish opening and storage dimensions and proceed with fabricating operable panel partitions without field measurements. Coordinate construction to ensure that actual opening dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

## 1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Panel-Face Finish Material: Furnish full-width in quantity to cover both sides of two panels when installed.

## 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Provide written warranty by manufacturer of operable partitions agreeing to repair or replace any components with manufacturing defects.
- B. Partition Warranty Period: Two (2) years from date of shipment.
- C. Suspension System Warranty: Five (5) years from date of shipment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Modernfold, Inc.
  - 2. Panelfold, Inc.
  - 3. Advanced
- B. Basis of Design: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following product:
  - 1. Acousti-Seal #932 manually operated paired panel operable partition as manufactured by Modernfold, Inc.

## 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Frame: Steel sheet, not less than 16 Gauge nominal specified thickness for uncoated steel.
- B. Gypsum Board: ASTM C 36.
- C. Plywood: DOC PS 1.
- D. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1.
- E. Medium-Density Fiberboard: ANSI A208.2.

## 2.3 OPERATION

- A. Acousti-Seal #932: Series of paired flat panels hinged together in pairs, manually operated, top supported with operable floor seals.
- B. Final Closure: Horizontally expanding panel edge with removable crank.

## 2.4 OPERABLE PAIRED PANEL PARTITIONS

- A. Panel Construction: Provide top reinforcement as required to support panel from suspension components and provide reinforcement for hardware attachment. Fabricate panels with tight hairline joints and concealed fasteners. Fabricate panels so finished in-place partition is rigid; level; plumb; aligned, with tight joints and uniform appearance; and free of bow, warp, twist, deformation, and surface and finish irregularities.
  - 1. Nominal 3 inch thick panels with horizontal and vertical framing members fabricated from minimum 16- gauge formed steel with overlapped and welded corners for rigidity. Top channel is reinforced to support suspension system components. Frame is designed so that full vertical edges of panels are of formed steel and provide concealed protection of the edges of the panel skin.
  - 2. Panel skin to be nominal 21 gauge roll-formed steel wrapping around the panel edge. Panel skins shall be lock formed and welded directly to the frame for unitized construction.
  - 3. STC Rating: 50 per ASTM E-90-70 test procedure or as noted otherwise in schedule at end of section.
  - 4. Hinges to be full leaf butt hinges, attached directly to the panel frame. Welded hinge anchor plates within panel shall further support hinge mounting into frame. Hinges mounted into panel edge or vertical astragal is not acceptable.
- B. Dimensions: Fabricate operable panel partitions, from manufacturer's standard sizes, to form an assembled system of dimensions indicated on Drawings and verified by field measurements.

- C. Trimless Edges: Fabricate exposed panel edges so finish facing wraps uninterrupted around panel, covering edge and resulting in an installed partition with facing visible on vertical panel edges, without trim, for minimal sightlines at panel-to-panel joints.
- D. Operable Panel Partition Characteristics: Comply with requirements indicated in the Operable Panel Partition Schedule at the end of Part 3.
- E. Trim: No vertical or horizontal trim required or allowed on edges of panels; minimal groove appearance at all panel joints.
- F. Hardware: Manufacturer's standard as required to operate operable panel partition and accessories; with decorative, protective finish.

## 2.5 SEALS

- A. General: Provide types of acoustical seals indicated that produce operable panel partitions complying with acoustical performance requirements and the following:
  - 1. Seals made from materials and profiles that minimize sound leakage.
  - 2. Seals fitting tight at contact surfaces and sealing continuously between adjacent panels and between operable panel partition perimeter and adjacent surfaces, when operable panel partition is extended, closed, and in place.
- B. Vertical Seals: Interlocking sound seals between panels to be roll-formed steel astragals, with reversible tongue and groove configuration in each panel edge for universal panel operation. Rigid plastic astragals or astragals in only one panel edge are not acceptable.
- C. Horizontal Top Seals: Continuous contact extruded vinyl bulb shape with pairs of non-contacting vinyl fingers to prevent distortion without the need for mechanically operated parts.
- D. Horizontal Bottom Seals: Mechanical, retractable, constant-force-contact seal exerting uniform constant pressure on floor when extended, ensuring horizontal and vertical sealing and resisting panel movement.
  - 1. Automatically Operated: Automatic operable seals providing nominal 2-inch operating clearance with an operating range of +0.50-inch to -1.50-inch which automatically drop as panels are positioned, without the need for tools or cranks.

## 2.6 FINISH FACING

- A. General: Provide Class "A" rated material with finish facings that comply with indicated fire-test-response characteristics and that are factory applied to operable panel partitions with appropriate backing, using mildew-resistant nonstaining adhesive as recommended by facing manufacturer's written instructions.



1. Apply one-piece, seamless facings free from air bubbles, wrinkles, blisters, and other defects, with no gaps or overlaps. Horizontal butted edges are not permitted. Tightly secure and conceal raw and selvage edges of facing for finished appearance.
  2. Where facings with directional, repeating, or matching grain are indicated, mark facing top and attach facing in same direction.
- B. Vinyl-Coated Fabric Wall Covering: Manufacturer's standard mildew-resistant, washable, reinforced vinyl-coated fabric wall covering; complying with CFFA-W-101-B for Type indicated; Class A.
1. Antimicrobial Treatment: Additives capable of inhibiting growth of microbes, including, but not limited to, Staphylococcus aureus, Escherichia coli, and Aspergillus niger.

## 2.7 SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Suspension Tracks: Minimum 11 gauge, .12 inch roll-formed Steel with adjustable steel hanger rods for overhead support, designed for type of operation, size, and weight of operable panel partition indicated. Size track to support partition operation and storage without damage to suspension system, operable panel partitions, or adjacent construction. Limit track deflection to no more than 0.10 inch between bracket supports. Provide a continuous system of track sections and accessories to accommodate configuration and layout indicated for partition operation and storage. Aluminum tracks are not acceptable.
1. Panel Guide: Steel; finished with factory-applied, decorative, protective finish.
  2. Head Closure Trim: As required for acoustical performance; with factory-applied, decorative, protective finish.
- B. Carriers: One all-steel trolley system with steel tired ball-bearing wheels per panel (except hinged panels). Non steel tires are not acceptable.
- C. Steel Finish: Factory-applied, corrosion-resistant, protective coating, unless otherwise indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine flooring, structural support, and opening, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of operable panel partitions. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with ASTM E 557, operable panel partition manufacturer's written installation instructions, Drawings, and approved Shop Drawings.
- B. Install operable panel partitions and accessories after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.
- C. Match operable panel partitions for color and pattern by installing panels from marked packages in numbered sequence indicated on Shop Drawings.
- D. Broken, cracked, chipped, deformed, or unmatched panels are not acceptable.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust operable panel partitions to operate smoothly, easily, and quietly, free from binding, warp, excessive deflection, distortion, nonalignment, misplacement, disruption, or malfunction, throughout entire operational range. Lubricate hardware electric operator and other moving parts.
- B. Pass Doors: Adjust to operate smoothly and easily, without binding or warping. Check and readjust operating hardware. Confirm that latches and locks engage accurately and securely without forcing or binding.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean soiled surfaces, fabric facing, metal surfaces, on completing installation of operable panel partitions, to remove dust, fingerprints, adhesives, and other foreign materials according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure operable panel partitions are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- C. Replace panels that cannot be cleaned and repaired, in a manner approved by Architect, before time of Substantial Completion.

### 3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain operable panel partitions.
  - 1. Test and adjust seals, hardware, carriers, tracks, exit signs, and other operable components. Replace damaged or malfunctioning operable components.
  - 2. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules for starting and stopping, troubleshooting, servicing, and maintaining equipment and schedules.
  - 3. Review data in maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section Project.

### 3.6 OPERABLE PANEL PARTITION SCHEDULE

- A. General: Products specified by name and model number represent the acceptable level of quality and are based on the "Basis of Design" listed above. Products of equal or greater quality by another manufacturer specified are acceptable.
- B. Operable Panel Partition:
  - 1. Available Product: Modernfold Acousti-Seal #932.
  - 2. Partition Operation and Configuration: Series of individual flat panels, manually operated, top supported with operable floor seals.
  - 3. Steel-Frame Panel Construction: Nominal 21 ga. roll-formed steel wrapping around the panel edge. Panel skins shall be lock formed and welded directly to the frame for unitized construction.
  - 4. Panel Weight: 8 lb/sq. ft.
  - 5. Panel Thickness: Not less than 3 inches.
  - 6. Edges: Trimless.
  - 7. Initial Closure: Fixed jamb.
  - 8. Final Closure: Hinged panel closure.
  - 9. Finish Facing: Class "A" rated, reinforced heavy duty vinyl with woven backing complying with CFFA-W-101-B.
    - a. Total Weight: 30 ounces/linear yard.
    - b. Color/Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  - 10. STC: Not less than 50.
  - 11. Hinges for Closure Panels, Pass Doors, and Pocket Doors shall be full leaf butt hinges, attached directly to the panel frame. Hinges mounted into panel edge or vertical astragal are not acceptable.
  - 12. Suspension Track: 11 gauge, 0.12-inch roll formed steel.
  - 13. Suspension System: #17 Suspension System.

END OF SECTION 102239

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 102800 – TOILET AND BATH ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Toiler and bath accessories.
  - 2. Mirrors.
  - 3. Childcare accessories.
- B. Owner-Furnished Material: Refer to the Toilet Accessory Schedule on the Drawings.
- C. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 10 Section "Toilet Compartments."

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include the following:
  - 1. Construction details and dimensions.
  - 2. Anchoring and mounting requirements, including requirements for cutouts in other work and substrate preparation.
  - 3. Material and finish descriptions.
  - 4. Features that will be included for Project.
  - 5. Manufacturer's warranty.
- B. Samples: Full size, for each accessory item to verify design, operation, and finish requirements.
  - 1. Approved full-size Samples will be returned and may be used in the Work.
- C. Product Schedule: Indicating types, quantities, sizes, and installation locations by room of each accessory required.
  - 1. Identify locations using room designations indicated.
  - 2. Identify products using designations indicated.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For toilet and bath accessories to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: For products listed together in the same Part 2 articles, obtain products from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.
- B. Deliver inserts and anchoring devices set into concrete or masonry as required to prevent delaying the Work.

#### 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Mirror Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace mirrors that develop visible silver spoilage defects and that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304, 0.031-inch minimum nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Brass: ASTM B 19, flat products; ASTM B 16/B 16M, rods, shapes, forgings, and flat products with finished edges; or ASTM B 30, castings.

- C. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Designation CS (cold rolled, commercial steel), 0.036-inch minimum nominal thickness.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with G60 hot-dip zinc coating.
- E. Galvanized-Steel Mounting Devices: ASTM A 153/A 153M, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
- F. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit and tamper-and-theft resistant where exposed, and of galvanized steel where concealed.
- G. Chrome Plating: ASTM B 456, Service Condition Number SC 2 (moderate service).
- H. Mirrors: ASTM C 1503, Mirror Glazing Quality, clear-glass mirrors, nominal 6.0 mm thick.

## 2.2 TOILET AND BATH ACCESSORIES

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. American Specialties, Inc.
  - 2. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc (Basis of Design).
  - 3. Bradley Corporation.
  - 4. Brocar.
- B. Refer to the Toilet Accessory Schedule on the drawings for specific types of accessories required.

## 2.3 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with full-length, continuous hinges. Equip units for concealed anchorage and with corrosion-resistant backing plates.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories according to manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.
- B. Grab Bars: Install to withstand a downward load of at least 250 lbf (1112 N), when tested according to ASTM F 446.

- C. Secure mirrors to walls in concealed, tamper-resistant manner with special hangers, toggle bolts, or screws. Set units level, plumb, and square at locations indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions for substrate indicated.

### 3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation. Replace damaged or defective items.
- B. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.
- C. Clean and polish exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.3 TOILET ACCESSORY SCHEDULE

- A. A Toilet Accessory Schedule on the drawings lists the types of accessories required. The schedule includes model numbers of specified items as manufactured by Bobrick, and identify those to be supplied by the Owner. The inclusion of these model numbers is to provide a guide as to quality, function, size and materials; they are not meant to be exclusionary or proprietary. Substitution of equal products by other manufacturers will be considered.

END OF SECTION 102800



## SECTION 104413 - FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Fire-protection cabinets for portable fire extinguishers.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 10 Section "Fire Extinguishers."

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Show door hardware, cabinet type, trim style, and panel style. Include roughing-in dimensions and details showing recessed- or semi-recessed-mounting method and relationships of box and trim to surrounding construction.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fire-protection cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For fire-protection cabinets to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size of fire-protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated are accommodated.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of fire-protection cabinets with wall depths.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Fire-Protection Cabinets: Listed and labeled to comply with requirements in ASTM E 814 for fire-resistance rating of walls where they are installed.

### 2.2 FIRE-PROTECTION CABINET

- A. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
    - b. JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group.
    - c. Larsens Manufacturing Company.
    - d. Potter Roemer LLC.
- B. Cabinet Construction: Nonrated; except 1-hour fire rated where installed in a 1-hour rated wall; or 2-hour fire rated where installed in a 2-hour rated wall.
  - 1. Fire-Rated Cabinets: Construct fire-rated cabinets with double walls fabricated from 0.043-inch-thick cold-rolled steel sheet lined with minimum 5/8-inch-thick fire-barrier material. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
- C. Cabinet Material: Cold-rolled steel sheet.
  - 1. Shelf: Same metal and finish as cabinet.
- D. Semi-Recessed Cabinet: One-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend).
  - 1. Square-Edge Trim: 1-1/4- to 1-1/2-inch backbend depth.
- E. Cabinet Trim Material: Extruded-aluminum shapes.
- F. Door Material: Extruded-aluminum shapes.
- G. Door Style: Full acrylic bubble frame
- H. Door Glazing: Molded acrylic bubble.
  - 1. Acrylic Bubble Color: Clear, transparent.
- I. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.

1. Provide projecting door pull and friction latch.
2. Provide continuous hinge, of same material and finish as trim permitting door to open 180 degrees.

J. Accessories:

1. Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to fire-protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
2. Lettered Door Handle: One-piece, cast-iron door handle with the word "FIRE" embossed into face.
3. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location.
  - a. Identify fire extinguisher in fire-protection cabinet with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER."
    - 1) Location: Applied to cabinet glazing.
    - 2) Application Process: Decals.
    - 3) Lettering Color: Red.
    - 4) Orientation: Vertical.
4. Alarm: Manufacturer's standard alarm that actuates when fire-protection cabinet door is opened and that is powered by batteries.

K. Materials:

1. Cold-Rolled Steel: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
  - a. Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat.
  - b. Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors and color densities.
2. Aluminum: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), with strength and durability characteristics of not less than Alloy 6063-T5 for aluminum sheet. ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M) for extruded shapes.
  - a. Finish: Clear anodic.

## 2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub) with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated.
1. Weld joints and grind smooth.
  2. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
  3. Prepare doors and frames to receive locks.
  4. Install door locks at factory.

- B. Cabinet Doors: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, from materials indicated and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles.
  - 1. Fabricate door frames with tubular stiles and rails and hollow-metal design, minimum 1/2 inch thick.
  - 2. Fabricate door frames of one-piece construction with edges flanged.
  - 3. Miter and weld perimeter door frames.
- C. Cabinet Trim: Fabricate cabinet trim in one piece with corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth.

## 2.4 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's AMP 500, "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products," for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of fire-protection cabinets from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Finish fire-protection cabinets after assembly.
- D. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where semirecessed cabinets will be installed.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare recesses for semirecessed fire-protection cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire-protection cabinets in locations and at mounting heights indicated or, if not indicated, at heights indicated below:
  - 1. Fire-Protection Cabinets: 54 inches above finished floor to top of cabinet.

- B. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Fasten cabinets to structure, square and plumb.
  - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide semirecessed fire-protection cabinets.
  - 2. Fasten mounting brackets to inside surface of fire-protection cabinets, square and plumb.

#### 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as fire-protection cabinets are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Adjust fire-protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.
- C. On completion of fire-protection cabinet installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Touch up marred finishes, or replace fire-protection cabinets that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket manufacturers.
- E. Replace fire-protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 104413

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 104416 - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers and mounting brackets for fire extinguishers.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 10 Section "Fire Protection Cabinets".
  - 2. Division 11 Section "Food Service Equipment" for fire-extinguishing systems provided as part of commercial-kitchen exhaust hoods.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rating and classification, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire extinguisher and mounting brackets.
- B. Product Schedule: For fire extinguishers. Coordinate final fire-extinguisher schedule with fire-protection cabinet schedule to ensure proper fit and function.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire extinguishers to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire extinguishers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Failure of hydrostatic test according to NFPA 10.
  - b. Faulty operation of valves or release levers.
2. Warranty Period: Six years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. NFPA Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFPA 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."
- B. Fire Extinguishers: Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  1. Provide fire extinguishers approved, listed, and labeled by FM Global.

### 2.2 PORTABLE, HAND-CARRIED FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Type, size, and capacity for each fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket indicated.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Badger Fire Protection.
    - b. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
    - c. JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group.
    - d. Larsens Manufacturing Company.
    - e. Potter Roemer LLC.
  2. Valves: Manufacturer's standard.
  3. Handles and Levers: Manufacturer's standard.
  4. Instruction Labels: Include pictorial marking system complying with NFPA 10, Appendix B.
- B. Wet-Chemical Type: UL-rated 2-A:1-B:C:K, 1.6-gal. nominal capacity in stainless-steel container; with pressure-indicating gage, for use at locations in the Kitchen.
- C. Regular Dry-Chemical Type: UL-rated 4-A:60-B:C, 10 lb. nominal capacity, with sodium bicarbonate-based dry chemical in manufacturer's standard enameled container, for use throughout the building except where indicated below.



- D. Regular Dry-Chemical Type 20-A-120B:C, 20 lb. nominal capacity, with sodium bicarbonate-based dry chemical in enameled-steel container, for use at locations in Maintenance areas.

## 2.3 MOUNTING BRACKETS

- A. Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's standard galvanized steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to wall or structure, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or red black baked-enamel finish.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Badger Fire Protection.
    - b. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
    - c. JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group.
    - d. Larsens Manufacturing Company.
    - e. Potter Roemer LLC.
- B. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated by Architect.
  - 1. Identify bracket-mounted fire extinguishers with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER" in red letter decals applied to mounting surface.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging.
  - 1. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged fire extinguishers.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire extinguishers and mounting brackets in locations indicated and in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Mounting Brackets: 54 inches above finished floor to top of fire extinguisher.
- B. Mounting Brackets: Fasten mounting brackets to surfaces, square and plumb, at locations indicated.

END OF SECTION 104416

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 105113 – METAL LOCKERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Welded personal Storage Lockers with built-in bench drawers (Note: all lockers can accept electrical functionality as required)
  - 2. Welded ADA Compliant Personal Storage Lockers with built-in external access drawers (Note: all lockers can accept electrical functionality as required)
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Sections in Division 9 – Finishes, relating to floor finish and base materials.

#### 1.3 REFERENCES

- A. American National Standards Institute (ANSI) Standards:  
Applicable standards for fasteners used for assembly.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) Standards:  
Applicable standards for steel sheet materials used for fabrication  
Applicable standards for the testing of electrostatically applied Powder Coat Paint
- C. American Institute Of Steel Construction (AISC) Standards:  
Applicable standards for steel materials used for fabrication.

#### 1.4 DESCRIPTION

- A. General: Welded Metal Lockers only with end-user reconfigurable interior. Specialized lances to provide the flexibility of on-site, end-user reconfiguration/addition of internal components anytime, anywhere, now or in the future.
- B. Finishes:  
  
Fabricated Metal Components and Assemblies: All components to be painted with an electrostatically applied Powder Coat paint that can meet or exceed test requirements set out by ASTM standard D3451-06 Standard Guide for Testing Coating Powders and Powder Coatings.

C. Sizes:

Personal Storage Lockers with built-in bench drawers: nominal heights of 72 inches, nominal widths of 18 inches and nominal depths of 18 inches.

Personal Storage Locker built-in bench drawer nominal height is 18 inches and nominal depth is 30 inches.

ADA Compliant Personal Storage Lockers with built-in external access drawers: nominal heights of 72 inches, nominal widths of 18 inches and nominal depths of 18 inches.

ADA Compliant Personal Storage Locker external access drawer: nominal height of 18 inches, nominal depth is 18 inches.

## 1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Design Requirements:

Limit overall width not to exceed specified nominal width; locker width designed for zero growth.

B. Seismic Performance: Provide Welded Metal Lockers capable of withstanding the effects of earthquake movement when required by applicable building codes.

C. ADA Personal Storage Lockers with built-in external access drawers to have interior configurations and hasp lock assemblies lowered to meet ADA requirements.

## 1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product literature and installation instructions for each type of welded metal locker required. Include data substantiating that products to be furnished comply with requirements of the contract documents.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication, assembly, and installation details, including descriptions of procedures and diagrams. Show complete locker installation layout, including quantities, locations and types of accessory units required. Include notations and descriptions of all installation items and components.

Show installation details at non-standard conditions, if any.

Provide layout, dimensions, and identification of each unit, corresponding to sequence of installation procedures.

Provide installation schedule and procedures to ensure proper installation.

C. Samples: Provide minimum 3 inches square example of each color and texture on actual substrate for each component to remain exposed after installation.

D. Selection Samples: For initial selection of colors and textures, submit manufacturer's color charts, consisting of actual product pieces, showing full range of colors and textures available.

E. Warranty: Submit draft copy of proposed warranty for review by the Architect.

- F. Maintenance Data: Provide written documentation of the manufacturer's statement, claiming the maintenance free nature of the product.
- G. Reference List: Provide a list of recently installed welded metal lockers to be visited by owner, architect, and contractor. Intent of list is to aid in verifying the suitability of manufacturer's products and comparison with materials and product specified in this section. Include contact name, address, and phone numbers.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Engage an experienced manufacturer who is ISO 9001:2008 certified for the design, production, installation and service of welded metal lockers. Furnish certification attesting ISO 9001:2008 quality system registration.
  - 1. Manufacturer of Lockers must have a minimum of 25-years' experience in the continuous manufacture of metal storage products. Manufacturer certification required.
  - 2. Manufacturer must be ISO 9001 certified for a minimum of 5 years. Certification from ISO required with proposal. Other ISO certifications not acceptable. Or submit entire detailed manufacturer's quality control program.
  - 3. Manufacturer must submit testing reports and results for cycle testing on their Personal Storage Lockers.
- B. Manufacturer must have a dedicated Area Contractor/ Dealer/ Distributor actively servicing the region, with a proven track record of installing and servicing the manufacturers systems. Area Contractor/ Dealer/ Distributor should employ full-time factory trained and certified service technicians, and maintain an inventory of service parts. Submit documentation showing proof of employment of these service technicians and certifications by manufacturer on manufacturer's letterhead confirming certification levels of these dealership employees. It is required that service requests be responded to within 24 hours. Service technicians must be full-time employees. Service technicians contracted by the Area Contractor/ Dealer/ Distributor are not acceptable.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer who is the manufacturer's authorized representative for the specified products for installing welded metal lockers.

Minimum Qualifications: 1-year experience installing welded metal lockers of comparable size and complexity to specified project requirements.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Follow manufacturer's instructions and recommendations for delivery, storage and handling requirements.

## 1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify quantities of welded metal locker units before fabrication. Indicate verified measurements on shop drawings. Coordinate fabrication and delivery to ensure no delay in progress of the work.
- B. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating welded metal lockers units without field measurements. Coordinate construction to ensure actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

## 1.10 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Sequence welded metal lockers with other work to minimize possibility of damage and soiling, during remainder of construction period.
- B. Schedule installation of specified welded metal lockers after finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.
- C. Provide components, which must be built in at a time, which causes no delays in the general progress of the work.
- D. Pre-installation Conference: Schedule and conduct conference on project site to review methods and procedures for installing welded Metal Lockers including, but not limited to, the following:

Recommended attendees include:

- 1. Owner's Representative.
- 2. Prime Contractor or representative.
- 3. The Architect.
- 4. Manufacturer's representative.
- 5. Subcontractors or installers whose work may affect, or be affected by, the work of this section.

## 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Provide a written warranty, executed by Contractor, Installer, and Manufacturer, agreeing to repair or replace units, which fail in materials or workmanship within the established warranty period. This warranty shall be in addition to, and not a limitation of, other rights the Owner may have under General Condition's provisions of the Contract Documents.
- B. Limited Lifetime Warranty: Subject to the terms in the written warranty, warrant the original purchaser exclusively that the locker frames manufactured by it will be free from defects in materials and workmanship for the lifetime of the locker.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis of Design: FreeStyle™ Personal Storage Lockers with built-in bench drawers and FreeStyle™ ADA compliant Personal Storage with built-in external access drawers; based upon welded metal lockers manufactured by Spacesaver Corporation, 1450 Janesville Avenue, Fort Atkinson, Wisconsin 53538-2798. Telephone: 800-492-3434.
- B. Manufacturer's: Subject to compliance with requirements with the basis of design, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work, include the following:
  - 1. Republic Storage Systems Co., Inc.
  - 2. Lyon Metal Products, Inc.
  - 3. Penco Products, Inc.: Subsidiary of Vesper Corporation.
  - 4. DeBourgh Manufacturing Co.

### 2.2 BASIC MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and quality of workmanship, which meets or exceeds established industry standards for products specified. Use furniture grade sheet metal, solid hardwood benches and fasteners for component fabrication unless indicated otherwise. Material thicknesses/gauges are manufacturer's option unless indicated otherwise. All specifications are mandatory; vendor must submit all information to prove compliance.

### 2.3 LOCKER TYPES

- A. Personal Storage Lockers. Provide personal storage lockers with built-in bench drawers by Spacesaver Corporation.
- B. ADA compliant Personal Storage Lockers. Provide ADA personal storage lockers with built-in external access drawers by Spacesaver Corporation.
- C. Lockers equipped with accessories as requested.
- D. Note: (Submit proof with proposal)
  - 1. All locker types to be equipped with the functionality of attaching a continuous sloped top.

### 2.4 MANUFACTURED COMPONENTS

- A. Welded Frame:
  - 1. The welded frame must consist of top, bottom, back, and sides constructed of a minimum of 18-gauge steel. All frame components shall be joined using resistance welding. Riveting of structural members will not be permitted.

2. Horizontal front flanges will be a minimum of 2 inches. Vertical front flanges will be a minimum of 1 inch. Horizontal and vertical flanges will overlap and be secured with a minimum two (2) resistance welds per corner.
3. Corner gussets shall be MIG and spot welded in each of the four front corners of the locker for increased stiffness and rigidity.
4. Provide side panel lances evenly spaced on 3 inch centers. Lances to provide the flexibility of on-site, end-user reconfiguration/addition of internal components anytime, anywhere, now or in the future.
5. Bench Housing for built-in bench drawer.
6. Welded frame construction shall consist of top, bottom, and side components joined by using resistance welding. Riveting of bench housing structural members will not be permitted.
7. Corner gussets shall be welded in the two (2) front bottom corners of the bench housing for increased stiffness and rigidity.
8. Horizontal front flanges will be a minimum of 1 inch
9. Vertical front flanges will be a minimum of 1 inch
10. Horizontal and Vertical front flanges will overlap and shall be secured with minimum of one (1) resistance weld per corner.
11. Side panels – Lances symmetric and evenly spaced to provide optimum component locations (standard based on 3 inch on center vertical placement to match mating locker lance design).
12. Return flanges on housing to securely fasten housing to welded frame of locker.
13. Base of bench housing shall include four (4) 3/8"-16 UNC threaded weld-nuts and corresponding leveling feet.
14. Top of bench housing shall include hole pattern for mating bench seat.
15. Sides of bench housing shall include mounting holes in the event lockers are ganged together.
16. Lockers with built-in bench drawer and built-in external access drawer shall have intermediate base shelf with interlocking mechanism for securing drawer when locker door is closed.
17. Lockers shall be prepared with mounting holes for use with the continuous sloped top system.
18. Lockers shall be prepared with mounting holes for attaching necessary trim components
19. Locker shall be prepared with mounting holes for ganging lockers back-to-back or side-by-side
20. Base of lockers shall include four (4) 3/8"-16 UNC threaded weld-nuts and corresponding leveling feet.
21. All locker sizes and types to be specified by architect/owner.
  - a. Width:



- i. Personal Storage Locker with built-in bench drawer and ADA compliant external access drawer: 18 inches
  - b. Height:
    - i. Personal Storage Locker with built in bench drawer and ADA compliant external access drawer: 72 inches
  - c. Depth:
    - i. All lockers: 18 inches
    - ii. Bench drawers: 30 inches
      - 1) Bench seat depth: 9.5 inches (butch block seat, manufacturer's standard)
      - 2) Leading edge of bench seat to extend 1.125 inches from front of bench drawer
      - 3) Bench seat width: minimum of 18 inches
    - iii. ADA external access drawer: 18 inches
- B. Drawers (for bench drawer and external access drawer):
  - 1. Drawer body wrapper shall have welded frame construction. Riveting of structural members will not be permitted.
  - 2. Drawers for locker with built-in bench drawers and built-in external access drawers shall have box-formed drawer front.
  - 3. Provide interlock system for securing drawer when main locker doors are closed and provide access only when main locker door/s is opened.
  - 4. Built-in bench drawer shall have a nominal 30 inch depth.
  - 5. ADA external access drawer shall have a nominal 18 inch depth
  - 6. Provide a flush mounted pull handle.
  - 7. Drawer Slides: Provide 200 lbs. maximum load capacity and pass 50,000 cycle performance testing (Max. load, uniform distribution) (Test data to be provided by manufacturer upon request)
  - 8. Bench drawer minimum 26.5 inches drawer extension
  - 9. ADA external access drawer base minimum 21 inches drawer extension
  - 10. Provide louvered air vents in drawer front when built-in bench drawer or built-in external access drawer models are required.
  - 11. Provide capability of attaching glides for Body Armored Drying Rack, as requested.
- C. Bench Seat:
  - 1. Provide 9.5 inches deep laminated kiln dried maple bench seat; material thickness 1.25 inches.
  - 2. Front (leading edge) of bench seat to have .625 inch radius bull nose.

3. Finish of bench seat shall be sanded smooth and have two (2) coats of catalyzed varnish applied.

D. Single-Piece Welded Doors (Single Door Models):

1. Shall be formed from two (2) pieces of minimum 18-gauge cold rolled steel box formed and welded together using modern GMAW techniques. Single-piece door with inner and outer door panels shall have a combined steel thickness of no less than 0.096 inches thick. Welded door design with inner panel optimizes structural integrity of locker door system over and above any single frame door design.
2. Exterior door panel shall be constructed with formed flanges and return flanges to add stiffness.
3. Internal door panel shall be constructed with formed flanges for added stiffness.
4. All inner door panel heights shall be minimum 70% of external door height.
  - a. Single-piece welded door frame shall consist of internal door panel nested inside exterior door panel and welded per the following requirements:
  - b. Top / bottom. Exterior and Interior panels to be welded in a minimum of three (3) places with weld spacing not to exceed 6 inches between adjacent welds and 1 inch from any corner.
5. Sides. Exterior and interior panels to be welded with spacing not to exceed 12 inches between adjacent welds and 1 inch from any corner.
6. Inner door panel to have peg board style hole pattern, allowing the attachment of optional Document Holder and any standard peg board accessory.
7. Inner door panel to have 4 inch rectangular slot centered towards the top of the locker to allow for personal hanging storage.
8. External door panel shall have louvers to provide adequate air circulation throughout locker system.
  - a. Louvered air vents shall be located at the bottom of the locker door to enhance circulation of mechanically extracted air from the bottom of the locker out of the top.
  - b. Louvered air vents shall be approximately 3 inches in width and 0.75 inches in height and spaced on 1 inch centers.
9. Single door designs to be used in 18 inch locker widths
10. All doors shall have neoprene silencers on each door for noise reduction
11. Door torsional deflection shall not exceed 0.1875 inch with a 20 lb. point load. (Test data to be provided by manufacturer upon request)
12. Hinge:
  - a. Provide 16-gauge full length hinge for increased strength and security of locker system.
  - b. Hinges to be welded to door frame with spot welds not to exceed 6 inch separation.

- c. Door assembly to be riveted to door frame on factory pre-established hole pattern.
- 13. Locking Mechanism.
  - a. Provide padlock hasp locking option (locking option has protective stainless steel cover plate for durability and scratch resistance):
  - b. ADA compliant lockers to have padlock hasp located lower on door. (To be determined by current specifications.
- E. Interior/Accessory components:
  - 1. All interior components must be constructed of minimum 18-gauge steel (unless otherwise clarified in specification).
  - 2. For added security, internal component can be secured utilizing blind rivets, threaded fasteners, or bending specially designed tab.
  - 3. All interior components available at time of order and as post-installation upgrades in the future.
  - 4. Shelf with integral hanger bracket (manufacturer standard)
    - a. Size specified by locker width.
    - b. Hanger bracket designed with perforations on approximately 3 inch centers to insure clothing separation for optimum ventilation.
    - c. Performance: Uniform load rating 300 lbs.
    - d. Shelf rear return flange stops minimum .50 inch short of locker back panel on order to allow air circulation throughout entire locker assembly.
  - 5. Adjustable Shelf
    - a. Perforated (use as drying rack)
    - b. Size specified by locker width
    - c. Tested performance: Uniform load rating 100 lbs.
    - d. Shelf rear return flange stops minimum .50 inch short of locker back panel on order to allow air circulation throughout entire locker assembly
    - e. All performance test data shall be provided by manufacturer upon request.
  - 6. Modular Shelf
    - a. Provides storage compartment for smaller items
    - b. Approximate compartment size: 9 inches wide and 12 inches high
    - c. Modular shelves to have tabs to interlock with frame side panel lances
    - d. Modular shelves vertical sides to have lances that match with opposing side panel lances.
    - e. Modular shelves shall have two (2) locations on vertical side panel for attaching hooks, and one (1) location on bottom for attaching double hook accessories.

- f. Shelf rear return flange stops approximately 1 inch short of locker back panel on order to allow air circulation throughout modular shelf.
  - g. Provide modular shelf with slots for connection with file dividers and shelf back stop. File dividers will aid in maintaining a neat and orderly locker system.
- 7. Hooks (Specified by Architect/Owner)
  - a. Single Hooks – shall have the ability to attach single hooks on the side of the Modular Shelf and on the side panel lances
- 8. Hook Bracket Hanger Assembly (Specified by Architect/Owner)
  - a. Shall have the ability to attach a three-hook bracket assembly to any lanced location on the side panels of the locker.
- F. Locker Tag Numbers
  - 1. Shall provide locker numbers on each locker per customer requirement
- G. Provide ADA compliant lockers for each type of locker specified. Lockers to meet 2015 International Building Code and COMAR 05.02.02 Maryland Accessibility Code. Refer floor plans for general locations of ADA lockers. Locker manufacturer to be responsible for providing the number of required lockers.
  - 1. Provide ADA compliant handles and locking devices.
  - 2. Mount shelves at recommended heights.
- H. ACCESSORIES:
  - 1. Continuous Sloped Top. Provide manufacturer's standard.
    - a. Height for 18" deep lockers: 8 inches.
    - b. Slope top components to include (as required with design): Starter/End/Intermediate Covers (S/E/INT), End Caps (End), Corner Fillers (CF), Supports and Splice Covers.
  - 2. Trim and Fillers: Provide manufacturer's standard.
  - 3. End Panels: End Panels with no exposed fasteners shall be provided on the end of each locker run; thus providing a clean and aesthetically pleasing appearance.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Coordinate fabrication and delivery to ensure no delay in progress of the work.

## 2.6 FINISHES

- A. Colors: Selected from manufacturer's standard, custom or metallic available colors. Provide as selected by Architect

- B. Paint Finish: Textured (Standard) – Provide factory applied electrostatic powder coat paint. Meet or exceed specifications of the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) Standards:

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine Lockers scheduled to receive accessories with Installer present for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of specified accessory items.
- B. Proceed with accessory installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Follow manufacturer's written instructions for installation of each type of accessory item specified.
- B. Anchoring of lockers according to manufacturer's recommendations. (Requirements to be determined by Architect/Owner)

#### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verify accessory unit alignment and plumb after installation. Correct if required, following manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Remove components that are chipped, scratched, or otherwise damaged and which do not match adjoining work. Replace with new matching units, installed as specified and in manner to eliminate evidence of replacement.

#### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust all accessories to provide smoothly operating, visually acceptable installation.

#### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. Immediately upon completion of installation, clean components and surfaces. Remove surplus materials, rubbish and debris, resulting from installation, upon completion of work and leave areas of installation in neat, clean condition.

#### 3.6 DEMONSTRATION/TRAINING

- A. Schedule and conduct demonstration of installed accessory items and features with Owner's personnel.

- B. Schedule and conduct maintenance training with Owner's maintenance personnel. Training session should include lecture and demonstration of all maintenance and repair procedures that end-user personnel would normally perform.

### 3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect system against damage during remainder of construction period. Advise Owner of additional protection needed to ensure that system will be without damage or deterioration at time of substantial completion.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 107500 - FLAGPOLES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:

- 1. Aluminum flagpoles.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide flagpoles capable of withstanding the effects of wind loads as determined according to the building code in effect for this Project or NAAMM FP 1001, "Guide Specifications for Design Loads of Metal Flagpoles," whichever is more stringent.
  - 1. Base flagpole design on maximum standard-size flag suitable for use with pole or flag size indicated, whichever is more stringent.
  - 2. Basic Wind Speed: For Project location, 90 mph (40 m/s).

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of flagpole required. Include installation instructions.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show general layout, jointing, grounding method, and anchoring and supporting systems.
  - 1. Include details of foundation system for ground-set poles.
- C. Structural Calculations: For flagpoles indicated to comply with certain design loadings, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each flagpole as a complete unit from a single manufacturer, including fittings, accessories, bases, and anchorage devices.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. General: Spiral wrap flagpoles with heavy kraft paper or other weathertight wrapping and enclose in a hard fiber tube or other protective container.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Baartol Co., Inc.
  - 2. Concord Industries, Inc.
  - 3. Eder Flag Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - 4. Ewing: John Ewing & Co. Inc.
  - 5. ICC Manufacturing Co.; Morgan-Francis Div.; AABEC Pole Div.
  - 6. Kearney-National Inc.; American Flagpole Div.
  - 7. Lingo, Inc.; Acme Flagpole Co. Div.
  - 8. Michigan Flagpole Inc.
  - 9. Olympus Flag & Banner; EMC Div.
  - 10. PLP Composite Technologies, Inc.
  - 11. Pole-Tech Co., Inc.

### 2.2 FLAGPOLES

- A. Pole Construction, General: Construct poles and ship to Project site in one piece, if possible. If more than one piece is necessary, provide snug-fitting precision joints with self-aligning, internal splicing sleeve arrangement for weathertight, hairline field joints.
- B. Aluminum Flagpoles: Fabricate from seamless, extruded tubing complying with ASTM B 241 (ASTM B 241M), alloy 6063, with a minimum wall thickness of 3/16 inch (4.8 mm). Heat treat after fabrication to comply with ASTM B 597, temper T6.
  - 1. Provide cone-tapered aluminum flagpoles. Exposed height of flagpole shall be 35' (1 required) and 30' (2 required).
- C. Foundation Tube: Galvanized corrugated-steel foundation tube, 0.0635-inch (1.6-mm) minimum wall thickness, sized to suit flagpole and installation. Provide with 3/16-inch (4.8-mm) steel bottom plate and support plate; 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) diameter, steel ground spike; and steel centering wedges all welded together. Galvanize steel parts, including foundation tube, after assembly. Provide loose hardwood wedges at top of foundation tube for plumbing pole.



## 2.3 FITTINGS

- A. Finial Ball: Manufacturer's standard flush-seam ball, sized as indicated or, if not indicated, to match pole-butt diameter.
  - 1. 0.063-inch spun aluminum with gold anodized finish.
- B. Internal Halyard, Winch System: Manually operated winch with control stop device and removable handle, stainless-steel cable halyard, and concealed revolving truck assembly with plastic-coated counterweight and sling. Provide flush access door secured with cylinder lock. Finish truck assembly to match flagpole.
- C. Halyard Flag Snaps: Provide 2 swivel snap hooks per halyard, as follows:
  - 1. Chromium-plated bronze.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Concrete: Provide concrete composed of portland cement, coarse and fine aggregate, and water mixed in proportions to attain a 28-day compressive strength of not less than 3000 psi (20 MPa), complying with ASTM C 94.
- B. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107.
- C. Sand: ASTM C 33, fine aggregate.
- D. Elastomeric Sealant: Comply with requirements of Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

## 2.5 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations relative to applying and designating finishes.
- B. Aluminum: Finish designations prefixed by AA conform to the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
  - 1. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare in-ground flagpoles by painting below-grade portions with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.
- B. Excavation: For foundation, excavate to neat clean lines in undisturbed soil. Remove loose soil and foreign matter from excavation and moisten earth before placing concrete.
- C. Provide forms where required due to unstable soil conditions and for perimeter of flagpole base at grade. Secure forms, foundation tube, fiberglass sleeve, or anchor bolts in position, braced to prevent displacement during concreting.
- D. Place concrete immediately after mixing. Compact concrete in place by using vibrators. Moist-cure exposed concrete for not less than 7 days or use a nonstaining curing compound.
- E. Trowel exposed concrete surfaces to a smooth, dense finish, free of trowel marks, and uniform in texture and appearance. Provide positive slope for water runoff to base perimeter.

### 3.2 FLAGPOLE INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install flagpoles where shown and according to Shop Drawings and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Foundation-Tube Installation: Install flagpole in foundation tube, seated on bottom plate between steel centering wedges. Plumb flagpole and install hardwood wedges to secure flagpole in place. Place and compact sand in foundation tube and remove hardwood wedges. Seal top of foundation tube with a 2-inch (50-mm) layer of elastomeric sealant and cover with flashing collar.
- C. Baseplate Installation: Install baseplate on washers placed over leveling nuts on anchor bolts and adjust until flagpole is plumb. After flagpole is plumb, tighten retaining nuts and fill space under baseplate solidly with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout. Finish exposed grout surfaces smooth and slope 45 degrees away from edges of baseplate.

END OF SECTION 107500

## SECTION 115213 – PROJECTION SCREENS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Front projection screen assemblies for:

1. A104 – Small Classroom
2. B100 – Large Classroom
3. B102 – Large Classroom
4. B106 – Small Classroom
5. B109 – Simulation Lab
6. C100 – Multi-purpose Room (MPR)
7. B116 – Small Classroom
8. B119 – Small Classroom
9. B110 – Divisible Classroom
10. B112 – Divisible Classroom

#### 1.2 REFERENCES

A. Comply with the following related specification sections:

1. Section 061000 – Rough Carpentry: Wood blocking in walls and ceilings
2. Division 26 – Electrical
3. Section 274100 – Audiovisual Systems

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Reference the Division 01 specification for additional definitions.
- B. Final Acceptance: Owner's Representative's acceptance of project from Contractor.
- C. Furnished by Others: Receive delivery at job site or where called for and install.
- D. Owner's Representative: Architect or Engineer having contract directly with Owner for professional services.
- E. Relocate: Disassemble, disconnect, and transport equipment to new locations, then clean, test, and install ready to use.
- F. Replace: Remove and provide new item.
- G. Rough-in: Pipe, duct, conduit, equipment layout and installation.
- H. Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ): Federal, state, local, or other regional department, or individual having statutory authority.

#### 1.4 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Comply with the Division 01 specification for contract modification procedures.
- B. The Contractor shall submit to the Owner's Representative supporting documentation that the item proposed for substitution is equivalent to the item specified herein.
- C. The Owner's Representative will make a final determination of approval or rejection.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Comply with the Division 01 specification related to submittal procedures.
- B. Submit electronic copies of submittals in PDF format, compiled and un-compiled, editable coding as required for future system modification. Additional live formats (CAD, Excel, Word, etc.) are preferred to be submitted at the Contractor's discretion for the Owner's administrative purposes.
- C. Product data: manufacturer's catalog cut sheets and descriptive information on each product to be used, including:
  - 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations
  - 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations
  - 3. Installation methods
- D. Shop Drawings: show layouts and types of projections screens. Include the following:
  - 1. Location of screen centerline relative to ends of the screen case
  - 2. Location of wiring connections
  - 3. Location of seams in viewing surfaces
  - 4. Drop length
  - 5. Connections to supporting structure for pendant and recessed screens
  - 6. Anchorage details, if applicable
  - 7. Details of juncture of exposed surfaces with adjacent finishes
  - 8. Accessories
  - 9. Wiring diagrams
- E. Operation and maintenance data: provide manufacturer's operation and maintenance instructions.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source limitations: obtain each type of projection screen through one source from a single manufacturer. Obtain each screen as a complete unit, including necessary mounting hardware and accessories.
- B. Electrical components, devices, and accessories: listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver projection screens to project site in manufacturer's original unopened packaging. Inspect for damage and size before accepting delivery.
- B. Do not deliver projection screens until building is enclosed and other construction within spaces where screens will be installed is substantially complete and ready for screen installation.

#### 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of projection screens with adjacent construction, including ceiling framing, light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partitions.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SPECIFIC EQUIPMENT

- A. Refer to audiovisual plans, specification section 274100, and Schedule A equipment list to confirm quantities and locations.
- B. All Small Classrooms, Large Classrooms, and Divisible Classrooms will receive recessed ceiling-mounted projection screens, size 104" x 58". They will be motorized, tab-tensioned, and have a viewing surface with 0.6 gain.
  - 1. Manufacturer: Draper
  - 2. Part number 143022FB
    - a. Refer to audiovisual drawings showing black drop dimension
  - 3. Rooms
    - a. A104 – Small Classroom
    - b. B100 – Large Classroom
    - c. B102 – Large Classroom
    - d. B106 – Small Classroom
    - e. B116 – Small Classroom

- f. B119 – Small Classroom
  - g. B110 – Divisible Classroom
  - h. B112 – Divisible Classroom
- C. The Simulation Lab will receive recessed ceiling-mounted projection screens, size 140" x 79". They will be motorized, tab-tensioned, and have a viewing surface with 0.6 gain.
  - 1. Manufacturer: Draper
  - 2. Part number 143024FB
    - a. Refer to audiovisual drawings showing black drop dimension
  - 3. Rooms
    - a. B109 – Simulation Lab
- D. The Multi-Purpose Room will receive wall-mounted projection screens, size 140" x 79". They will be motorized, tab-tensioned, and have a viewing surface with 0.6 gain.
  - 1. Manufacturer: Draper
  - 2. Part number 101347
    - a. Refer to audiovisual drawings showing black drop dimension
  - 3. Rooms
    - a. C100 – Multi-purpose Room (MPR)

## 2.2 CONTROL

- A. Provide and install an ADA compliant 3 position switch with plate matching other electrical device cover plates in the room where the switch is installed.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General:
  - 1. Provide, install, configure, inspect, test and document as per the construction documents herein.
  - 2. Provide site presence and full coordination with design team, all involved consultants, contractors, manufacturer representatives, including but not limited to field verification of precursory work, layout and dimensioning, architectural details, power, data.
  - 3. Provide all licenses, permits, tests, independent testing, factory testing, reports, fees, inspections, and warranties as required.
  - 4. Provide hoisting, rigging, scaffolding as required to install your work.

5. Unless otherwise noted, provide trim rings, escutcheons, faceplates, wall plates for your work.
6. Include any additional cost for labor escalation, material cost increases, etc. associated with this work.

B. Layout

1. The Drawings are diagrammatic in nature and, unless explicitly dimensioned, indicate approximate locations of equipment and components. Changes in the location, and offsets of equipment and components which are not shown on the Drawings but are necessary to accommodate building conditions and coordination with the work of other trades, shall be made prior to installation, without additional cost.
2. Coordinate layout and sizing for backing, bracing, and structural steel requirements.
3. Field measure conditions necessary to ensure correct fabrication of materials provided by the Contractor.

C. Examination

1. Verify that substrate is finished and ready to accept screen installation.
2. Verify that openings for recessed screens are correctly sized.
3. Verify type and location of electrical connections.
4. Do not install projection screens until climate control systems are in place and interior painting and other finishes are completed.

D. Preparation

1. Coordinate screen installation with installation of projection systems.
2. Coordinate installation with adjacent construction and fixtures, including ceilings, walls, lighting, fire suppression, and registers and grilles.

E. Installation

1. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, using manufacturer's recommended hardware for relevant substrates.
2. Do not field cut screens.
3. Install screens in mountings as specified and as indicated on drawings.
4. Install plumb and level when screen is lowered.
5. Install electrically operated screens ready for connection to power and control systems by others.

6. Install low-voltage controls according to NFPA 70 and manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Install wiring in raceway except in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Use UL-listed plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
7. Adjust projection screens and related hardware in accordance with manufacturer's instructions for proper placement and operation.
8. Test electrical screens for proper working condition. Verify that screen controls, limit switches, closure, and other operating components are in optimum functioning condition. Adjust as needed.

F. Protection

1. Protect installed products until completion of project.
2. Touch up, repair, or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

3.2 ACCEPTANCE TESTING

A. Verification Sequence:

1. The Contractor shall identify parties responsible for verification and stakeholders who wish to be involved in the process
2. The Contractor shall identify when verification is to be performed, and confirm system completion, availability, and provide notice prior to performing verification
3. The Contractor shall identify test procedures and submit a testing check list for approval, including the definition of measurements and test equipment.
4. Installation shall be complete.
5. The Contractor shall independently perform system acceptance testing and submit all verification checklists and documentation to the Consultant.
6. The Owner's Representative will perform an independent verification. The Contractor shall perform all work necessary to determine and/or modify performance of the system to meet the requirements of this specification.
  - a. Provide a qualified technician knowledgeable with the system and the installation to assist the Owner's Representative with the acceptance procedure.



- b. The Contractor shall provide all labor, materials, tools, and measurement equipment necessary for these demonstrations, tests and adjustments.
- c. As-built documentation, as detailed herein, shall be on hand for reference.

END OF SECTION

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 122413 - ROLLER WINDOW SHADES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Manually operated roller shades to be applied to exterior window applications as indicated on the drawings.
  - 2. Motorized, roll-up fabric interior window shades including motor operator, controls, low voltage wall switches, mounting hardware, fascia, and all components necessary for a complete installation, refer to reflected ceiling plans for the locations and: Multi-Purpose Room C100.
    - a. Provide Dual Roller Shade System with Blackout shades for one roller and light filtering fabric for second roller, provide at the following exterior window locations: Small Classroom B109.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 6 Section "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry" for wood blocking and grounds for mounting roller shades and accessories.
  - 2. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealing the perimeters of installation accessories for light-blocking shades with a sealant.
  - 3. Division 16 - Electrical: Electrical supply, conduit, and wiring for motorized window shades.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include styles, material descriptions, construction details, dimensions of individual components and profiles, features, finishes, and operating instructions for roller shades.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for roller shades, including shadeband materials, their orientation to rollers, and their seam and batten locations.

- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type and color of shadeband material.
  - 1. Include Samples of accessories involving color selection.
- E. Roller-Shade Schedule: Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of shadeband material, signed by product manufacturer.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each type of shadeband material, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For roller shades to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Roller Shades: Full-size units equal to 5 percent of quantity installed for each size, color, and shadeband material indicated, but no fewer than 2 units.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roller shades in factory packages, marked with manufacturer, product name, and location of installation using same designations indicated on Drawings.

#### 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install roller shades until construction and finish work in spaces, including painting, is complete and dry and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.

- B. Field Measurements: Where roller shades are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Allow clearances for operating hardware of operable glazed units through entire operating range. Notify Architect of installation conditions that vary from Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following and not limited to:
  - 1. Draper Inc. Manual Flexshade
  - 2. Hunter Douglas Contract. (Equal to Draper)
  - 3. MechoShade Systems, Inc. (Equal to Draper)
  - 4. Jacksons Window Shoppe
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain roller shades from single source from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 MANUALLY OPERATED SHADES WITH SINGLE ROLLERS

- A. Chain-and-Clutch Operating Mechanisms: With continuous-loop bead chain and clutch that stops shade movement when bead chain is released; permanently adjusted and lubricated.
  - 1. Bead Chains: Manufacturer's standard.
    - a. Loop Length: Full length of roller shade.
    - b. Limit Stops: Provide upper and lower ball stops.
    - c. Chain-Retainer Type: Chain tensioner, jamb mounted
- B. Rollers: Corrosion-resistant steel or extruded-aluminum tubes of diameters and wall thicknesses required to accommodate operating mechanisms and weights and widths of shadebands indicated without deflection. Provide with permanently lubricated drive-end assemblies and idle-end assemblies designed to facilitate removal of shadebands for service.
  - 1. Roller Drive-End Location: Right side of inside face of shade
  - 2. Direction of Shadeband Roll: Regular, from back of roller.
  - 3. Shadeband-to-Roller Attachment: Manufacturer's standard method.
- C. Mounting Hardware: Brackets or endcaps, corrosion resistant and compatible with roller assembly, operating mechanism, installation accessories, and mounting location and conditions indicated.
- D. Roller-Coupling Assemblies: Coordinated with operating mechanism and designed to join up to three inline rollers into a multiband shade that is operated by one roller drive-end assembly.

E. Shadebands:

1. Shadeband Material: Light-filtering Series
2. Shadeband Bottom (Hem) Bar: Steel or extruded aluminum.
  - a. Type: Enclosed in sealed pocket of shadeband material
  - b. Color and Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range

F. Installation Accessories:

1. Front Fascia: Aluminum extrusion that conceals front and underside of roller and operating mechanism and attaches to roller endcaps without exposed fasteners.
  - a. Shape: L-shaped
  - b. Height: Manufacturer's standard height required to conceal roller and shadeband when shade is fully open, but not less than 3 inches.
2. Exposed Headbox: Rectangular, extruded-aluminum enclosure including front fascia, top and back covers, endcaps, and removable bottom closure.
  - a. Height: Manufacturer's standard height required to enclose roller and shadeband when shade is fully open, but not less than 3 inches
3. Endcap Covers: To cover exposed endcaps.
4. Installation Accessories Color and Finish: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
5. Back Covers for Interior Roller Shades: Provide and install back cover for all interior shades.

2.3 Motorized Window Shades

- A. Type: Motorized vertical roll-up, fabric, window shade with motors, controls, mounting brackets, low voltage switch plates and other components necessary for complete installation; Motorized FlexShade as manufactured by Draper, Inc. Refer to drawings for details.
- B. Roller: Fabricated from extruded aluminum or steel. Diameter, wall thickness, and material selected by manufacturer to accommodate shade size. Provide with roller idler assembly of molded nylon and zinc-plated steel pin. Sliding pin to allow easy installation and removal of roller. Fabric connected to the roller tube with LSE (low surface energy) double sided adhesive specifically developed to attach coated textiles to metal. Adhesive attachment to eliminate horizontal impressions in fabric.
- C. Coupling system: Couplings to join motorized shade rollers to allow operation by single motor. FlexShade Coupling System as manufactured by Draper, Inc. Provide endcaps to receive couplers and support multiple shades.
  1. One motorized band, with four panels.
- D. Shade slat: Slat encased in heat seamed hem.

E. Installation Accessories:

1. Front Fascia: Aluminum extrusion that conceals front and underside of roller and operating mechanism and attaches to roller endcaps without exposed fasteners.
  - a. Shape: L-shaped
  - b. Height: Manufacturer's standard height required to conceal roller and shadeband when shade is fully open, but not less than 3 inches.
  - c. Exposed Headbox: Rectangular, extruded-aluminum enclosure including front fascia, top and back covers, endcaps, and removable bottom closure.
  - d. Height: Manufacturer's standard height required to enclose roller and shadeband when shade is fully open, but not less than 3 inches
  - e. Endcap Covers: To cover exposed endcaps.

F. Installation Accessories Color and Finish: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

G. Double Roller Shade System with Pocket Enclosures, provide where indicated in the drawings.

## 2.4 SHADEBAND MATERIALS

A. Shadeband Material Flame-Resistance Rating: Comply with NFPA 701 Testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

B. Light-Filtering Fabric: Woven fabric, stain and fade resistant.

1. Source: SheerWeave 2500
2. Type: Vinyl Coated polyester
3. Weight: 13.9 oz per yard.
4. Openness Factor: 1 percent.
5. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

C. Blackout Fabric: Woven fabric, stain and fade resistant.

1. Source: SheerWeave 7000
2. Type: Vinyl Coated polyester
3. Weight: 12 oz per yard.
4. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.5 ROLLER-SHADE FABRICATION

A. Product Safety Standard: Fabricate roller shades to comply with WCMA A 100.1, including requirements for flexible, chain-loop devices; lead content of components; and warning labels.

B. Unit Sizes: Fabricate units in sizes to fill window and other openings as follows, measured at 74 deg F.

1. Between (Inside) Jamb Installation: Width equal to jamb-to-jamb dimension of opening in which shade is installed less 1/4 inch per side or 1/2-inch total, plus or minus 1/8

inchLength equal to head-to-sill or -floor dimension of opening in which shade is installed less 1/4 inch plus or minus 1/8 inch.

- C. Shadeband Fabrication: Fabricate shadebands without battens or seams to extent possible except as follows:
  - 1. Vertical Shades: Where width-to-length ratio of shadeband is equal to or greater than 1:4 provide battens and seams at uniform spacings along shadeband length to ensure shadeband tracking and alignment through its full range of movement without distortion of the material.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, operational clearances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 ROLLER-SHADE INSTALLATION

- A. Install roller shades level, plumb, and aligned with adjacent units according to manufacturer's written instructions.

#### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust and balance roller shades to operate smoothly, easily, safely, and free from binding or malfunction throughout entire operational range.

#### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean roller-shade surfaces after installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer that ensure that roller shades are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- C. Replace damaged roller shades that cannot be repaired, in a manner approved by Architect, before time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 122413



## SECTION 123216 – EDUCATIONAL CASEWORK

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings, Division 0 - Bidding and Contract Requirements and Division 1 General Requirements apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. Provide all plastic laminate casework and related accessory items as specified herein. Refer to contract documents for specific details and requirements. Casework includes all storage components, accessory items, closure, fillers, and framing necessary for a complete installation, as identified by manufacturers product/model number, or reference thereto.
- B. Specialty product systems as indicated by product designation within contract documents shall include, but not limited to: Steel framed island assemblies, steel framed technology clusters, adjustable and re-locatable casework and computer modules.
- C. General Conditions: The General Conditions, Supplementary General Conditions, Special Conditions, and General Requirements apply to all work in this Division.
- D. Provide coordination with Mechanical and Electrical contractors for their respective installation of mechanical and electrical fixtures.

#### 1.3 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

- A. General millwork and custom cabinetry unless specified herein or so noted on plans as included within this section.
- B. Rubber, vinyl or other finished toe base.
- C. Blocking with walls.
- D. Sinks, faucets, fittings, traps, stops, tail pieces, vacuum breakers, and other fixtures, electrical and mechanical runs and connections.
- E. Fixture installation/services connections: Setting and installation of equipment and fixtures, and related utility connections, are provided under the other sections of the Project Specification governing the utility.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with General, Supplementary, and Special Conditions.
- B. Submit shop drawings for approval in the form of one reproducible sepia and one print. Show materials, dimensions, cabinet-cut details, and sink locations.
- C. Samples of colors shall be submitted upon award of contract for selection and coordination with other suppliers. Architect to have color choice from full range of laminates from laminate manufacturer. Architect may request and retain samples and catalog cuts as required for accessory and special items.

#### 1.5 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. LSI Corporation used to establish a standard of quality subject to compliance with requirements, of the Instructions to Bidders. Products that may be incorporated in the work include:
  - 1. Case Systems
  - 2. TMI
  - 3. Stevens
  - 4. Wood-Metal
  - 5. Mastercraft.
- C. Manufacturers shall submit evidence of at least 5 years experience and installations for similar type of project.
- D. Manufacturers shall submit certified product test data in accordance with ANSI A161.1-1980, NEMA LD3-1991, and general static load testing performed and certified by an independent testing agency, covering the following areas of product performance, with these minimum results.
  - 1. Base cabinet construction/racking test: 800 lbs.
  - 2. Cabinet front joint loading test: 425 lbs.
  - 3. Wall cabinet static load test: 2,200 lbs.
  - 4. Drawer front joint loading test: 600 lbs.
  - 5. Drawer construction/static load test: 635 lbs.
  - 6. Cabinet adjustable shelf support device/static load test: 300 lbs.
  - 7. Particleboard screw holding power: 350 lbs.
- E. The following performance details are project requirements and must be met by all Bidders whether named herein, or approved by Addendum. Deviations will not be allowed.
  - 1. Design

- a. All Casework: Case Systems used to establish a standard of quality. Standard

Reveal Overlay Cabinet door design with door/drawer front edge having 3mm PVC and cabinet body edge having Flat Edge PVC. Refer to drawings for locations of Safety Centers and Flammable/Acid Storage Cabinets.

2. ADA-Americans with Disabilities Act Requirements: The special requirements specified herein shall be met, where specifically indicated on architectural plans as "ADA", or by General Note. To be in compliance with Federal Register Volume 56, No. 144, Rules and Regulations.
  3. Lamination System: Doors, finished end panels, and other decorative exterior laminate surfaces shall be composed of minimum 3/4 inch core, laminated exterior with .030 inch high pressure plastic laminate, and interior with .020 inch high pressure cabinet liner. Lamination with hybrid P.V.A. Type III water resistant adhesives. Total thickness 13/16 inch. No exceptions.
  4. Structural Cabinet Body: Cabinet backs shall be minimum 3/8 inch thick, inset from rear of body, fully housed four sides, and back-shimmed. Provide 3/4 inch thick stiffeners glued and fastened to back/body as specified herein. Back perimeter and stiffeners to be fully sealed with hot melt adhesive.
  5. Interior Space: All cabinets shall have clear span interiors. No vertical dividers allowed unless by specified architectural design.
  6. Heavy Components: Wall cabinet tops and bottoms, and all bookstack shelves shall be minimum 1 inch thick, for additional load support. Shelves in door cabinets 30 inches wide and over shall be 1 inch thick. Shelves in open cabinets, regardless of width, shall be 1 inch thick.
  7. Structural Drawer Body: Drawer body material shall be multi-directional fiberboard with bottom recessed, captured all four sides and sealed with hot melt adhesive. Provide under body stiffener as specified herein. Particleboard bodies and/or surface-applied bottoms are not acceptable.
  8. Drawer Suspension: Drawer slides shall be self-closing design, epoxy power-coated, with positive instop, outstop, and out-keeper. Kynamic (operational) load rating to be minimum 100 lbs. Minimum 150 lb. static load rating.
  9. Structural Cabinet Support: Cabinet sub base shall be of a separate and continuous ladder-type platform design leveled and floor mounted prior to cabinet body replacement. Material to be exterior grade plywood. No cabinet sides-to-floor will be allowed.
- F. Architect/Owner's opinion and decision shall be final in the evaluation of manufacturer's products for approval to bid or award of contract.
- G. Guarantee: All materials produced by the Casework Manufacturer shall be guaranteed for a period of five years from manufacturer's defects and workmanship. Other materials and equipment shall carry the Guarantee of the product manufacturer.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

A. Laminated Plastics/Finishes

1. High pressure plastic laminate, .030 inch thickness, for exterior cabinet surfaces shall meet NEMA LD3-1991 GP28 standards including thickness.
2. Exterior Color Selection Available:
  - a. Standard and Premium finish vertical surface laminate from full range of 125 laminate manufacturer's colors consisting of wood grain patterns and solid colors.
  - b. Total of 6 different colors available per project.
  - c. Manufacturers: Laminates to be selected from a combination of the following laminate manufactures.
    1. Wilsonart.
    2. Formica.
    3. Pionite.
    4. Nevamar.
3. Plastic Laminate Balancing Sheet: White high pressure cabinet liner, .020 inch thickness shall meet NEMA LD3-1991 CL 20 standards. Use for balancing exterior surface laminates.
4. Countertop High Pressure Plastic Laminate:
  - a. High pressure plastic laminate, textured finish .050 inch thickness or .042 inch postforming grade as detailed. Color as selected from manufacturer's full range of laminate patterns and colors.
  - b. Heavy gauge neutral colored backing sheet for balanced construction.
5. Pressure Fused Laminate/Interior Surfacing:
  - a. Melamine resin impregnated, 100 gram PSM minimum, surface laminated to core under pressure.
  - b. Shall meet NEMA LD3.1-1991 GP28 standards and NEMA LD3-1991 CL20 standards.
  - c. White pressure fused laminate for cabinet interiors behind door and drawers and underside of wall cabinet unless otherwise specified. Interiors of all open cabinets are to be HPL.
  - d. Shall be balanced at all concealed surfaces with phenolic backer. Unsurfaced coreboard not allowed.

B. High Performance Particle Board Core:

1. Particleboard to be 47 lb. density, of balanced 3-ply construction with moisture content not to exceed 8%. Particleboard shall conform to ANSI A208-1-1993, Type M-3.
2. Particleboard cabinet components to be of the following minimum core thickness prior to lamination:

- a. 3/8" cabinet backs
  - b. 1/2": dividers, as detailed
  - c. 3/4": base and tall cabinet tops and bottoms, cabinet sides, drawer spreaders, door, drawer head, cabinet back rear hangstrips, dividers as detailed, exposed cabinet backs.
  - d. 1": wall cabinet tops and bottoms, door-cabinet shelving 30 inch width and over, exposed cabinet shelving and off-wall shelving of all widths.
  
- C. Edging types: Provide one or more of the following in accordance with Paragraph 2.1.D, "Edging Locations":
  - 1. 3mm thick PVC. Solid, high impact, purified, color-thru, acid resistant, pre-lamination primed edging, machine-applied with hot melt adhesives, automatically trimmed, inside/outside length-radiused for uniform appearance, buffed and corner-radiused for consistent design.
  - 2. Flat Edge PVC, .020 inch. Solid, high impact, purified, color-thru, acid resistant PVC edging machine-applied with hot melt adhesives, automatically trimmed face, back, and corners for uniform appearance. Manufacturer option of .030 inches high-pressure plastic laminate if PVC is unavailable.
  
- D. Edging Locations
  - 1. Edging Locations on science lab casework: Provide edging types at the following locations:
    - a. Door/Drawer-Front edging shall be 3 mm PVC selected from standard LSI colors.
    - b. Cabinet end panel, top, bottom, door/drawer front spacer rail, divider(s), and shelf, shall be 3mm PVC at leading edge, selected from standard LSI colors.
    - c. Top of drawer body to be FlatEdge PVC, white.
  - 2. Edging locations on all other Casework: provide edging types at the following locations:
    - a. Door/Drawer-Front edging shall be 3 mm PVC selected from 12 standard LSI colors.
    - b. Cabinet Body edge, including door/drawer front spacer rail shall be flat edge PVC, color matched to door/drawer face.
    - c. Interior body component edging, interior dividers, drawer body, shelf shall be FlatEdge PVC to match cabinet interior surface color, white.
  
- E. Hardware:
  - 1. Hinges
    - a. Heavy duty, five knuckle 2 3/4 inch institutional type hinge shall meet ANSI/BHMA A156.9 Grade 1 requirements. Mill ground, hospital tip, tight pin feature with all edges eased. Hinge to be full wrap around type of tempered

- steel .095 inch thick. Each hinge to have minimum 9 screws, #7, 5/8 inch FHMS to assure positive door attachment.
  - b. One pair per door to 48 inch height. One and one-half pair over 48 inch in height. Hinge to accommodate 13/16 inch thick laminated door and allow 270 degree swing.
  - c. Finish to be LH-301 ChromeCoat Powder Finish or painted finish.
- 2. Pulls
  - a. Wire design, LH-325 nylon, 4 inch, in White, Stone Grey, or Black or Brushed Chrome.
- 3. Drawer Slides
  - a. Standard Drawers: LSI Lab Series Slide, LH-376, self-closing design. White epoxy powder coated with positive in-stop, out-stop, and out-keeper to maintain drawer in 80% open position. Captive nylon rollers, front and rear. Minimum 100 lb. dynamic load rating at 50,000 cycles. Minimum 150 lb. static load rating.
  - b. Paper Storage Drawers: Full extension, 3-part progressive opening slide, minimum 100 lb., zinc plated or epoxy coated at manufacturer's option
  - c. Student Island Assembly Drawers, Full extension, 3-part progressive opening slide, minimum 100 lb. Zinc plated or epoxy coated at manufacturer's option
  - d. File Drawers: Full extension, 3-part progressive opening slide, minimum 100 lb. zinc plated or epoxy coated at manufacturer's option.
  - e. Provide body mounted molded rails for hanging file system for legal or letter size as indicated by manufacturer's model number.
- 4. Catches: Catch to provide opening resistance in compliance with the Americans with Disabilities Act.
  - a. Provide one top-mounted magnetic catch for base, wall and tall cabinet door. Catch housing to be molded in White. LH-340ADA.
  - b. LH-345 Roller catch for mobile cabinets.
- 5. Adjustable Shelf Supports: To be LH-354 twin pin design with anti tip-up shelf restraints for both 3/4 inch and 1 inch shelves. Design to include keel to retard shelf slide-off, and slot for ability to mechanically attach shelf to clip. Load rating to be minimum 300 lbs. each support without failure, reference 1.4.D. Cabinet interior sides shall be flush, without shelf system permanent projection.
- 6. Wardrobe Rod: To be 1 1/16 inch rod, LH-362, supported by LH-363 flanges. Note: Wardrobe Rods are to be mounted to the casework at 48 inches A.F.F. to the center of the rod.
- 7. Locks: To be disc tumbler lock keyed alike per room and master keyed. Dull chrome finish.
  - a. Hinged doors and drawers National Lock No. M4-7054.

8. Coat Hooks: Note Coat Hooks are to be mounted to the casework at 48 inches A.F.F. to the center of the hook.
  - a. Double Coat Hooks, ceiling mount - Satin Aluminum
  - b. Single Coat Hooks, ceiling mount - Satin Aluminum
  - c. Double Coat hooks, wall mount - Satin Aluminum
  - d. Single Coat Hooks, wall mount - Satin Aluminum
9. Wheel Casters
  - a. Casters for low mobile units to be LH-390 4 inch x 1 1/16". Minimum 275 lb. Load rating per caster. Wheel brakes on front two casters.
  - b. LH-386 swivel casters for standard mobile cabinets shall be plate type caster with ball bearing swivel. Size shall be 5 inches for tall mobiles, with 1 1/16 inch wide tread for carpet or hard cover floor. Wheel brakes on front two casters. Minimum 300 lb. load rating per caster.
10. Mobile Steel Frame Structure:
  - a. Low mobile cabinets shall be designed with a structurally layered base to which above specified plate-type casters are bolted.
11. Molded Personal pencil Drawer: high Impact, Medical Grade Polystyrene, FDA approved, with in-stop, out-stop, and self closing features. Compartmented drawer body molded in Black with Black epoxy coated metal slides. Provide where indicated by product designation on plans or as scheduled.
12. Cable Trays: Unless otherwise specified, cable trays shall be 6 inches high x 4 inches deep returned vertically 3 inches. Cable trays shall be of 16 gauge steel with hemmed return, or high impact Styrene with reinforced exist-ends, Black. When so designated by architectural detail, or product number designation, cable trays shall include integral seven plug grounded duplex electrical strip with surge protector, and 6 foot three wire cord/socket.
13. Door units with tackable cork surface. Where indicated on the drawings, provide tackable cork surface over door front with 3mm pvc edging.

## 2.2 CONSTRUCTION

### A. Detailed Requirements for Cabinet Construction

1. Sub-Base:
  - a. Cabinet Sub-Base: To be separated and continuous (no cabinet body sides-to-floor), water resistant exterior grade plywood with concealed fastening to cabinet bottom. Ladder-type construction of front, back and intermediates to

- form a secure and level platform to which cabinets attached.
  - b. Tubular steel 1 1/4" square base in brushed chrome, or black, furnished where specified.
- 2. Cabinet Top and Bottom:
  - a. Solid sub-top to be furnished for all base and tall cabinets.
  - b. Wall cabinet and library stack bottoms and tops to be 1 inch thick.
  - c. Exterior exposed wall cabinet bottoms to be Pressure Fused White laminate both sides. Assembly devices to be concealed on bottom side of wall cabinets.
- 3. Cabinet Ends
  - a. Holes drilled for adjustable shelves 1 1/4 inch on center.
  - b. Exposed exterior cabinet ends to be laminated with high pressure plastic laminate, balanced with high pressure cabinet liner interior surface.
  - c. Front edges shall be flush with door/drawer face.
- 4. Fixed and Adjustable Shelves
  - a. Thickness: Behind doors, to be 3/4 inch to 27 inches wide. One inch shelving at 30 inch wide cabinet and over.
  - b. Thickness at all widths of open cabinets to be 1 inch.
- 5. Cabinet Backs:
  - a. Cabinet back to be fully housed into sides, top, and bottom, recessed 7/8 inch from cabinet rear. Rear, unexposed, side of back to receive continuous bead of hot melt adhesive at joint between back and sides/top/bottom.
  - b. Hang rails shall be glued to rear of cabinet back and mechanically fastened to cabinet sides. Provide minimum of 2 at base, 2 at wall, and 3 at tall cabinets.
  - c. Exposed exterior backs to be high pressure plastic laminate balanced with high pressure cabinet liner.
- 6. Door and Drawer Fronts
  - a. Laminated door and drawer fronts to be 13/16 inch thick for all hinged and sliding doors. Drawer fronts and hinged doors are to overlay the cabinet body. Maintain a maximum 1/8 inch reveal between pairs of doors, between door and drawer front, or between multiple drawer fronts within the cabinet.
  - b. Stile and Rail doors shall be 13/16 inch thick glazed with full 1/4 inch glass. Available hinged or sliding. All exposed lite-opening edges shall be trimmed and glazed with extruded vinyl glazing bead.
- 7. Drawers
  - a. Drawer fronts shall be applied to separate drawer body component sub-front.



- b. Drawer sides shall be dadoed and glued to receive front and back, machine squared and held under pressure while hot melt glued and pinned together.
  - c. Drawer bottom to be housed into front, sides and back. Underside of drawer to receive continuous bead of hot melt adhesive at joint between bottom and back/sides/front for sealing and rigidity. Reinforce drawer bottoms with 1/2 inch by 4 inch front-to-back intermediate underbelly stiffeners, hot melt glued and fastened. One at 24 inch, two at 36 inch, four at 48 inch.
  - d. Paper storage drawers fitted with full width hood at back.
  - e. All drawers shall have roller guides as specified under Paragraph 2.1.E.3.
8. Vertical and Horizontal Dividers: One of the following as indicated by cabinet number:
- a. Natural hardboard 1/4 inch thick, smooth both faces. Secured in cabinet with molded plastic clips.
  - b. Pressure Fused laminate 3/4 inch thickness. Secured in cabinet with molded plastic clips or dowels.
9. Door/Drawer Front Rail: Provide minimum 3/4 inch x 6 inch x full width cabinet body rails immediately behind all door/drawer and multiple drawer horizontal joints to maintain exact body dimensions, close off reveal, and be locator for lock strikes.
10. ADA-Americans with Disabilities Act Requirements: The following special requirements shall be met, where specifically indicated on architectural plans as "ADA", or by General Note. To be in compliance with Federal Register Volume 56, No. 144, Rules and Regulations:
- a. Countertop height: with or without cabinet below, not to exceed a height of 34 inches A.F.F., (Above Finished Floor), at a surface depth of 24 inches.
  - b. Kneecap clearance: to be minimum 27 inches A.F.F., and 30 inches clear span width.
  - c. 12 inch deep shelving, adjustable or fixed: not to exceed a range from 9 inches A.F.F. to 54 inches A.F.F.
  - d. Wardrobe cabinets: to be furnished with rod/shelf adjustable to 48 inches A.F.F. at a maximum 21 inch shelf depth.
  - e. Sink cabinet clearances: in addition to 10.a,b. above, upper kneecap frontal depth to be no less than 8 inches, and lower toe frontal depth to be no less than 11 inches, at a point 9 inches A.F.F., and as further described in Volume 56, Section 4.1.9.

#### B. Countertops

- 1. General: High pressure plastic laminate bonded to particleboard core. Thickness as shown on plans. Underside to be properly balanced with heavy gauge backing sheet. Provide tops in as long as practical continuous lengths. Provide field glued splines at joints. No joints closer than 24 inches either side of sink cutout.
- 2. Mobile Cabinet Tops: Shall be high pressure plastic laminate on exterior and high pressure cabinet liner on underside. Edges shall be 3 mm PVC.

C. Workmanship

1. All exposed exterior cabinet surfaces to be .030 inch high pressure laminate, color as selected from casework manufacturer's standards, minimum 53 colors/wood grains available. Laminate surface/balancing liner to core under controlled conditions, by approved and regulated laminating methods to assure a premium lamination. Natural-setting hybrid P.V.A. Type III water resistant adhesives that cure through chemical reaction, containing no health or environmentally hazardous ingredients, are required. Methods requiring heat are not allowed; "contract" methods of laminating are not allowed.
2. Cabinet parts shall be accurately machined and bored for premium grade quality joinery construction utilizing automatic machinery to insure consistent sizing of modular components. End panels shall be doweled to receive bottom and top.
3. Back panel shall be fully housed into, and recessed 7/8 inch from the back of cabinet sides, top, and bottom to insure rigidity and fully closed cabinet. Cabinet back shall be shimmed from rear of body for tight interior fit.
4. Drawer bottom shall be fully housed into and recessed 1/2 inch up from the bottom of sides, back and subfront. Sides of drawer shall be fully dadoed to receive drawer back, locked in fully to subfront, fastened with glue and mechanical fasteners.
5. 3/4 inch thick hang rails shall be glued to backside and mechanically fastened to end panels of all wall, base, and tall cabinets for extra rigidity and to facilitate installation.
6. Rear of cabinet back and underside of drawer bottom joints to receive a continuous bead of hot melt adhesive to add to unit body strength and develop moisture and vermin seal.
7. All cases shall be square, plumb, and true.
8. Case body and drawer workmanship and quality of construction shall be further evidenced by Independent Testing Laboratory results as described in 1.4.D.
9. Provide removable back panels and closure panels for plumbing access where shown on drawings.

D. Mobile Cabinet Design and Construction:

1. No conventional particleboard-to-particleboard fastening allowed as structural members. Low mobile cabinets shall be designed with a structurally layered base, to which plate-type casters are bolted.
2. No exposed fasteners.
3. Design profile shall be flush inset door and flush inset finished back, between end panels.
4. Unit top shall be 3 mm PVC with radiused corners, and overhand case front, back, and sides to function as a bumper system.

<u>Service</u>	<u>Color</u>	<u>Code</u>	<u>Letter Color</u>
Gas	Blue	Gas	White
Hot Water	Red	HW	White
Cold Water	Green CW		White

5. Ground Key Type Hose Cocks: Tapered core and handle of one piece forged brass, ground and lapped, held in place under constant spring pressure.
6. Handles: Provide 3-arm or 4-arm forged brass handles for valves, stops, faucets, remote controls, and cocks, except for ground key cocks and micro-adjustable needle cocks.

7. Needle Valve: Provide units with renewable self-centering floating cones and renewable seats of stainless steel or monel metal.
8. Water Valves or Faucets: Provide units with renewable barrel locked in valve body. Barrel shall contain all wearing parts, with renewable discs.
9. Remote Control Valves: Although straight through type are indicated, use angle valves wherever required.
10. Self-closing cocks: Wherever drawing symbols are followed by "DC", provide self-closing valves.
11. Vacuum Breakers: Provide vacuum breakers on all water fixtures (hot or cold) equipped with serrated outlets.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate work of this Section with related work of other Sections as necessary to obtain proper installation of all items.
- B. Verify site dimensions of cabinet locations in building prior to fabrication.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Storage and Protection: Casework shall be protected in transit. Store under cover in a ventilated building not exposed to extreme temperature and humidity changes. Do not store or install casework in building until concrete, masonry, and drywall/plaster work is dry.
- B. Workmen: Install casework under the supervision of the manufacturer's representative with factory-trained mechanics certified by manufacturer.
- C. Workmanship
  1. Erect casework straight, level and plumb and securely anchor in place. Scribe and closely fit to adjacent work. Cut and fit work around pipes, ducts, etc.
  2. Install all items complete and adjust all moving parts to operate properly.
  3. Leave surface clean and free from defects at time of final acceptance.
- D. Guarantee: All materials shall be guaranteed for a period of 5 years from manufacturer's defects and workmanship.
- E. Clean Up: Remove all cartons, debris, sawdust, scraps, etc., and leave spaces clean and all casework ready for Owner's use.

END OF SECTION 123216

## SECTION 123661 - SIMULATED STONE FABRICATIONS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Corian Solid-surface-material sills.
  - 2. Quartz agglomerate countertops and backsplashes.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop drawings: Indicate dimensions, component sizes, fabrication details, attachment, provisions and coordination requirements with adjacent work.
- B. Product data: Indicate product description, fabrication information and compliance with specified performance requirements.
- C. Maintenance data: Submit manufacturer's care and maintenance data, including repair and cleaning instructions. Include in project close-out documents.

#### 1.4 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions of countertops by field measurements after base cabinets are installed but before countertop fabrication is complete.

#### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate locations of utilities that will penetrate countertops or backsplashes.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CORIAN SOLID-SURFACE-MATERIAL FABRICATION

- A. Window Sills: 1/2-inch thick, solid surface material, adhesively joined with inconspicuous seams with built-up edge with slight radius. Refer to drawings for details.

### 2.2 QUARTZ AGGLOMERATE FABRICATION

- A. Configuration: Provide countertops with the following front and backsplash style:
  - 1. Front: Straight, slightly eased at top
  - 2. Backsplash: Straight, slightly eased at corner
  - 3. Endsplash: Matching backsplash
- B. Countertops: 3 cm 1.1811-inch-thick, quartz agglomerate with front edge built up with same material. Refer to drawings for apron detail.
- C. Backsplashes: 2 cm .787402-inch-thick, quartz agglomerate.
- D. Fabrication: Fabricate tops in one piece with shop-applied edges and backsplashes unless otherwise indicated. Comply with quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.
  - 1. Fabricate with loose backsplashes for field assembly.
  - 2. Adhesively joined with exposed seams.
  - 3. Provide expansion joints in countertop as detailed on the drawings.
  - 4. Make cutouts to templates furnished by the manufacturer.
  - 5. Reinforce edges and cutouts as recommended by the manufacturer.
  - 6. Provide insulation between material and adjacent hot water pans and food warmers per manufacturer's written recommendations and details.
  - 7. Provide insulation between material and adjacent cold surfaces per manufacturer's written recommendations and details
  - 8. Thermally isolate hot applications from cold per manufacturer's written recommendations and details
  - 9. Provide venting of cabinets as required per manufacturer's written recommendations and details.

### 2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Plywood: Exterior softwood plywood complying with DOC PS 1, Grade C-C Plugged, touch sanded.
- B. Adhesives: Do not use adhesives that contain urea formaldehyde.

- C. Adhesives: Adhesives shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. Solid Surface Material: Homogeneous solid sheets of filled plastic resin complying with ANSI SS1.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following
    - a. Dupont Corian, Solid Surface
  - 2. Colors: As selected from Group 7.
- E. Quartz Agglomerate: Solid sheets consisting of quartz aggregates bound together with a matrix of filled plastic resin and complying with the "Physical Characteristics of Materials" Article of ANSI SS1.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following,
    - a. Dupont, Corian Quartz
  - 2. Colors: Grigione

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install solid-surface-materials level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 8 feet
- B. Fasten countertops by screwing through corner blocks of base units into underside of countertop. Pre-drill holes for screws as recommended by manufacturer. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface. Refer to drawings for additional details.
  - 1. Seal edges of cutouts in plywood subtops by saturating with varnish.
- C. Install all simulated-stone-materials to comply with manufacturer's written instructions for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.

END OF SECTION 123661